

Intermediate I

Building on what was taught in Beginner's IMABI, grammatical concepts are greatly emphasized with new material added on. New conjugations are discussed and honorifics are looked at more seriously than before. By the end of the course, you should be able to move onto Advanced IMABI.

中級ちゅうきゅう I: Intermediate I

[第101課: The Particle たり](#)

[第102課: Nominalization](#)

[第103課: Expressions with こと](#)

[第104課: The Particle ながら](#)

[第105課: Daily Expressions II](#)

[第106課: Easy & Difficult: ～やすい, ～難い, & ～づらい](#)

[第107課: Too/Continue: ～すぎる, ～続ける, & ～急ぐ](#)

[第108課: The Particles しか & ほか](#)

[第109課: Conditionals: The Particles と, なら \(ば\), たら, & ば](#)

[第110課: Conditional Phrases](#)

[第111課: Must Not](#)

[第112課: Must](#)

[第113課: いかない vs いけない](#)

[第114課: Directions](#)

[第???課: The Particle に III: Agent Marker](#)

[第115課: The Passive I](#)

[第116課: The Passive II: 不可抗力の受身](#)

[第117課: ニ格 VS カラ格](#)

[第118課: The Causative I](#)

[第119課: The Causative-Passive](#)

[第120課: The Volitional I](#)

[第121課: Family](#)

[第122課: 呼称: ～さん, ～さま, Etc.](#)

[第123課: Titles](#)

[第124課: Honorifics I: Nouns](#)

[第125課: Honorifics II: Adjectives & the Copula](#)

[第126課: Honorifics: III Light Honorifics: レル・ラレル敬語](#)

[第127課: Honorifics IV: Regular Verbs](#)

[第128課: Honorifics V: Irregular Verbs](#)

[第129課: What & When](#)

[第130課: Who & Where: 誰, どなた, どちら, どいつ, & どこ](#)

[第131課: Why: なぜ, どうして, & なんで](#)

[第132課: Which: どれ, どちら, どっち, & いずれ](#)

[第133課: ～ていく & ～てくる](#)

[第134課: Best That: ～方 Patterns & ～に越したことはない](#)

[第135課: ～てしまう](#)

[第136課: Advanced Preparation: ～ておく](#)

[第137課: ～ために I: In Order To](#)

[第???課: ～ために II: Due To](#)

[第???課: ～ように: So That](#)

[第138課: ～とおりに](#)

[第139課: Try I: ～てみる・みたい・みせる](#)

[第140課: Try II: ～ようにする & ～ようとする](#)

[第141課: The Particles とか, など, & なんか](#)

[第142課: The Particle なんて](#)

[第143課: The Particles ほど & くらい](#)

[第144課: The Particle より](#)

[第145課: Similarity I: ～ようだ, ～みたいだ, & ～っぽい](#)

[第146課: Seem: ～そうだ](#)

[第147課: Hearsay: ～そうだ & ～らしい](#)

[第148課: Citation II: ～という, ということ, & というもの](#)

[第149課: The Superlative](#)

[第150課: The Imperative](#)

第101課: The Particle たり

The particle たり shares the same changes in conjugation with ～た and ～て.

	Positive	Negative
Verbs	見る → 見たり 変える → 変えたり 行く → 行ったり 書く → 書いたり 泳ぐ → 泳いだり 話す → 話したり 待つ → 待ったり 死ぬ → 死んだり 呼ぶ → 呼んだり 読む → 読んだり 帰る → 帰ったり	見ない → 見なかったり 変えない → 変えなかったり 行かない → 行かなかったり 書かない → 書かなかったり 泳がない → 泳がなかったり 話さない → 話さなかったり 待たない → 待たなかったり 死なない → 死ななかったり 呼ばない → 呼ばなかったり 読まない → 読まなかったり 帰らない → 帰らなかったり
Adjectives	新しい → 新しかったり きれいだ → きれいだった たり	新しくない → 新しくなかったり きれいじゃない → きれいじゃなかったり
だ	だ → だったり △	{では・じゃ}ない → {では・じゃ} なかったり △

Contraction Note: Sometimes the the negative form may be simplified to just なかったり. So, you may see ～たり～なかったり.

The Conjunctive Particle たり

～たり is most known for being in the common pattern ～たり～たりする. The pattern usually always ends in する. Sometimes in speaking, the する may get cut off, but its existence is nevertheless implied.

When used with verbs, the pattern shows two actions occurring **back and forth**. Or, with one or more verb or adjective, it shows examples of actions and or states. This pattern can also be used with the negative.

1. 彼女は立ったり座ったりした。
She stood up and down.
2. 「今週は何をしますか」「友達にメールをしたり、本を読んだりします」
"What will you do this week?" "I'll do things like mail my friends and read a book"
3. 月が雲の合間あいまに見えたり、隠かくれたりした。
The moon came in and out of sight in the clouds.
4. 休日は読書どくしょをしたり散歩さんぽをしたりして過ごす。
As for holidays, I do thing such as read books or take walks to pass time.
5. 男が泣いたりして気持ちもちが悪いなあ。
It's a little creepy for a man to be crying.
6. 昼食の時間は早かったり遅かったりだ。
Lunch times goes from being early to being late.
7. 近所のお店のコーヒーは日によって濃かったり薄かったりします。
The neighborhood store's coffee goes from being strong to being thin.
8. デパートに行ったり、ゲームをしたりした。
I did things like go to the department store and play games.
9. 掃除そうじ（を）したり洗濯せんたく（を）したりしました。
I was cleaning, doing laundry, etc.
10. 本を読んだりレポートを書いたりしていた。
I was reading books, writing reports, etc.
11. 株を買おうか迷ってるけど、日によって高かったり安かったりでいつ買うべきかよく分からないなあ。
I'm wavering on whether to buy the stock, and because the price is expensive and cheap from day to day, I don't know when I should buy.

Grammar Note: 買おう is the volitional form of 買う.

12. 500円といっても、人によって高く感じたり安く感じたりする。
Even though it may be 500 yen, it may feel expensive or cheap depending on the person.
13. ガソリンの値段が場所によって高かったり、安かったりするのは何故ですか？
Why is that gas prices are high and low depending on the place?
14. 映画を観みたり、本を読んだり、昼寝ひるねしたりする。
I do things like watch movies, read books, take naps, among other things.
15. 一週間雨が降ふったり止やんだりしていた。
The rain was intermittent throughout the week.

16. 日によって上手だったり下手だったりするのはプロとは言えない。
Going from awesome to bad makes you not a pro.

17. 日によって絵があったりなかったりします。
There are and aren't paintings depending on the day.

Grammar Note: As you can see, the negative can be used with たり.

漢字 Note: 絵's reading え is actually an 音読み.

18. 高かったり安かったりで安定あんていしない価格かく
An unsteady price that goes back and forth from high to low

Grammar Note: The sentence above shows how the conjunctive particle たり can be used without ending in する. The copula is often used, and aside from this, when you use する, it can be used in other conjugations like the て形.

19. 暑かったり寒かったりしていた。
It was going from hot to cold.

20. マンションの部屋は広かったり狭かったり {だ・する}。
The condo rooms were wide and narrow.

Grammar Note: The use of だ injects more emotion whereas the use of する states things in a more objective fashion.

21. クマはおりの中で行ったり来たりしていた。
The bear was walking back and forth in its cage.

22. 女だと思ってよく見たら、男だったりする。
You think the person is a woman, but when you look, the person is a man.

23. 新品と思って買ったら、中古品だったりすることがよくある。
It's often the case that one buys something thinking it's new and finding out it's used.

24. どれも似たり寄ったりだな。(Idiom)
Nothing really stands out.

25. 願ねがったり叶かなったりの好条件 (Set Phrase)
Favorable conditions that work out as desired

Grammar Note: You sometimes see ～たり～たりの in set phrases like above.

26. 飲み食い
Eating and drinking

Phrasing Note: The above phrase is an example of nominal phrases from verbs having similar meaning to ～たり. If 飲み食いする were paraphrased,

you would get either 食べたり飲んだりする or 飲んだり食べたりする. Note that "drinking and eating" is far less frequent than "eating and drinking" in English, but in Japanese no such ordering other than in 飲み食い can be attested. But, for other pairings of verbs, certain orders may be expected, and they may not all be the same as in English. So, pay attention.

第100課: Want & Feeling II: ～がる

～がる is an extremely important suffix to overcome restrictions on person with phrases of emotional/physical state in Japanese.

The Suffix ～がる

Adjectival phrases of emotion in Japanese cannot take third person subjects. Meaning, you cannot say things like.

- 1a. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しいです。X
1a. Suzuki is heartbroken and sad.

To overcome this grammatical restriction, the suffix ～がる is needed.

- 1b. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しがっています。
1b. Suzuki seems sad from being heartbroken.

To conjugate, you simply attach ～がる to the stem of adjective regardless of class. Although we haven't gotten into what ～がる means, it is conveniently similar to "seem" in English. There are important differences that we'll get to later, so pay close attention!

Sad	悲しい	To seem sad	悲しがる
Happy	嬉しい	To seem happy	嬉しがる
Embarrassing	恥ずかしい	To seem embarrassed	恥ずかしがる
Scared	怖い	To seem scared	怖がる
New	新しい	To be fond of new things	新しがる
Rare	珍しい	To seem rare	珍しがる
Want to...	～たい	To seem to want	～たがる

Conjugation Note: Be careful to not confuse ～たかった and ～たがった or ほしかった and ほしがった, especially when listening as it may be tricky. Note that ～がる behaves like any other verb phrase. So, if ～ている is needed, you'll need to use ～がっている.

Usage Note: It's also interesting to note that there are many adjectival phrases that ～がる is never used with for whatever reason. Some include 好きだ, 涼しい, 軽い, きれいだ, etc. One restriction is that it can't be used with adjectives that show no emotional aspect of someone. There is also a subjective/objective aspect to adjectives that mustn't be ignored. When you "like" someone, that isn't a one time thing. But, いやだ could be temporary. This is one reason why you can say 嫌がる but not 好きがる.

Although this suffix is one method of getting around third person restrictions on emotion phrase.

2. わたしがアイスクリームを食べたがると、母が食べさせてくれた。
Whenever I wanted to eat ice cream, my mother would let me eat it.

Phrase Note: An easy example of debunking the claim that ～がる is used only in third person is the pattern ～がり屋, which is used to describe people's natures. So, if you're hot-nature, you're an 暑がり屋.

Using 食べたい would present an even worse grammatical error, which is using the conjunctive particle と (conditional form) with an adjective. So, what does ～がる mean? In most cases, it assesses the outward appearance or overall knowledge of something and relates the situation with the internal state of the person in question.

3. 遼太郎は顔には出さなかったが、心の中では悔しがっていた。
Ryotaro didn't let out, but he was regretting inside.

It may also be the case that it is used to help show an internal state not shown outwardly, and this can be referring to an attitude being floated by the person in question or an attitude grasped by someone else.

4. 遼太郎は表面上は悔しがったが、心の中では喜んでいて。
Ryotaro was regretting outwardly, but he was rejoicing inside.

Examples

5. 俺だけが面白がってたのか。
Was I the only one who thought (that) was funny.

Note: This example shows how ～がる may be used to show a situation different than everything else.

6. 弟はおもちゃを見ると、いつもほしがる。
My little brother always wants a toy when he sees it.

Note: This example shows how ～がる may be used to show someone being unreasonable.

7. 人はみな他人の事情を知りたがる。
People want to know about everyone else's situation.

8. 生徒は新しい単語や言い回しを知りたがりますが、まずは基本を教えることが大事です。
Students want to know new words and expressions, but it's important to first teach the basics.

9. 寒がり屋やだから、カナダの暮くらしは辛つらかった。
Because I'm cold-nature, life in Canada was harsh.

10. 暑あつがり屋だから、テキサスの暮らしはひどく辛かったよ！
Because I'm hot-nature, life in Texas was extremely harsh!

11. べつにすまなからなくてもいい。
You really don't have to feel sorry.
From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

12. 子供が食事を食べたがらない。
My child doesn't want to eat dinner.

13. 彼女はアイスクリームを食べたがっている。
She wants to eat ice cream.

14. 誰だれでも神かみを信しんじたがります。
Everyone wants to believe in God.

Grammar Note: ～たがる is used here because this is a general statement that may not be 100% true. ～がる gives a sense that someone/ feels or thinks that way.

参照: https://www.lang.nagoya-u.ac.jp/nichigen/menu7_folder/symposium/pdf/8/06.pdf

Aside from ～がる

Of course, there are other things you can use. For instance, ～そうだ after the stems of adjectives means "seems....". You may use かもしれない (might) or だろう・でしょう (probably). Of course, there are many other things. At the individual phrase level, however, you will see that some things should just never be used for oneself and others that should only be used in reference to others.

15a. 私は怒っている。△

15b. 私は腹が立っている。○
I'm angry.

16. 彼女は私のことを怒っていた。
She was angry at me.

17. いや、（彼は）僕のことを怒ってるかもね。（Casual）
Well, (he) might actually be angry at me.

18. 山田さんはとても悲しそうですね。
Yamada-san seems so sad, doesn't she?

Attribute: No Restrictions

Words that refer to someone's wants, feelings, or likes don't need another pattern when used as an attribute/general knowledge (総合的な知識).

Thankfully there are situations where the first/second and third person grammatical distinctions aren't necessary. This also goes for with situations reflecting on the past where something is already known.

19. 母が好きな食べ物は寿司です。

The food my mother likes is sushi.

20. 若い人たちは海外に出たいのだ。

Young people want to go overseas.

21. 弟はそのごろ韓国に行きたかったです。

My younger brother wanted to go to Korea then.

22. 参加したい人は図書館に行ってください。

Those that want to participate, please go to the library.

23. 日本では占うらない師しに運勢うんせいをみてもらいたい人が多いみたいです。

In Japan, it seems that a lot of people want their fortunes read by fortune-tellers.

24. すぐやりたがる人はいやだ。

People that want to immediately do it are a pain.

Grammar Note: This doesn't give you a 100% free pass to not use ～がる when the situation calls for it.

第100課: Want & Feeling II: ～がる

～がる is an extremely important suffix to overcome restrictions on person with phrases of emotional/physical state in Japanese.

The Suffix ～がる

Adjectival phrases of emotion in Japanese cannot take third person subjects. Meaning, you cannot say things like.

1a. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しいです。X

1a. Suzuki is heartbroken and sad.

To overcome this grammatical restriction, the suffix ～がる is needed.

1b. 鈴木さんは失恋して悲しがっています。

1b. Suzuki seems sad from being heartbroken.

To conjugate, you simply attach ～がる to the stem of adjective regardless of class. Although we haven't gotten into what ～がる means, it is conveniently similar to "seem" in English. There are important differences that we'll get to later, so pay close attention!

Sad

悲しい

To seem sad

悲しがる

Happy	嬉しい	To seem happy	嬉しがる
Embarrassing	恥ずかしい	To seem embarrassed	恥ずかしがる
Scared	怖い	To seem scared	怖がる
New	新しい	To be fond of new things	新しがる
Rare	珍しい	To seem rare	珍しがる
Want to...	～たい	To seem to want	～たがる

Conjugation Note: Be careful to not confuse ～たかった and ～たがった or ほしかった and ほしがった, especially when listening as it may be tricky. Note that ～がる behaves like any other verb phrase. So, if ～ている is needed, you'll need to use ～がっている.

Usage Note: It's also interesting to note that there are many adjectival phrases that ～がる is never used with for whatever reason. Some include 好きだ, 涼しい, 軽い, きれいだ, etc. One restriction is that it can't be used with adjectives that show no emotional aspect of someone. There is also a subjective/objective aspect to adjectives that mustn't be ignored. When you "like" someone, that isn't a one time thing. But, いやだ could be temporary. This is one reason why you can say 嫌がる but not 好きがる.

Although this suffix is one method of getting around third person restrictions on emotion phrase.

2. わたしがアイスクリームを食べたがると、母が食べさせてくれた。
Whenever I wanted to eat ice cream, my mother would let me eat it.

Phrase Note: An easy example of debunking the claim that ～がる is used only in third person is the pattern ～がり屋, which is used to describe people's natures. So, if you're hot-nature, you're an 暑がり屋.

Using 食べたい would present an even worse grammatical error, which is using the conjunctive particle と (conditional form) with an adjective. So, what does ～がる mean? In most cases, it assesses the outward appearance or overall knowledge of something and relates the situation with the internal state of the person in question.

3. 遼太郎は顔には出さなかったが、心の中では悔しがっていた。
Ryotaro didn't let out, but he was regretting inside.

It may also be the case that it is used to help show an internal state not shown outwardly, and this can be referring to an attitude being floated by the person in question or an attitude grasped by someone else.

4. 遼太郎は表面上は悔しがったが、心の中では喜んでいて。
Ryotaro was regretting outwardly, but he was rejoicing inside.

Examples

5. 俺だけが面白がってたのか。

Was I the only one who thought (that) was funny.

Note: This example shows how ～がる may be used to show a situation different than everything else.

6. 弟はおもちゃを見ると、いつもほしがる。

My little brother always wants a toy when he sees it.

Note: This example shows how ～がる may be used to show someone being unreasonable.

7. 人はみな他人の事情を知りたがる。

People want to know about everyone else's situation.

8. 生徒は新しい単語や言い回しを知りたがりますが、まずは基本を教えることが大事です。

Students want to know new words and expressions, but it's important to first teach the basics.

9. 寒がり屋やだから、カナダの暮らしは辛つらかった。

Because I'm cold-nature, life in Canada was harsh.

10. 暑あつがり屋だから、テキサスの暮らしはひどく辛かったよ！

Because I'm hot-nature, life in Texas was extremely harsh!

11. べつにすまなからなくてもいい。

You really don't have to feel sorry.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

12. 子供が食事を食べたがらない。

My child doesn't want to eat dinner.

13. 彼女はアイスクリームを食べたがっている。

She wants to eat ice cream.

14. 誰だれでも神かみを信しんじたがります。

Everyone wants to believe in God.

Grammar Note: ～たがる is used here because this is a general statement that may not be 100% true. ～がる gives a sense that someone/ feels or thinks that way.

参照: https://www.lang.nagoya-u.ac.jp/nichigen/menu7_folder/symposium/pdf/8/06.pdf

Aside from ～がる

Of course, there are other things you can use. For instance, ～そうだ after the stems of adjectives means "seems....". You may use かもしれない (might)

or だろう・でしょう (probably). Of course, there are many other things. At the individual phrase level, however, you will see that some things should just never be used for oneself and others that should only be used in reference to others.

15a. 私は怒っている。△

15b. 私は腹が立っている。○

I'm angry.

16. 彼女は私のことを怒っていた。

She was angry at me.

17. いや、(彼は) 僕のことを怒ってるかもね。(Casual)

Well, (he) might actually be angry at me.

18. 山田さんはとても悲しそうですね。

Yamada-san seems so sad, doesn't she?

Attribute: No Restrictions

Words that refer to someone's wants, feelings, or likes don't need another pattern when used as an attribute/general knowledge (総合的な知識).

Thankfully there are situations where the first/second and third person grammatical distinctions aren't necessary. This also goes for with situations reflecting on the past where something is already known.

19. 母が好きな食べ物は寿司です。

The food my mother likes is sushi.

20. 若い人たちは海外に出たいのだ。

Young people want to go overseas.

21. 弟はそごろ韓国に行きたかったです。

My younger brother wanted to go to Korea then.

22. 参加したい人は図書館に行ってください。

Those that want to participate, please go to the library.

23. 日本では占うらない師しに運勢うんせいをみてもらいたい人が多いみたいです。

In Japan, it seems that a lot of people want their fortunes read by fortune-tellers.

24. すぐやりたがる人はいやだ。

People that want to immediately do it are a pain.

Grammar Note: This doesn't give you a 100% free pass to not use ～がる when the situation calls for it.

第103課: Expressions with こと

There are many expressions with こと. Even though you may end up hating こと, you're going to have to use it a lot.

こと Expressions

The nominalizer こと is used in a lot of set expressions that involve nominalization. In these expressions, you should not replace こと with の.

1. ～ことがある: With the past tense it means "have done" as you have done something before. With the non-past tense it means that you "often" do something. Note that you can't use ～ことがある for the "have" in expressions like "I have done my homework". This would be the "past perfect," in which case you would just use the auxiliary ～た.

1. 富士山に登ったことがありますか。
Have you climbed Mt. Fuji before?
2. 私は酒を飲んだことがあります。
I've had sake before.
3. 北海道では四月でも雪が降ることがある。
In Hokkaido, it snows often even in April.
4. 彼はジョギングすることがある。
He often jogs.
5. 彼女を見かけることがある。
I often catch a glimpse of her.
6. 東京で道に迷うことがあります。
I often get lost in Tokyo.
7. 私は買い物に行くことがある。
I often go shopping.
8. そのバスは遅れることがある。
The bus is often late.
9. 香港に行くことがある。
I often go to Hong Kong.
10. 私はフィンランドに行ったことがある。
I've been to Finland.
11. 何度も寿司を食べたことがあります。
I have eaten sushi many times.

12. あなたは歌舞伎を観たことがありますか。
Have you seen Kabuki before?

13. この映画は前に見たことがある。
I have seen this movie before.

2. ～ことがない: To have not done before.

14. 東京に行ったことはありません。
I haven't gone to Tokyo.

15. あんなにきれいな日没にちぼつは見たことはありません。
I've never seen such a beautiful sunset.

16. 飛行機で行ったことがない。
I haven't gone by airplane.

17. 秋葉原に行ったことはありませんが、一度行ってみたいです。
I haven't been to Akihabara, but I would like to go once.

Culture Note: 秋葉原, often shortened to 秋葉, is a popular place in Tokyo known for cheap electronics as well as cafes that cater to オタク・ヲタク. In メイド喫茶 maids dress up in uniform.

3. ～ことはない: It shows that something is not important/necessary or is an emphatic version of #2.

18. 気にすることはない。
There is no need to worry.

19. 多分これからも外国に行くことはないでしょう。
I probably won't go abroad from now on.

20. 彼の方ほうでは何ら困こまったことはない。
There's no problem at his end.

4. ～ことにする・こととする: To decide. ～ことにしている shows that one makes a routine of doing something or that one is determined/has a strong commitment to doing something.

21. あいつを忘れることにしただけさ。(Very colloquial)
I've just decided to just forget that guy.

22. 私はお酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。(Slightly formal)
I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

23. 毎日カルピスを飲むことにしています。
I make it a rule to drink Calpis every day.

24. 英語では話さないことにしています。
I am determined to not speak in *English*.

5. ～ことになる・こととなる: To be decided

25. 今年日本に行くことになりました。
It has been decided that I will go to Japan this year.

26. 新製品は5月10日に発表することになりました。
It has been decided that we will announce the new product on May 10th.

Grammar Notes:

1. こと is not needed with ～にする or ～になる when these phrases are used with a concrete noun.

2. ～ことになっている shows that the decision has been made for you. It is equivalent to "am to". It is also important in describes rules, traditions, etc.

3. と gives a more formal and punctual feeling.

6. ～ということだ: It is said that

27. ロケットが打ち上げられたということだ。
It is said that a rocket was launched.

7. ～ことだろう: Probably

28.. さぞかし無念 {な・だった} ことだろう。 (やや書き言葉的)
It was certainly regretful.

8. ～ことだし: Is, so

29. 子供の (した) ことだし、彼女を許してくれないか。
It was a childish thing to do, so won't you forgive her?

9. ～ことこのうえない: There's nothing better than

30. ウケいいことこの上ない。
Nothing is more popular than this.

10. ～ことに (は) : In being

With the negative it shows that when you don't do X, Y is an undesirable result.

31. ありがたいことに、全員が無事だった。
In being grateful, everyone was alright.

32. 早く出発しないことには、大変なことになる。
In not departing early, it'll become an ordeal.

11. ～ことと思う: Hope that

33. ご承知のことと思いますが。
I hope you are aware, but...

12. ～のこと: Strengthens an adverb and is typically only used in certain expressions.

34. もちろん（のこと）、あいつは失敗した。
Of course that guy failed.

13. AことはAが: It's (the case that)...but

35. おいしいことはおいしいが、ちょっと高すぎる。
It's delicious, but it's a little too expensive.

14. Adj. + こと: Makes an adverb. It isn't really constructive and is only limited to certain phrases.

36. 長いこと待つ。
To wait for a long time.

15. ～ってことよ: It creates an admonishing tone. Remember that って = という

37. いいってことよ。
It's alright!

16. ～ことなく: Without

This pattern should not be used with habitual actions.

38. ためらうことなく、消防士は燃えている家に入った。
The firefighters went into the burning house without hesitation.

17. ～ことなしに: Not possible without

39. 福田社長はしょうことなしに謝罪をした。
Company President Fukuda apologized with little choice.

40. 試験に合格することなしに、この会社には入れません。
It is not possible to get into this company without passing the exam.
-

18. ～に事寄せて: On the plea/context of

- 41a. 彼女は出張に事寄せて東京市内の観光をしました。
41b. 彼女は出張を口実に東京市内の観光をしました。
41c. 彼女は出張に託けて東京市内の観光をしました。
She went sightseeing in Tokyo on the pretext of a business trip.
-

19. ～こともなげに: Easily; as if nothing happened

42. 彼は仕事を事もなげにやってのけた。
He pulled the job off as if nothing happened.
-

20. {どれだけ・どんなに}…ことか: Oh how....!

43. どれだけ雨が降ったことか。
Oh how it rained!
44. どんなに料理がおいしかったことか。
Oh how the dish was delicious!
45. どれだけ私が急いだことか。
Oh how I was in a rush!
46. どれだけあなたが食べたことか。
Oh how you ate!

Contraction Note: ことは as well as とは can be contracted to こ（っ）たあ・こっちゃ and たあ respectively in slang.

～だけ（のこと）

～だけ（のことは）ある shows that something is as expected, and moreover, adequate and fulfills something. A worth, skill, capability, or action is demonstrated to be suitable. Potential ways to translate this include "it is worth", "it's not surprising that (as expected)". It is often used with adverbs like {さすが・流石}（に）, which means "as expected".

47. 公費こうひを削減さくげんするだけのことはある。
Cutting public spending is worth it.
48. 高くても、買っただけのことはある。
Although it was expensive, it has its worth for being bought.
49. 高かっただけのことはあるよね。
It was expensive, but it was worth it.

50. さすが（に）大学に行っただけのことはある。

As expected, he has worth from going to college.

～だけ（のことは）あって describes a circumstance that fulfills expectations. It is interchangeable with ～だけに, but there is a slight nuance difference. With ～だけに, the situation expected might not happen, making it an unexpected surprise. It may also be found in the pattern "AがAだけに". With A in mind, there is plenty of reason for a certain outcome.

51. ここは有名ゆめいなだけに、沢山たくさんの方が訪おとずれます。

Since this place is famous, a lot of people visit.

52. 母も書道もあまりに身近な存在だっただけに、客観視することができなかったのかもしれない。

Since mom also had too close of an existence with calligraphy too, she might not have been able to see (her work) from an objective point of view.

By 武田双雲 in the 文藝春秋 2008 (2).

53. よく勉強しただけに、いい成績で合格しました。

Since I studied hard, I passed with good grades as expected.

Sentence Note: This student probably normally doesn't study, but this time he/she did and as expected from good effort, he/she got a just reward.

54. 彼は政治家せいじかだけに口が巧うまいでしょう。

He's probably a good talker since he's a politician.

Word Note: 政治屋せいじや would be a much more fitting word for this sentence, but it is a sensitive word to some due to implying the politician is in it for the money.

55. 津波で町全体が荒らされただけに、一戸の建物さえ残っているのにびっくりしました。

Since the entire town was devastated by the tsunami, I was surprised that just one building remained.

56. 民主党が勝手に頑固たる政策方針を結束して言い張り続けただけに、選挙戦に敗戦して自民党・公明党が当選を果たしたのであろう。(Literary)

Since the DJP continued to insist in solidarity on their stubborn policy stance as they pleased, they lost in the election battle and the LDP and Komeito won in the language (as expected).

History Note: On December 16, 2012 the Democratic Party of Japan lost to the Liberal Democratic Party, which won the majority of seats, and Komeito in a sweeping election, which would make 安倍晋三（あべしんぞう） Prime Minister for the second time.

57. 韓国は儒教文化が残るとされる国なだけに、パク・クネ氏が初めての女性として大統領選挙で選出されたことは韓国社会の変化を象徴しているだけでなく、アジア諸国の社会変動も象徴しているのかもしれませんが。

Since South Korea is deemed to be a country where Confucian culture still

remains, the election of Park Geun-hye as the first female president not only symbolizes change in Korean society, but it may also symbolize societal change in all of Asia.

History Note: Park Geun-hye of the Saenuri Party of South Korea was elected with over 50% of the vote, a first for a presidential candidate in that country, as the first woman president on December 19, 2012.

58. 敵の防壁を潔く突破しただけに、宮殿に入ってからすぐに殺されたという戦死の告知は母国に大嘘だと見なされた。

Since (he) had gracefully burst through the enemy bulwark, the notice of his death in war after being killed once he had entered the palace was taken as a big lie in his homeland.

59. インドネシアは赤道に近いだけあって、うだるように蒸し暑いですね。僕の親友がジャワ島に住んでいますから、訪ねるために身軽な服装を持っていけないでしょう。

Since Indonesia is close to the Equator, it's seething hot, isn't it? As my close friend lives on Java Island, I'll probably have to take light clothing to visit.

60. ミス東大だけに美人だ。

Since she's Miss Todai, she's a beauty.

Word Note: 東大 = 東京大学.

61. 明日はテストだけあってみんな眠そうだ。

Since there is a test tomorrow, everyone is sleepy.

62. 台風の被害が大きかっただけに、都市の復興振ふっこうぶりには目を見張るものがあった。

Since the damage from the typhoon was large, there was quite something to behold in the state of reconstruction.

Usage Note: The usage of だけに to show something unexpected is becoming rarer nowadays.

63. 被害が大きかっただけに、復旧も困難を極めた。

Since the damage was large, restoration was extremely difficult.

結婚けっこんすることになりました VS 結婚することにしました

This is one time where definitions of a phrase don't help much. When students hear the first one, they think of an arranged marriage. That may be so, but it is just a euphemism that describes the current state. It's uncertain whether the person had say in it or not. It is more appropriate to use 結婚することになりました in situations where you are informing someone or talking to someone you haven't seen in a while. 結婚することにしました clearly shows you've chosen to and you are likely telling friends in a conversation.

This is a rule of thumb, but Japanese themselves don't always follow through all the time. Some may purposely use the wrong one to make people laugh or what not.

第104課: The Particle *Nagara* ながら I: Simultaneous Action

In this lesson, you will be introduced to the particle *nagara* ながら. This particle is a conjunctive particle that is typically used to mean “while” in the sense of doing two things at the same time or in the same time span. Because using it will require conjugation, we’ll look at that first before delving into how it’s used.

Ichidan Verbs	見る + ながら = 見ながら
	<i>Miru + nagara = Minagara</i>
Godan Verbs	飲む + ながら = 飲みながら
	<i>Nomu + nagara = Nominagara</i>
Suru	する + ながら = しながら
	<i>Suru + nagara = shinagara</i>
Kuru	来る + ながら = きながら
	<i>Kuru + nagara = kinagara</i>

As you can see, using *nagara* ながら from the point of conjugation is no different than using *-masu* ます.

Simultaneous Action

The primary use of *nagara* ながら is to show simultaneous action or in the same time span. The clauses of the sentence you make must have the same subject, and the main verb of the sentence is found in the latter clause.

1. テレビを見ながらご飯を食べる。
Terebi wo minagara gohan wo taberu.
To eat one’s meal while watching TV.

2. ご飯を食べながらテレビを見る。
Gohan wo tabenagara terebi wo miru.
To watch TV while eating one’s meal.

As you can see, *nagara* ながら stands for the “while” in these two sentences. The primary action is also clearly different. This is an incredibly important point because it is not always the case that switching the verb that has *nagara* ながら results in a sensible statement.

3a. 泣きながら玉たまねぎを切っていました。○
Nakinagara tamanegi wo kitte imashita.

I was cutting up onions with tears streaming down.

3b. 玉たまねぎを切りながら泣いていました。??
Tamanegi wo kirinagara naite imashita.

I was crying as I was cutting up onions.

You are cutting onions while crying because the onions are undoubtedly making you cry. In Japanese, this is expressed with 3a. Let's say, for some odd reason, your other half decided to break up with you over Facebook right before you began to prepare yourself a meal containing onion. Way before you cut into the first onion, you're already shedding a large volume of tears. In this situation, 3b. would make sense. Although the English could still imply cause-and-effect between "crying" and "cutting onions," the onions are not the cause of crying in 3b as is the case in 3a.

4. 辞書じしょで知知らない単語たんごを調しらべながら、フランス語ごの本ほんを読よみたいと思おもいます。○

Jisho wo shiranai tango wo shirabenagara, Furansugo no hon wo yomitai to omoimasu.

I want to read a French book while looking up words I don't know with a dictionary.

フランス語ごの本ほんを読よみながら辞書じしょで知知らない単語たんごを調しらべたいと思おもいます。??

Furansugo no hon wo yominagara jisho de shiranai tango wo shirabetai to omoimasu.

I want to look up words I don't know about as I'm reading a French book.

You've just received a French novel for the first time. Excited, you also realize that a dictionary will be your best friend to look up words you don't know in said book. Because reading the book is the primary action, the first sentence is what makes sense. Now, say you are randomly looking up words you don't happen to know irrespective of the French book you're reading. Maybe you decide to look up Spanish words randomly instead. In such an odd situation, the latter may make sense, but you'd best explain yourself.

More Examples

5. 天津てんしんで働はたらきながら中国語ちゅうごくごを学まなんでいます。

Tenshin de hatarakinagara chūgokugo wo manande imasu.

I'm studying Chinese while working in Tianjin.

6. 歩あるきながら読書どくしょをするのはとても危険きけんです。

Arukinagara dokusho wo suru no wa totemo kiken desu.

Reading a book while walking is very dangerous.

7. コーヒーを飲のみながら、ゆっくりと会話かいわしましょう。

Kōhii wo nominagara, yukkuri to kaiwa shimashō.

Let's converse slowly while we drink coffee.

8. 車くるまを運転うんてんしながら電話でんわをしてはいけません。

Kuruma wo unten shinagara, denwa wo shite wa ikemasen.

You mustn't talk on the phone while driving a car.

9. 先生せんせいの話はなしを聞ききながら、ノートにメモを取とります。

Sensei no hanashi wo kikinagara, nōto ni memo wo torimasu.

I take notes in my notebook while listening to my teacher.

10. ご飯食はんたべながら話はなさないで、行儀ぎょうぎが悪わるいのよ！

(Feminine)

Gohan tabenagara hanasaide, gyōgi ga warui no yo!

Don't talk while eating your food; what bad manners!

11. 電話でんわで話はなしながらタバコを吸すうのはマナー違反いはんだと思おもいませんか。

Denwa de hanashinagara tabako wo sū no wa manā ihan da to omoimasen ka?

Don't you think smoking while talking on the phone is a breach of etiquette?

12. 宿題しゅくだいしながらピザを食くってて気づいたらなくなっていた。

Shukudai shinagara piza wo kuttete kizuitara nakunatte ita.

I was eating pizza while doing my homework, but once I noticed it was gone.

13. 晴はれた日ひに好すきな音楽おんがくを聴ききながらドライブ（を）するのって至福しふくのひと時ときだと思おもいません？

Hareta hi ni suki na ongaku wo kikinagara doraibu (wo) suru no tte shifuku no hitotoki da to omoimasen ka?

Don't you think driving while listening to your favorite music on a clear day is a blissful moment?

14. 私わたしは新聞しんぶんを読よみながら、バスを待まっていました。

Watashi wa shimbun wo yominagara, basu wo matte imashita.

I was waiting for the bus while reading the newspaper.

15. 町まちの銀行ぎんこうで働はたらきながら、気象予報士きしょうよほうしの勉強べんきょうをしています。

Machi no ginkō de hatarakinagara, kishō yohōshi no benkyō wo shite imasu.

I'm studying to be a weather forecaster while working at the town bank.

16. ともかく、人ひとは悩なやみながら生いきるしかないんですか。

Tomokaku, hito wa nayaminagara ikiru shika nai n desu ka?

Anyhow, do people have no choice but to live in worry?

17. 聴衆ちようしゅうの人ひとたちも笑顔えがおを見みせながら熱心ねっしんに聞いていた。

Chōshū no hitotachi mo egao wo misenagara nesshin ni kiite ita.

The people in the audience were also listening with enthusiasm while showing smiles in their faces.

18. 部活ぶかつもやりながら、塾じゅくに通かよっていました。

Bukatsu mo yarinagara, juku ni kayotte imashita.

I was attended cram school while also doing club activities.

19. 大学だいがくに通かよいながら、月つきに60ろくじゅう万円まんえんくらい稼かせいでいました。

Daigaku ni kayoinagara, tsuki ni rokujūman'en kurai kaseide imashita.

I was earning about 600,000 yen a month while attending college.

20. 洗濯せんたくが終おわるのを待ちながら、明日あすの準備じゅんびをしています。

Sentaku ga owaru no wo machinagara, ashita no jumbi wo shite imasu.
I'm doing preparations for tomorrow while waiting for the wash to finish.

21. 乗客じょうきゃくの前まえでカップ麺めんを食たべながら運転うんてんする。

Jōkyaku no mae de kappumen wo tabenagara unten suru.
To drive while eating cup noodles in front of passengers.

22. 料理りょうりしながら、同時どうじに片付かたづけも出来るんですよ。

Ryōri shinagara, dōji ni katazuke mo dekiru n desu yo.
It's possible to clean up simultaneously while cooking, you know.

23. 私わたしは毎日まいにち、図書館としょかんで色々いろいろな資料しりょうを調しらべながら、漢字かんじや文法ぶんぽうなど勉強べんきょうしています。

Watashi wa mainichi, toshokan de iroiro na shiryō wo shirabenagara, kanji ya bumpō nado benkyō shite imasu.

I'm studying Kanji and grammar in the library every day while examining various materials.

24. 電話でんわをかけながらや、LINEなどのテキストメッセージを打うちながら注文ちゅうもんをすることは店員てんいんさんに対たいして、あまりにも失礼しつれいな行為こういなんですよ。

Denwa wo kakenagara ya, Rain nado no tekisuto messēji wo uchinagara chūmon wo suru koto wa ten'intachi ni tai shite, amari ni mo shitsurei na kōi na n desu yo.

Ordering while being on the phone or typing text messages on LINE and such is beyond rude behavior toward employees.

Grammar Note: As this sentence demonstrates, *nagara* ながら can interestingly accept certain particles like *ya* や at times. This shows that it is somewhat noun-like. In this example, there is a need to refer to more than one ancillary verb phrase that is done with the same verb, and rather than repeating the same thing twice with slightly different context, just using *nagara ya* ながらや makes everything easier.

Instantaneous Verbs X

Using *nagara* ながら with verbs that describe instant occurrences is incorrect. Therefore, it cannot be used with verbs like *shinu* 死ぬ, *tsuku* つく, *kieru* 消える, etc. For verbs that take hardly any time at all to take place, if the main action takes more time than the secondary verb in the first clause with *nagara* ながら, then the usage is incorrect.

25. 座すわりながら話はなしませんか。X

Suwarinagara hanashimasen ka?

座すわって話はなしませんか。○

Suwatte hanashimasen ka?

How about we sit and talk?

Te て or Nagara ながら?

Sometimes, using *nagara* ながら may resemble using the particle *te* て since the verb that goes with *nagara* ながら is a secondary action. However, ancillary actions described with *te* て tend to be means by which to do something or condition by which things happen. This difference means that *te* て and *nagara* ながら can indeed coexist in the same sentence.

26. 車くるまでの通勤時つうきんじに必かならずテープを聞きいて英語えいごを勉強べんきょうしています。

Kuruma de no tsūkinji ni kanarazu tēpu wo kiite eigo wo benkyō shite imasu.

I'm studying English by always listening to tapes when I commute by car.

27. 車くるまで通勤つうきんしているときは必かならず英会話えいかいわのテープを聴ききながら運転うんてんします。

Kuruma de tsūkin shite iru toki wa kanarazu eikaiwa no tēpu wo kikinagara unten shite imasu.

I'm driving while always listening to English conversation times when commuting by car.

28. 文化ぶんかも、時代じだいの流ながれに合あわせて進化しんかしながら変かわっていかなければなりません。

Bunka mo, jidai no nagare ni awasete shinka shinagara kawatte ikanakereba narimasen.

Culture must also change as it evolves along with the trends of the times.

29. 犬いぬの散歩さんぽをしながら歩あるきタバコをする人ひととは迷惑めいわくだ。

Inu no sampo wo shinagara aruki-tabako wo suru hito wa meiwaku da.

People who smoke and walk while walking their dogs are bothers.

Grammar Note: Some *nagara* ながら expressions refer to two actions done in tandem so much so that they result in set phrases without *nagara* ながら. This explains *aruki-tabako* 歩きタバコ. Other examples include *aruki-sumaho* 歩きスマホ (using one's smart phone while walking), *tabearuki* 食べ歩き (eating while walking), etc.

Nagara-zoku ながら族

Nagara-zoku ながら族 is a set phrase that refers to people who do all sorts of things while they're supposed to be focusing on work or the like. As is the case in this sentence, it can be used as a nice context to string several *nagara* ながら phrases together.

30. ながら族ぞくって、大勢おおぜいいるんじゃないですか。俺おれだって、携帯電話けいたいでんわを見みながら、テレビを見ながら、お酒さけを飲のみながら、お菓子かしを食たべながら、頭あたまを掻かきながら、パソコンでRedditの質問しつもんには回答かいとうしています。

Nagara-zoku tte, ōzei iru n ja nai desu ka? Ore datte, keitai denwa wo minagara, terebi wo minagara, osake wo nominagara, okashi wo tabenagara,

atama wo kakinagara, pasokon de reeditto no shitsumon ni kaitō shite imasu.
Aren't there lots of people who do all sorts of stuff while they're working?
Like even me, I'm answering questions on Reddit on my computer while
looking at my cellphone, while watching TV, while drinking liquor, while
eating sweets, while scratching my head, etc.

第103課: Expressions with こと

There are many expressions with こと. Even though you may end up hating こと, you're going to have to use it a lot.

こと Expressions

The nominalizer こと is used in a lot of set expressions that involve nominalization. In these expressions, you should not replace こと with の.

1. ～ことがある: With the past tense it means "have done" as you have done something before. With the non-past tense it means that you "often" do something. Note that you can't use ～ことがある for the "have" in expressions like "I have done my homework". This would be the "past perfect," in which case you would just use the auxiliary ～た.

1. 富士山に登ったことがありますか。
Have you climbed Mt. Fuji before?
2. 私は酒を飲んだことがあります。
I've had sake before.
3. 北海道では四月でも雪が降ることがある。
In Hokkaido, it snows often even in April.
4. 彼はジョギングすることがある。
He often jogs.
5. 彼女を見かけることがある。
I often catch a glimpse of her.
6. 東京で道に迷うことがあります。
I often get lost in Tokyo.
7. 私は買い物に行くことがある。
I often go shopping.
8. そのバスは遅れることがある。
The bus is often late.
9. 香港に行くことがある。
I often go to Hong Kong.

10. 私はフィンランドに行ったことがある。
I've been to Finland.
11. 何度も寿司を食べたことがあります。
I have eaten sushi many times.
12. あなたは歌舞伎を観たことがありますか。
Have you seen Kabuki before?
13. この映画は前に見たことがある。
I have seen this movie before.
-

2. ～ことがない: To have not done before.

14. 東京に行ったことがありません。
I haven't gone to Tokyo.
15. あんなにきれいな日没にちぼつは見たことがありません。
I've never seen such a beautiful sunset.
16. 飛行機で行ったことがない。
I haven't gone by airplane.
17. 秋葉原に行ったことがありませんが、一度行ってみたいです。
I haven't been to Akihabara, but I would like to go once.

Culture Note: 秋葉原, often shortened to 秋葉, is a popular place in Tokyo known for cheap electronics as well as cafes that cater to オタク・ヲタク. In メイド喫茶 maids dress up in uniform.

3. ～ことはない: It shows that something is not important/necessary or is an emphatic version of #2.

18. 気にすることはない。
There is no need to worry.
19. 多分これからも外国に行くことはないでしょう。
I probably won't go abroad from now on.
20. 彼の方ほうでは何ら困こまったことはない。
There's no problem at his end.
-

4. ～ことにする・こととする: To decide. ～ことにしている shows that one makes a routine of doing something or that one is determined/has a strong commitment to doing something.

21. あいつを忘れることにしただけさ。(Very colloquial)
I've just decided to just forget that guy.

22. 私はお酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。 (Slightly formal)
I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

23. 毎日カルピスを飲むことにしています。
I make it a rule to drink Calpis every day.

24. 英語では話さないことにしています。
I am determined to not speak in *English*.

5. ～ことになる・こととなる: To be decided

25. 今年日本に行くことになりました。
It has been decided that I will go to Japan this year.

26. 新製品は5月10日に発表することになりました。
It has been decided that we will announce the new product on May 10th.

Grammar Notes:

1. こと is not needed with ～にする or ～になる when these phrases are used with a concrete noun.

2. ～ことになっている shows that the decision has been made for you. It is equivalent to "am to". It is also important in describes rules, traditions, etc.

3. と gives a more formal and punctual feeling.

6. ～ということだ: It is said that

27. ロケットが打ち上げられたということだ。
It is said that a rocket was launched.

7. ～ことだろう: Probably

28.. さぞかし無念 {な・だった} ことだろう。 (やや書き言葉的)
It was certainly regretful.

8. ～ことだし: Is, so

29. 子供の(した)ことだし、彼女を許してくれないか。
It was a childish thing to do, so won't you forgive her?

9. ～ことこのうえない: There's nothing better than

30. ウケいいことこの上ない。
Nothing is more popular than this.

10. ～ことに（は） : In being

With the negative it shows that when you don't do X, Y is an undesirable result.

31. ありがたいことに、全員が無事だった。
In being grateful, everyone was alright.

32. 早く出発しないことには、大変なことになる。
In not departing early, it'll become an ordeal.

11. ～ことと思う : Hope that

33. ご承知のことと思いますが。
I hope you are aware, but...

12. ～のこと : Strengthens an adverb and is typically only used in certain expressions.

34. もちろん（のこと）、あいつは失敗した。
Of course that guy failed.

13. AことはAが : It's (the case that)...but

35. おいしいことはおいしいが、ちょっと高すぎる。
It's delicious, but it's a little too expensive.

14. Adj. + こと : Makes an adverb. It isn't really constructive and is only limited to certain phrases.

36. 長いこと待つ。
To wait for a long time.

15. ～ってことよ : It creates an admonishing tone. Remember that って = という

37. いいってことよ。
It's alright!

16. ～ことなく : Without

This pattern should not be used with habitual actions.

38. ためらうことなく、消防士は燃えている家に入った。
The firefighters went into the burning house without hesitation.

17. ～ことなしに: Not possible without

39. 福田社長はしょうことなしに謝罪をした。
Company President Fukuda apologized with little choice.

40. 試験に合格することなしに、この会社には入れません。
It is not possible to get into this company without passing the exam.

18. ～に事寄せて: On the plea/context of

41a. 彼女は出張に事寄せて東京市内の観光をしました。
41b. 彼女は出張を口実に東京市内の観光をしました。
41c. 彼女は出張に託けて東京市内の観光をしました。
She went sightseeing in Tokyo on the pretext of a business trip.

19. ～こともなげに: Easily; as if nothing happened

42. 彼は仕事を事もなげにやってのけた。
He pulled the job off as if nothing happened.

20. {どれだけ・どんなに}…ことか: Oh how....!

43. どれだけ雨が降ったことか。
Oh how it rained!

44. どんなに料理がおいしかったことか。
Oh how the dish was delicious!

45. どれだけ私が急いだことか。
Oh how I was in a rush!

46. どれだけあなたが食べたことか。
Oh how you ate!

Contraction Note: ことは as well as とは can be contracted to こ（っ）たあ・こっちゃん and たあ respectively in slang.

～だけ（のこと）

～だけ（のことは）ある shows that something is as expected, and moreover, adequate and fulfills something. A worth, skill, capability, or action is demonstrated to be suitable. Potential ways to translate this include "it is worth", "it's not surprising that (as expected)". It is often used with adverbs like {さすが・流石}（に）, which means "as expected".

47. 公費こうひを削減さくげんするだけのことはある。
Cutting public spending is worth it.

48. 高くても、買っただけのことはある。

Although it was expensive, it has its worth for being bought.

49. 高かっただけのことはあるよね。

It was expensive, but it was worth it.

50. さすが（に）大学に行っただけのことはある。

As expected, he has worth from going to college.

～だけ（のことは）あって describes a circumstance that fulfills expectations. It is interchangeable with ～だけに, but there is a slight nuance difference. With ～だけに, the situation expected might not happen, making it an unexpected surprise. It may also be found in the pattern "AがAだけに".

With A in mind, there is plenty of reason for a certain outcome.

51. ここは有名ゆうめいなだけに、沢山たくさんの方が訪おとずれます。

Since this place is famous, a lot of people visit.

52. 母も書道もあまりに身近な存在だっただけに、客観視することができなかったのかもしれない。

Since mom also had too close of an existence with calligraphy too, she might not have been able to see (her work) from an objective point of view.

By 武田双雲 in the 文藝春秋 2008 (2).

53. よく勉強しただけに、いい成績で合格しました。

Since I studied hard, I passed with good grades as expected.

Sentence Note: This student probably normally doesn't study, but this time he/she did and as expected from good effort, he/she got a just reward.

54. 彼は政治家せいじかだけに口が巧うまいでしょう。

He's probably a good talker since he's a politician.

Word Note: 政治屋せいじや would be a much more fitting word for this sentence, but it is a sensitive word to some due to implying the politician is in it for the money.

55. 津波で町全体が荒らされただけに、一戸の建物さえ残っているのにびっくりしました。

Since the entire town was devastated by the tsunami, I was surprised that just one building remained.

56. 民主党が勝手に頑固たる政策方針を結束して言い張り続けただけに、選挙戦に敗戦して自民党・公明党が当選を果たしたのであろう。(Literary)

Since the DJP continued to insist in solidarity on their stubborn policy stance as they pleased, they lost in the election battle and the LDP and Komeito won in the language (as expected).

History Note: On December 16, 2012 the Democratic Party of Japan lost to the Liberal Democratic Party, which won the majority of seats, and Komeito

in a sweeping election, which would make 安部晋三（あべしんぞう） Prime Minister for the second time.

57. 韓国は儒教文化が残るとされる国なだけに、パク・クネ氏が初めての女性として大統領選挙で選出されたことは韓国社会の変化を象徴しているだけでなく、アジア諸国の社会変動も象徴しているのかもしれませんが。

Since South Korea is deemed to be a country where Confucian culture still remains, the election of Park Geun-hye as the first female president not only symbolizes change in Korean society, but it may also symbolize societal change in all of Asia.

History Note: Park Geun-hye of the Saenuri Party of South Korea was elected with over 50% of the vote, a first for a presidential candidate in that country, as the first woman president on December 19, 2012.

58. 敵の防壁を潔く突破しただけに、宮殿に入ってからすぐに殺されたという戦死の告知は母国に大嘘だと見なされた。

Since (he) had gracefully burst through the enemy bulwark, the notice of his death in war after being killed once he had entered the palace was taken as a big lie in his homeland.

59. インドネシアは赤道に近いだけあって、うだるように蒸し暑いですね。僕の親友がジャワ島に住んでいますから、訪ねるために身軽な服装を持っていけないでしょう。

Since Indonesia is close to the Equator, it's seething hot, isn't it? As my close friend lives on Java Island, I'll probably have to take light clothing to visit.

60. ミス東大だけに美人だ。

Since she's Miss Todai, she's a beauty.

Word Note: 東大 = 東京大学.

61. 明日はテストだけあってみんな眠そうだ。

Since there is a test tomorrow, everyone is sleepy.

62. 台風の被害が大きかっただけに、都市の復興振ふっこうぶりには目を見張るものがあった。

Since the damage from the typhoon was large, there was quite something to behold in the state of reconstruction.

Usage Note: The usage of だけに to show something unexpected is becoming rarer nowadays.

63. 被害が大きかっただけに、復旧も困難を極めた。

Since the damage was large, restoration was extremely difficult.

結婚けっこんすることになりました VS 結婚することにしました

This is one time where definitions of a phrase don't help much. When students hear the first one, they think of an arranged marriage. That may be so, but it is just a euphemism that describes the current state. It's uncertain

whether the person had say in it or not. It is more appropriate to use 結婚することになりました in situations where you are informing someone or talking to someone you haven't seen in a while. 結婚することになりました clearly shows you've chosen to and you are likely telling friends in a conversation.

This is a rule of thumb, but Japanese themselves don't always follow through all the time. Some may purposely use the wrong one to make people laugh or what not.

第105課: Daily Expressions II

This lesson is a continuation of Lesson 25. Currently, coverage that was previously in the old versions of these lessons are being expanded. As this coverage is completed, this lesson will be moved next to Lesson 25. At which point, Lesson 105 will become one of the new offshoots.

How are You?

Many Westerners are familiar with the phrase *o-genki desu ka?* お元気ですか, which translates as “how are you?” The word *genki* 元気 is an adjectival noun meaning “lively/healthy.” Because one can usually tell whether someone is doing alright in this regard, *o-genki desu ka?* お元気ですか is most often used over the phone or via letter where you aren't able to directly ascertain how the person is (Ex. 1 and 2). Or, it is used in asking others about how people not present are doing.

1. お元気げんきですか。私わたしは元気げんきです。
O-genki desu ka? Watashi wa genki desu.
How are you? I'm fine.

2. お久ひさしぶりです。お元気げんきですか。
O-hisashiburi desu. O-genki desu ka?
It's been a while. How are you?

3. ご家族かぞくはお元気げんきですか。
Go-kazoku wa o-genki desu ka?
How is your family?

4. ご両親りょうしんはお元気げんきですか。
Go-ryōshin wa o-genki desu ka?
How are your parents doing?

5. 木村きむらさん、お元気げんきですか。
奥おくさんもお変かわりありませんか。
Kimura-san, o-genki desu ka?
Oku-san mo o-kawari arimasen ka?
Kimura-san, how are you?
Is your wife also doing well?

Phrase Note: お変わりありませんか literally means “have there been any changes?”

6. おかげで、お母かあさんも僕ぼくも元気げんきです。

O-kage de, o-kāsan mo boku mo genki desu.

Thankfully, mother and I are also well.

If there is an existing relationship with who you are speaking and that individual need not be addressed with particularly formal language, then this may also be simply said as *genki desu ka?* 元気ですか. This is best used in situation where you’re addressing people informally.

7. みんな元気げんきですか！

Min’na genki desu ka?

How is everyone!

Like the English equivalent, it is mostly used as a greeting. It is not used to mean “are you ok?” when you’re worried about someone. It is also not a greeting that is used every day. Even if it is used directly with someone, it wouldn’t sound like you really know the individual at a personal level. Although students use it as an everyday greeting, this usage is unnatural and not reflective of how it is actually used by native speakers.

Politeness Note: To make *o-genki desu ka?* お元気ですか politer, replace *desu* です with *deshō* でしょう.

If you haven’t seen someone in a while and want to know how they’ve been, it’s best to ask *(o-)genki deshita ka?* (お) 元気でしたか. Casually, this would become *genki (datta)?* 元気 (だった) ?

8. 幸さっちゃん、元気げんき？

Satchan, genki?

Satchan! How are you?

In far more formal situations, other phrases may be appropriate.

9. ご無事ぶじでいらっしゃいますか。

Go-buji de irasshaimasu ka?

Have you been safe and well?

Phrase Note: This phrase would be used in writing. *De irasshaimasu ka?* でいらっしゃいますか is a very formal, respectful form of the copula. You can alternatively make this not so formal by replacing it with *desu* です. In the spoken language, you can ask people *buji desu ka?* 無事ですか to ask about the safety of everyone, which is used frequently when disasters happen.

10. ご機嫌きげんいかがですか。

Go-kigen ikaga desu ka?

How are you?

Sentence Note: *Kigen* 機嫌 means “mood.” This phrase more so literally means “how do you do?” but it isn’t old-fashioned like this English

counterpart. For the most part, it's treated as a more formal, elegant replacement for *o-genki desu ka?* お元気ですか. However, it isn't appropriate in business because it isn't the case that clients/customers are always in high spirits, and it isn't the right place to assume this.

11. ご無沙汰ぶさたしております。お元気げんきでいらっしゃいますか。

Go-busata shite orimasu. O-genki de irasshaimasu ka?

I'm sorry for not hearing from you all this time. Are you doing well?

Sentence Note: Imagine if you haven't spoken or heard from a superior or someone of high social status for a while. Although blame for this lack of communication could be on both sides, a very honorific opening such as this would be very appropriate.

12. 長ながらくご無沙汰ぶさたしてすみません。

Nagaraku go-busata shite sumimasen.

I apologize for not hearing from you in so long.

13. ご無沙汰ぶさた {しました・いたしました}。

Go-busata [shimashita/itashimashita].

It's been a long time.

Sentence Note: This phrase would be appropriate especially when you're recognizing how long it's been since you've updated people. *Itashimashita* いたしました is a more humble version of *shimashita* しました.

14. いかがお過すごしでしょうか。

Ikaga o-sugoshi deshō ka?

How are things with you?

Sentence Note: This phrase is also quite honorific and is appropriate in very formal situations, both written and spoken.

15. しばらくでしたね。

Shibaraku deshita ne.

It's been a while, hasn't it?

Responding

In response to being asked how you are doing, use phrases like *ē, o-kage-sama de* ええ、おかげさまで. This is equivalent to "Yes, I'm fine. Thank you." This can also be used in the sense of "It went fine/I did, thank you."

16. 「ご家族かぞくの皆みなさんはお元気げんきですか」 「ええ、おかげさまで、みんな元気げんきにしていますよ」

"Go-kazoku no mina-san wa o-genki desu ka?" "Ē, o-kage-sama de, min'na genki ni shite imasu yo"

"How is everyone in your family doing?" "They're all doing fine, thank you."

17. 「試合しあいはいうまくいきましたか」 「ええ、おかげさまで」

"Shiai wa umaku ikimashita ka?" "Ē, o-kage-sama de."

"Did your match go okay?" "Yes, it did, thankfully."

Long Time No See

The Japanese equivalent of “long time no see” is *(o-)hisashiburi desu (ne)* (お) 久しぶりです (ね) . The use of *o-* お at the beginning is determined by whether the person in question is someone you ought to give respect to. The use of *ne* ね at the end is determined by whether you wish to imply a mutual understanding that it’s been a while since you’ve last seen that person.

Casually, “long time no see” can be expressed simply as *hisashiburi* 久しぶり or alternatively as *hisabisa da ne* 久々だね.

18. 皆さん、お久ひさしぶりです。

Mina-san, o-hisashiburi desu.

Long time no see, everyone.

19. おお、久々ひさびさだね！

Ō, hisabisa da ne!

Whoa, long time no see!

20. 調子はどうですか？

Chōshi wa dō desu ka?

How are you doing?

Sentence Note: This expression is frequently used when meeting someone after a while. *Chōshi* 調子 in this context means “state of health.” To say this casually, just drop *desu ka?* ですか.

21. 最近さいきんどう？

Saikin dō?

How’ve you been recently?

Sentence Note: To make this polite, just add *desu ka?* ですか. A simple reply would be *māmā (desu)* まあまあ (です) .

22. ずいぶんお見限みかぎりでしたね。

Zuibun o-mikagiri deshita ne.

I haven’t seen you in ages.

Sentence Note: This phrase isn’t all that common, but whenever it is used, there is typically a slight amount of sarcasm implied, hinting at how the other person hasn’t been available to see.

23. おひさ！

O-hisa!

Hey, long time no see!

Sentence Note: This expression is no longer really used—a *shigo* 死語—but it is still a notable contraction of *o-hisashiburi* お久しぶり.

Congratulations: *O-iwai no Kotoba* お祝いの言葉

The Japanese expression for “congratulations” is *omedetō (gozaimasu)* おめでとう (ございます) . The full version is, of course, the polite form. This phrase is seen at the end of congratulatory phrases.

24. (お) 誕生日たんじょうびおめでとうございます。

(O-)tanjōbi omedetō gozaimasu.

Happy birthday.

25. 明あけましておめでとうございます。

Akemashite omedetō gozaimasu.

Happy New Year.

26. ご入学にゅうがくおめでとうございます。

Go-nyūgaku omedetō gozaimasu.

Congratulations on enrollment.

27. ご結婚けっこんおめでとうございます。

Go-kekkon omedetō gozaimasu.

Congratulations on your marriage.

28. ご出産しゅっさんおめでとうございます。

Go-shussan omedetō gozaimasu.

Congratulations on giving birth.

Please

The word for “please” as in “by all means” is *dōzo* どうぞ. It is often paired with the verbal ending *-te kudasai* ～てください, which creates a polite command/request.

29. どうぞ。

Dōzo.

Please, by all means.

30. どうぞ上あがってください。

Dōzo agatte kudasai.

Please, come in.

Sentence Note: This phrase is used when letting people into one’s home.

31. お先さきにどうぞ。

O-saki ni dōzo.

Please go ahead.

32. どうぞお構かまいなく。

Dōzo o-kamai naku.

Please don’t fuss over me.

33. どうぞこちらへ。
Dōzo kochira e.
This way, please.

34. どうぞ召めし上あがってください。
Dōzo meshiagatte kudasai.
Please enjoy your meal.

If there is no sense of “by all means,” you should simply using *-te kudasai* ~
てください. Of course, in casual speech, you are free to drop *kudasai* くだ
さい.

35. 書類しよるいを纏まとめてください。
Shorui wo matomete kudasai.
Please compile the documents.

Meeting People

When meeting people for the first time regardless of the appropriate speech style for the occasion, Japanese people greet each other by saying *hajimemashite* 初めまして. Following this, most people state their name. At the end, speakers will tell each other to keep the other in good thought. The phrase that’s said for this is *yoroshiku onegai [shimasu/itashimasu]* よろしく お願い {します・いたします} . Although there is a lot that can be said about it, for now treat it as a set phrase set after introducing oneself. Typically, *kochira koso* こちらこそ (likewise) is added when you’re not the first to introduce oneself.

Intonation Note: はじめまして.

36.

はじめまして、佐々木ささき {と申もうします・です} 。
よろしくお願ねがい {します・いたします} 。
Hajimemashite, Sasaki [to mōshimasu/desu].
Yoroshiku o-negai [shimasu/itashimasu].
Nice to meet you. I’m Sasaki. Please keep me in good thought.

Sentence Note: The phrase *to mōshimasu* と申します literally means “am called.”

Asking OK

There are two broad usages of the word “okay” that you will need to separate when speaking in Japanese. The first application of “okay” is asking if someone is alright. The second application is asking if something is alright. If you are concerned about the well-being of someone, use Ex. 37. If

you are concerned about something being okay, use expressions as seen with Exs. 38-40.

37. 大丈夫だいじょうぶですか。

Daijōbu desu ka?

Are you okay?

Is that alright/okay?

Sentence Note: To make this casual, just drop *desu ka?* ですか. The response, regardless of whether one is really okay or not, is usually *daijōbu* (*desu*) 大丈夫 (です) .

38. よろしいですか。

Yoroshii desu ka?

Is that alright/okay?

39. それでも {いい・大丈夫} ですか。

Sore demo [ii/daijōbu] desu ka?

Is it okay even if it's that?

40. 本当ほんとうにいいの？

Hontō ni ii no?

Are you sure it's okay?

Sentence Note: To make this polite, follow *ii* いい with *n desu ka?* んですか.

第106課: Easy & Difficult: ~やすい, ~にくい, & ~づらい

Who knew that expressing easy and difficult could both in fact be slightly difficult in Japanese?

Part of Speech Note: These endings are all adjectival.

Easy and Difficult

~やすい, when used with transitive verbs, shows that something is easy to do. When used with intransitive verbs, it means that something is easy to occur.

1. このサンドイッチは小さくて、食べやすいよ。

This sandwich is small and easy to eat.

2. そのペンはとても書きやすいです。

That pen is very easy to write with.

3. あの山は登のぼりやすすくない。

That mountain (over there) isn't easy to climb.

4. 白いシャツは汚よごれやすい。

White shirts easily get dirty.

5. インターネットを使いやすくしたのは誰でしょうか。
Who was it that made the internet easier to use.

6. 僕にはこの車は運転うんてんしやすい。
This car is easy for me to drive.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 spelling is no longer commonly used. It is usually found in older writing.

Instead of ～やすい, the adjective よい may also be used. This, though, is very old-fashioned or unheard to speakers depending on where the person is from. Some natives may not even recognize it as being correct Japanese, but it does indeed exist. In fact, it is still extremely common even in the form いい in 関東弁. Its usage in the capital region is still prevalent in people 60 and older.

7. 咳止せきどめ薬ぐすりは飲みよいはずである。(あまり使われていない)
咳止め薬は飲みやすいはずだ。(Natural)
The cough medicine should be easy to take.

～難にくい shows either that something is difficult to do or to occur. ～難がたい only shows the inability to do something, and it is usually restricted to writing and set expressions. Lastly, ～辛い may be used instead of ～にくい to describes undesirable circumstances. These endings attach to the 連用形 of verbs and conjugate as 形容詞.

8. この本は読みにくいです。
This book is difficult to read.

9a. 歩き辛い道は坂道さかみちだ。(ちょっと不自然ふしぜん)

9b. 坂道は、歩きづらい。(もっと自然)
A road difficult to walk on is a hill.

10a. 書きよい漢字は存在そんざいするのかな？(Old-fashioned)

10b. 書きやすい漢字は存在するのかな？(Natural)
I wonder if a Kanji that is easy to write exists.

11. 考えにくいと思います。
I think that is difficult to consider.

12. この戸は開きにくい。
This door is difficult to open.

13. 字が薄うすくて、読みづらいです。
The letters are faded, and it is difficult to read.

14. 生徒達は皆みな教え難がたくて、ぜんぜん言うことに聞かなくて、『いまび』を滅多めったに読まなくて、困こまったんです。
My students are all very hard to teach because they never listen to what I say and rarely read IMABI; I'm very troubled by this.

15. 言い {難がたい・にくい・づらい} ことだ。
It's hard to say.
16. 彼は付き合い難がたいやつだな。
He is a difficult person to get along with isn't he?
17. 彼女の言葉は聞き取り難がたかった。
Her speech was difficult to hear.
18. 日本は住みにくいです。
Living in Japan is difficult.
19. 彼女はその職の適任者とは言いがたい。
It's difficult to say that she is the right candidate for the job.

第107課: Too/Continue: ～すぎる, ～続ける, & ～急ぐ

Yes, the title is a pun.

～すぎる

過ぎる means "to pass" and is used both transitively and intransitively. It may be used in basically any situation that relates to someone or something passing by. ～過ぎる shows something "is too..." or someone is doing something "too much". When used with adjectives, you drop the く or に in the 連用形 altogether. Likewise, with 形容動詞, you don't use the copula.

Verb 食べる + すぎる → 食べすぎる
形容詞 小さい + すぎる → 小さすぎる
形容動詞 簡単 + すぎる → 簡単すぎる

漢字 Note: This is usually written in ひらがな when used as an ending.

1. 酒を飲みすぎて、二日酔ふつかよいがある。
I drank too much sake, and I have a hangover.
2. 小さすぎる。大きいのがある？
This is too small. Do you have a bigger one?
3. 食べ過ぎないでくださいね。
Please don't overeat.
4. 真夜中まよなかを過ぎる。
To pass through midnight.

漢字 Note: Be careful to not confuse this 中 with the suffix ちゅう・じゅう. It turns out that 夜中, which is read as やちゅう, means "at night", but it's a 書き言葉.

5. あんた、頭がよすぎるよ。(Casual; potentially rude)
You're too smart!
6. この問題は難しすぎる。
This question is too difficult.
7. そのカメラは高すぎるね。
Isn't that camera too high?
8. 明日では遅おそすぎるでしょう。
Tomorrow will probably be too late.
9. 道路 どちらの横断おうだんにはいくら注意ちゅういしてもしすぎることはない。
You can never be too careful when crossing the street.
10. 君は彼女に期待きたいをかけすぎる。
You expect too much of her.
11. いくら好きでも、食べすぎると、体に悪いです。
No matter how much you like it, eating too much is bad for your health.
12. 彼はやりすぎたよ。
He went too far.
13. 時間が過ぎた。
Time passed.
14. この物理学の問題は難しすぎて、理解するのは無理です。
This physics problem is too difficult, and understanding it is useless.
15. コンピューターの画面に近すぎないことが大切だ。
It's important to not get too close to the computer screen.
16. 考え事をしながら歩いていたら、自分の家の前を通り過ぎてしまった。
Lost in thought, I walked past my house.

Word Note: 通り過ぎる usually means to "pass by", but it can also have the sense "going too far".

Grammar Note: What about the negative? Take the following two similar phrases into consideration. 読まなすぎる vs. 読みすぎない. The first one states that one "reads too little". The second states that one "doesn't read too much". There may also be cases when ～なすぎる is inappropriate for pragmatic reasons in particular contexts.

17. 彼は何もできなすぎる。△
He can't do anything.

The Intensifier ～ない

There is also a suffix ～ない that increases the intensity of a given adjective. Inserting さ when using them with ～すぎる is wrong, but speakers occasionally do so anyway.

The confusing part about this is that this does come from the negative ない. It so happened that late in Classical Japanese it acquired the meaning of just being an intensifier to particular phrases.

18. だらしない生活をする。
To lead a sloven lifestyle.
19. あの映画はまったくえげつないよ。
That movie is just completely dirty.
20. はしたなく言い争う。
To immodestly quarrel.
21. しがないサラリーマンの人生
The humble life of a salary-man
22. あどけない子供の笑顔を見る。
To look at the angelic smile of a child,
23. ぎこちなく運転しちゃだめだ。
Don't drive all clumsy.
24. {いとけない・無邪気な} 子
An innocent child
25. 滅相もない・滅相なことをいうものじゃないよ！
Don't say something so absurd!

There are a few cases where the original adjective and the adjective with the intensifier ～ない exist, just like above. Another example is 忙せわしない and 忙しい. The first means "seems busy" and the other means "really busy", but it is still the case that the former is more intense.

26. 彼はせわしい人だ。
He's a real busybody.
27. 忙しい季節
A season so busy with no time to rest

Another odd pair is 切な versus 切ない. 切な is now typically 切なる, odd giving that this is more Classical in form. The word means "earnest", and you would think 切ない would mean that too. It did, but over time it gained more negative undertones, and now it refers to heartrending sadness. This, though, sprouted out from the meaning of "earnest".

28. 切な（る）顔
An earnest face
29. 切なさを堪える。
To withhold heart-wrenching.

Another weird word is 怪しからん. This comes from the old verb 怪しかる, but rather than being opposites, they accidentally became the same thing, both meaning "inexcusable".

30. 親切に扱ってくれた人の不満をいうとは怪しからん。(Dialectical/older person)

Complaining about those who have treated you well is inexcusable.

～続ける

The 一段 verb 続つづける means "to continue". The verb is normally used for "one's own" actions. If the verb happens naturally, the verb 続く is used instead. Although you would think that this distinction would be carried in compounds, ～続く is essentially only seen with the verb 降ふる.

一段 Verbs	見る + 続ける →	見続ける
五段 Verbs	泳ぐ + 続ける →	泳ぎ続ける
Noun + Copula	Nounだ + 続ける →	<u>男性であり</u> 続ける
形容詞	美しい + 続ける →	<u>美しくあり</u> 続ける
形容動詞	自由な + 続ける →	<u>自由であり</u> 続ける

31. 日本語を勉強し続けてください。
Please continue studying Japanese.

32. 我 わがままを通とおし続ける。
Continue one's own way.

33. 彼氏んちまで歩き続けた。(Casual 東京弁)
I continued walking up to my boyfriend's house.

34. 電話のベルは鳴り続けた。
The phone kept ringing.

35. ハチ公こうは来る日も来る日も主人しゅじんの帰りを待ち続けた。
Hachiko waited day after day for his master to return.

Culture Note: ハチ公 is a dog that was so loyal to his master, it waited for him to return at the station even after the owner's death.

36. 彼らは働はたらき続けた。
They continued working.

37. 赤ちゃんはぐっすりと眠ねむり続けていた。
The baby was continuing to sleep soundly.

38. 火が燃もえ続けている。
The fire is continuing to burn.

39. 雨が降り続いている。
It is continuing to rain.

40. 既　　すでに骸むくろになってしまったとはいえ、やはり母は、こうして祥子の頭をいためる存在であり続けるのだ。

Although she has already become a corpse, mother will after all continue an existence of having Sachiko ache this way.

From 冷たい誘惑ゆうわく by 乃南のなみアサ.

漢字 Notes:

1. すでに is often not spelled in 漢字. However, 既に is more formal and literary.

2. 骸 means "corpse" and is stronger than other words like 遺体, which is typically used in news reports, or 死体.

3. 祥 is a name character meaning "auspicious".

4. 乃 is also a name character. Its most important reading is の. This is used to write the particle の in many names and in old writing.

～続ける VS ～のを続ける

These two patterns translate the same as "to continue...", but they're not exactly the same. ～続ける shows an action/state that is ongoing. The latter simply states that there is a continuation of some sort. For example, a way to distinguish this in English would be similar to "she is continuing to watch the show" versus "she continues to watch the show". The first shows the ongoing state of her watching the show whereas the latter just states that she continues to regularly watch the show.

41. 彼女はその番組を観続けている。

She's continuing to watch that show.

42. 彼女は、その番組を観るのを続けている。

She continues to watch that show.

漢字 Note: You can use 見 instead of 観, but the latter is often used for watching things like movies, shows, etc.

～急ぐ

急ぐ means "to hurry" and can be seen in both transitive and intransitive contexts. As a transitive verb, it can be used in compounds to show that one is trying to hurry and finish something. Its -て form 急いで can also be used to show this as an adverbial phrase. It is best for this ending to see it used in a compound verb before using it as such.

43. 売り急ぐ。

To be in a hurry to sell.

44a. リンゴを買い急ぐ。(ちょっと不自然)

44b. 急いでリンゴを買う。(もっと自然)

To buy apples in a hurry.

45. 彼は死に急いだ。
He hastened to his death.

46. 急いで服ふくを着きた。
I hurried and got dressed.

47. 学校へ急ぐ。
To hurry to school.

Word Note: 焦あせる is not the same thing. This implies frustration that things might not go as planned.

48. 彼は焦って失敗しっぱいした。
He hurried it and failed.

第107課: Too/Continue: ～すぎる, ～続ける, & ～急ぐ

Yes, the title is a pun.

～すぎる

過ぎる means "to pass" and is used both transitively and intransitively. It may be used in basically any situation that relates to someone or something passing by. ～過ぎる shows something "is too..." or someone is doing something "too much". When used with adjectives, you drop the く or に in the 連用形 altogether. Likewise, with 形容動詞, you don't use the copula.

Verb 食べる + すぎる → 食べすぎる
形容詞 小さい + すぎる → 小さすぎる
形容動詞 簡単 + すぎる → 簡単すぎる

漢字 Note: This is usually written in ひらがな when used as an ending.

1. 酒を飲みすぎて、二日酔ふつかよいがある。
I drank too much sake, and I have a hangover.

2. 小さすぎる。大きいのがある？
This is too small. Do you have a bigger one?

3. 食べ過ぎないでくださいね。
Please don't overeat.

4. 真夜中まよなかを過ぎる。
To pass through midnight.

漢字 Note: Be careful to not confuse this 中 with the suffix ちゅう・じゅう. It turns out that 夜中, which is read as やちゅう, means "at night", but it's a 書き言葉.

5. あんた、頭がよすぎるよ。(Casual; potentially rude)
You're too smart!

6. この問題は難しすぎる。
This question is too difficult.
7. そのカメラは高すぎるね。
Isn't that camera too high?
8. 明日では遅おそすぎるでしょう。
Tomorrow will probably be too late.
9. 道路 道の横断おうだんにはいくら注意ちゅういしてもしすぎることはない。
You can never be too careful when crossing the street.
10. 君は彼女に期待きたいをかけすぎる。
You expect too much of her.
11. いくら好きでも、食べすぎると、体に悪いです。
No matter how much you like it, eating too much is bad for your health.
12. 彼はやりすぎたよ。
He went too far.
13. 時間が過ぎた。
Time passed.
14. この物理学の問題は難しすぎて、理解するのは無理です。
This physics problem is too difficult, and understanding it is useless.
15. コンピューターの画面に近すぎないことが大切だ。
It's important to not get too close to the computer screen.
16. 考え事をしながら歩いていたら、自分の家の前を通り過ぎてしまった。
Lost in thought, I walked past my house.

Word Note: 通り過ぎる usually means to "pass by", but it can also have the sense "going too far".

Grammar Note: What about the negative? Take the following two similar phrases into consideration. 読まなすぎる vs. 読みすぎない. The first one states that one "reads too little". The second states that one "doesn't read too much". There may also be cases when ～なすぎる is inappropriate for pragmatic reasons in particular contexts.

17. 彼は何もできなすぎる。△
He can't do anything.

The Intensifier ～ない

There is also a suffix ～ない that increases the intensity of a given adjective. Inserting さ when using them with ～すぎる is wrong, but speakers occasionally do so anyway.

The confusing part about this is that this does come from the negative ない. It so happened that late in Classical Japanese it acquired the meaning of just being an intensifier to particular phrases.

18. だらしない生活をする。
To lead a sloven lifestyle.
19. あの映画はまったくえげつないよ。
That movie is just completely dirty.
20. はしたなく言い争う。
To immodestly quarrel.
21. しがないサラリーマンの人生
The humble life of a salary-man
22. あどけない子供の笑顔を見る。
To look at the angelic smile of a child,
23. ぎこちなく運転しちゃだめだ。
Don't drive all clumsy.
24. {いとけない・無邪気な} 子
An innocent child
25. 滅相もない・滅相なことをいうものじゃないよ！
Don't say something so absurd!

There are a few cases where the original adjective and the adjective with the intensifier ～ない exist, just like above. Another example is 忙せわしない and 忙しい. The first means "seems busy" and the other means "really busy", but it is still the case that the former is more intense.

26. 彼はせわしい人だ。
He's a real busybody.
27. 忙しい季節
A season so busy with no time to rest

Another odd pair is 切な versus 切ない. 切な is now typically 切なる, odd giving that this is more Classical in form. The word means "earnest", and you would think 切ない would mean that too. It did, but over time it gained more negative undertones, and now it refers to heartrending sadness. This, though, sprouted out from the meaning of "earnest".

28. 切な（る）顔
An earnest face
29. 切なさを堪える。
To withhold heart-wrenching.

Another weird word is 怪しからん. This comes from the old verb 怪しかる, but rather than being opposites, they accidentally became the same thing, both meaning "inexcusable".

30. 親切に扱ってくれた人の不満をいうとは怪しからん。(Dialectical/older person)

Complaining about those who have treated you well is inexcusable.

～続ける

The 一段 verb 続つづける means "to continue". The verb is normally used for "one's own" actions. If the verb happens naturally, the verb 続く is used instead. Although you would think that this distinction would be carried in compounds, ～続く is essentially only seen with the verb 降ふる.

一段 Verbs	見る + 続ける →	見続ける
五段 Verbs	泳ぐ + 続ける →	泳ぎ続ける
Noun + Copula	Nounだ + 続ける →	<u>男性であり</u> 続ける
形容詞	美しい + 続ける →	<u>美しくあり</u> 続ける
形容動詞	自由な + 続ける →	<u>自由であり</u> 続ける

31. 日本語を勉強し続けてください。
Please continue studying Japanese.

32. 我 わがままを通とおし続ける。
Continue one's own way.

33. 彼氏んちまで歩き続けた。(Casual 東京弁)
I continued walking up to my boyfriend's house.

34. 電話のベルは鳴り続けた。
The phone kept ringing.

35. ハチ公こうは来る日も来る日も主人しゅじんの帰りを待ち続けた。
Hachiko waited day after day for his master to return.

Culture Note: ハチ公 is a dog that was so loyal to his master, it waited for him to return at the station even after the owner's death.

36. 彼らは働はたらき続けた。
They continued working.

37. 赤ちゃんはぐっすりと眠ねむり続けていた。
The baby was continuing to sleep soundly.

38. 火が燃もえ続けている。
The fire is continuing to burn.

39. 雨が降り続いている。
It is continuing to rain.

40. 既　　すでに骸むくろになってしまったとはいえ、やはり母は、こうして祥子の頭をいためる存在であり続けるのだ。

Although she has already become a corpse, mother will after all continue an existence of having Sachiko ache this way.

From 冷たい誘惑ゆうわく by 乃南のなみアサ.

漢字 Notes:

1. すでに is often not spelled in 漢字. However, 既に is more formal and literary.

2. 骸 means "corpse" and is stronger than other words like 遺体, which is typically used in news reports, or 死体.

3. 祥 is a name character meaning "auspicious".

4. 乃 is also a name character. Its most important reading is の. This is used to write the particle の in many names and in old writing.

～続ける VS ～のを続ける

These two patterns translate the same as "to continue...", but they're not exactly the same. ～続ける shows an action/state that is ongoing. The latter simply states that there is a continuation of some sort. For example, a way to distinguish this in English would be similar to "she is continuing to watch the show" versus "she continues to watch the show". The first shows the ongoing state of her watching the show whereas the latter just states that she continues to regularly watch the show.

41. 彼女はその番組を観続けている。

She's continuing to watch that show.

42. 彼女は、その番組を観るのを続けている。

She continues to watch that show.

漢字 Note: You can use 見 instead of 観, but the latter is often used for watching things like movies, shows, etc.

～急ぐ

急ぐ means "to hurry" and can be seen in both transitive and intransitive contexts. As a transitive verb, it can be used in compounds to show that one is trying to hurry and finish something. Its -て form 急いで can also be used to show this as an adverbial phrase. It is best for this ending to see it used in a compound verb before using it as such.

43. 売り急ぐ。

To be in a hurry to sell.

44a. リンゴを買い急ぐ。(ちょっと不自然)

44b. 急いでリンゴを買う。(もっと自然)

To buy apples in a hurry.

45. 彼は死に急いだ。
He hastened to his death.

46. 急いで服ふくを着きた。
I hurried and got dressed.

47. 学校へ急ぐ。
To hurry to school.

Word Note: 焦あせる is not the same thing. This implies frustration that things might not go as planned.

48. 彼は焦って失敗しっぱいした。
He hurried it and failed.

第107課: Too/Continue: ～すぎる, ～続ける, & ～急ぐ

Yes, the title is a pun.

～すぎる

過ぎる means "to pass" and is used both transitively and intransitively. It may be used in basically any situation that relates to someone or something passing by. ～過ぎる shows something "is too..." or someone is doing something "too much". When used with adjectives, you drop the く or に in the 連用形 altogether. Likewise, with 形容動詞, you don't use the copula.

Verb 食べる + すぎる → 食べすぎる
形容詞 小さい + すぎる → 小さすぎる
形容動詞 簡単 + すぎる → 簡単すぎる

漢字 Note: This is usually written in ひらがな when used as an ending.

1. 酒を飲みすぎて、二日酔ふつかよいがある。
I drank too much sake, and I have a hangover.

2. 小さすぎる。大きいのがある？
This is too small. Do you have a bigger one?

3. 食べ過ぎないでくださいね。
Please don't overeat.

4. 真夜中まよなかを過ぎる。
To pass through midnight.

漢字 Note: Be careful to not confuse this 中 with the suffix ちゅう・じゅう. It turns out that 夜中, which is read as やちゅう, means "at night", but it's a 書き言葉.

5. あんた、頭がよすぎるよ。(Casual; potentially rude)
You're too smart!

6. この問題は難しすぎる。
This question is too difficult.
7. そのカメラは高すぎるね。
Isn't that camera too high?
8. 明日では遅おそすぎるでしょう。
Tomorrow will probably be too late.
9. 道路 道の横断おうだんにはいくら注意ちゅういしてもしすぎることはない。
You can never be too careful when crossing the street.
10. 君は彼女に期待きたいをかけすぎる。
You expect too much of her.
11. いくら好きでも、食べすぎると、体に悪いです。
No matter how much you like it, eating too much is bad for your health.
12. 彼はやりすぎたよ。
He went too far.
13. 時間が過ぎた。
Time passed.
14. この物理学の問題は難しすぎて、理解するのは無理です。
This physics problem is too difficult, and understanding it is useless.
15. コンピューターの画面に近すぎないことが大切だ。
It's important to not get too close to the computer screen.
16. 考え事をしながら歩いていたら、自分の家の前を通り過ぎてしまった。
Lost in thought, I walked past my house.

Word Note: 通り過ぎる usually means to "pass by", but it can also have the sense "going too far".

Grammar Note: What about the negative? Take the following two similar phrases into consideration. 読まなすぎる vs. 読みすぎない. The first one states that one "reads too little". The second states that one "doesn't read too much". There may also be cases when ～なすぎる is inappropriate for pragmatic reasons in particular contexts.

17. 彼は何もできなすぎる。△
He can't do anything.

The Intensifier ～ない

There is also a suffix ～ない that increases the intensity of a given adjective. Inserting さ when using them with ～すぎる is wrong, but speakers occasionally do so anyway.

The confusing part about this is that this does come from the negative ない. It so happened that late in Classical Japanese it acquired the meaning of just being an intensifier to particular phrases.

18. だらしない生活をする。
To lead a sloven lifestyle.
19. あの映画はまったくえげつないよ。
That movie is just completely dirty.
20. はしたなく言い争う。
To immodestly quarrel.
21. しがないサラリーマンの人生
The humble life of a salary-man
22. あどけない子供の笑顔を見る。
To look at the angelic smile of a child,
23. ぎこちなく運転しちゃだめだ。
Don't drive all clumsy.
24. {いとけない・無邪気な} 子
An innocent child
25. 滅相もない・滅相なことをいうものじゃないよ！
Don't say something so absurd!

There are a few cases where the original adjective and the adjective with the intensifier ～ない exist, just like above. Another example is 忙せわしない and 忙しい. The first means "seems busy" and the other means "really busy", but it is still the case that the former is more intense.

26. 彼はせわしい人だ。
He's a real busybody.
27. 忙しい季節
A season so busy with no time to rest

Another odd pair is 切な versus 切ない. 切な is now typically 切なる, odd giving that this is more Classical in form. The word means "earnest", and you would think 切ない would mean that too. It did, but over time it gained more negative undertones, and now it refers to heartrending sadness. This, though, sprouted out from the meaning of "earnest".

28. 切な（る）顔
An earnest face
29. 切なさを堪える。
To withhold heart-wrenching.

Another weird word is 怪しからん. This comes from the old verb 怪しかる, but rather than being opposites, they accidentally became the same thing, both meaning "inexcusable".

30. 親切に扱ってくれた人の不満をいうとは怪しからん。(Dialectical/older person)

Complaining about those who have treated you well is inexcusable.

～続ける

The 一段 verb 続つづける means "to continue". The verb is normally used for "one's own" actions. If the verb happens naturally, the verb 続く is used instead. Although you would think that this distinction would be carried in compounds, ～続く is essentially only seen with the verb 降ふる.

一段 Verbs	見る + 続ける →	見続ける
五段 Verbs	泳ぐ + 続ける →	泳ぎ続ける
Noun + Copula	Nounだ + 続ける →	<u>男性であり</u> 続ける
形容詞	美しい + 続ける →	<u>美しくあり</u> 続ける
形容動詞	自由な + 続ける →	<u>自由であり</u> 続ける

31. 日本語を勉強し続けてください。
Please continue studying Japanese.

32. 我 わがままを通とおし続ける。
Continue one's own way.

33. 彼氏んちまで歩き続けた。(Casual 東京弁)
I continued walking up to my boyfriend's house.

34. 電話のベルは鳴り続けた。
The phone kept ringing.

35. ハチ公こうは来る日も来る日も主人しゅじんの帰りを待ち続けた。
Hachiko waited day after day for his master to return.

Culture Note: ハチ公 is a dog that was so loyal to his master, it waited for him to return at the station even after the owner's death.

36. 彼らは働はたらき続けた。
They continued working.

37. 赤ちゃんはぐっすりと眠ねむり続けていた。
The baby was continuing to sleep soundly.

38. 火が燃もえ続けている。
The fire is continuing to burn.

39. 雨が降り続いている。
It is continuing to rain.

40. 既　　すでに骸むくろになってしまったとはいえ、やはり母は、こうして祥子の頭をいためる存在であり続けるのだ。

Although she has already become a corpse, mother will after all continue an existence of having Sachiko ache this way.

From 冷たい誘惑ゆうわく by 乃南のなみアサ.

漢字 Notes:

1. すでに is often not spelled in 漢字. However, 既に is more formal and literary.

2. 骸 means "corpse" and is stronger than other words like 遺体, which is typically used in news reports, or 死体.

3. 祥 is a name character meaning "auspicious".

4. 乃 is also a name character. Its most important reading is の. This is used to write the particle の in many names and in old writing.

～続ける VS ～のを続ける

These two patterns translate the same as "to continue...", but they're not exactly the same. ～続ける shows an action/state that is ongoing. The latter simply states that there is a continuation of some sort. For example, a way to distinguish this in English would be similar to "she is continuing to watch the show" versus "she continues to watch the show". The first shows the ongoing state of her watching the show whereas the latter just states that she continues to regularly watch the show.

41. 彼女はその番組を観続けている。

She's continuing to watch that show.

42. 彼女は、その番組を観るのを続けている。

She continues to watch that show.

漢字 Note: You can use 見 instead of 観, but the latter is often used for watching things like movies, shows, etc.

～急ぐ

急ぐ means "to hurry" and can be seen in both transitive and intransitive contexts. As a transitive verb, it can be used in compounds to show that one is trying to hurry and finish something. Its -て form 急いで can also be used to show this as an adverbial phrase. It is best for this ending to see it used in a compound verb before using it as such.

43. 売り急ぐ。

To be in a hurry to sell.

44a. リンゴを買い急ぐ。(ちょっと不自然)

44b. 急いでリンゴを買う。(もっと自然)

To buy apples in a hurry.

45. 彼は死に急いだ。
He hastened to his death.

46. 急いで服ふくを着きた。
I hurried and got dressed.

47. 学校へ急ぐ。
To hurry to school.

Word Note: 焦あせる is not the same thing. This implies frustration that things might not go as planned.

48. 彼は焦って失敗しっぱいした。
He hurried it and failed.

第109課: Conditionals I: The Particles と, なら(ば), たら, & ば

Creating an "if" statement in Japanese is not easy. This lesson will showcase to you three of the most common grammar points in Japanese to make conditional phrases. By no means, though, does this mean you will be able to master them completely by reading this lesson. The differences between these patterns are highly contextual, and it will still take a lot of practice to get the hang of them. So, by all means, please take your time as you read through this lesson.

The Conjunctive Particle と

The conjunctive と can be described as being in the part of the construction of the following constructs. For all of these constructs, the particle follows the non-past tense of a verb.

1. When X happens, Y will happen. For example, "when you turn, there will be a bank".
2. When X happens, Y happens. For example, "when I opened the door, snow came in".
3. When/if..., then... (Certain)

So, **"when X happens, Y happens"**. Y is predictable or an unavoidable fact. This is not an "if" statement. Even when it is translated with the word "if", Y is still something that is certain. So, this means that this pattern is **not correct for requests, judgments, etc.** These sorts of things don't have a 100% degree of certainty, and they can be easily refuted.

Examples

1. 四月になると、桜さくらが咲く。
When it becomes April, cherry blossoms will blossom.
2. 先生だと、きっと年上というえなんじゃないですか。
If he's a teacher, surely he has to be older, right?

3. 病院びょういんに行くと藤原さんがいました。

When I went to the hospital, Mr. Fujiwara was there.

4. 今出かけないと遅おくれるよ。

If you don't depart now, you'll be late.

5. 窓まどを開あけると、牛が見えます。

When you open the window, you can see cows.

6. 日が昇のぼると、明るくなります。

When the sun rises, it becomes bright.

7. 日が沈しずむと、暗くなります。

When the sun sets, it becomes dark.

8. 昆布こんぶや何かで出汁だしを取るといい。

It would be good to gather soup stock with kombu or something.

9. 3に2を足たすと、5になります。

When we add 2 to 3, we get 5.

10. 雪が降ふり始めると、動物どうぶつたちは冬眠とうみんを始める。

When it begins to snow, the animals begin hibernation.

11. ワカメやヒジキを食べると髪が生える。

Your hair grows when you eat wakame and hijiki.

Word Note: ワカメ and ヒジキ are different kinds of edible seaweed.

12. ♪さかなさかなさかな～魚を食べると～♪あたまあたまあたま～頭がよくなる～♪

Fish, fish, fish, when you eat fish, your brain gets smart, your brain gets smart, your brain gets smart.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. If you warm ice, it melts.

2. 部屋に入るとカーテンを開けた。

3. ボーイフレンドと京都に行きました。

4. ドアを開けると、犬がいた。窓まどを開けると、鳥がいた。そして、ゴミ箱ばこを開けると、ねずみがいた。

The Conjunctive Particle なら (ば)

なら may show **advice**. It can show things that would be realistic if something were to ever be the case. なら is called the *contextual conditional* because it is equivalent to "**if you are talking about..., then...**". Overall, なら(ば) is used to give *suggestions, speculation, or requests*.

13. 中国に行くなら、万里ばんりの長城ちょうじょうを見てください。

If you are going to China, please see the Great Wall.

14. カメラを買いきたいなら、秋葉原に行った方がいいです。
If you want to buy a camera, it's best to go to Akihabara.
15. 郵便局ゆうびんきょくに行くなら、60円の切手きってを5枚買ってきてください。
If you are going to the post office, please buy five 60 yen stamps.
16. いいえ、売り切れましたが、自由席じゆうせきならあります。
No, they are sold out, but we have unreserved seats.
17. どうしてもというなら仕方しかたがない。
If you must, you have no choice.
18. それなら話は早い。
That makes it easy.
19. 仕事を終えたのなら、帰かえっていいよ。
You may leave provided/providing that you finished your work.
20. 知っているんなら、教えてください。
Providing that you know, please tell me.

Grammar Note: *なら* expresses the speaker's supposition or defines the basis of the statement. There is no required temporal ordering of the two situations presented. So, it can't be used to show a consequence in the past or condition for the future.

Nuance Note: *のなら* is stronger and enforces a confirmation of the content of the condition.

Usage Note: *なら* can also be used as a conjunction at the front of a sentence in broken down speech for *それなら*.

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. 韓国かんこくに行くなら（ば）、飛行機ひこうきの方がよいです。
2. みなが行くなら、私も行きます。
3. 電車がないなら、歩くまでだ。
4. 大阪おおさかに行くなら、新幹線しんかんせんがいいですよ。
5. その話なら何度なんども聞いているよ。

The Conjunctive Particle *たら*

1. Shows an unrealized event being hypothesized, not completely certain. It's **often** preceded by *もし*. In a temporal condition, the next action is to happen after the action with *たら*. So, something happens **once certain conditions are met**.

21. 会議かいぎが終わったら、電話でんわしますね。
I'll call you once the meeting ends, OK?

22. 金持かねもちになったら、城しろを買う！

If I were rich, I'd so buy a castle!

23. もし雨が降らなかったら、行きましょう。

If it doesn't rain, let's go.

24. 雨が（降り）やんだら、どこかに行くとした。

After it finished raining, we decided to go somewhere.

25. 日本に行けたらいいなあ。

It would be nice if I could go to Japan.

26. もし地球ちきゅうに引力いんりょくがなかったら、空中くうちゅうに浮ういているでしょう。

If there wasn't gravity on earth, you would probably be floating in the air.

27. 地震じしんが収おさまったら、正しい情報じょうほうを聞いてください。

Once an earthquake subsides, get accurate information.

2. When you do X, Y happens. The latter part is typically unexpected.

28. ドアを開けたら、加藤かとうさんが立っていました。

When I opened the door, Mr. Kato was standing there.

29. 本を読んであげたら、弟が喜よろこびました。

When I read the book for my younger brother, he was very happy.

30. 休んだら、元気になった。

When I rested, I got better.

31. 銀行に行ったら、友人ゆうじんに会いました。

When I went to the bank, I saw a friend.

3. Shows an **obvious** conditional. This is a **generic condition**. This means that something is almost always followed by some situation. This "almost always" diction suggests that it is not as certain as と.

32. この会社かいしゃの社員しゃいんだったら、あの大学だいがくで割引わりびきがもらえる。

If you are an employee of this company, you can get a discount at that college.

33. 人を殺ころしたら、死刑しけいになります。

If you kill a person, you'll get the death penalty.

34. 風邪かぜを引いたら、くしゃみが出でます。

If we catch a cold, we sneeze.

4. (の) だったら emphasizes a topic because of the condition of someone else.

35. やりたくないんだったらやめてくれ。 (Vulgar)
If you don't want to do it, stop!

36. お父さんだったら部屋にいるよ。
If you're talking about dad, he's in the room.

たら may be たらば in formal situations. In hypothetical situations, もし(も) is *almost always* added. Unlike と or なら, たら may be in a hypothetical yet unrealistic gesture. It's also the most common conditional because of its wide usage. However, it's often avoided in formal writing.

The Adverb もし

We saw that in the first usage of たら, もし was always present. もし is related to hypothetical events. If you looked in a Japanese dictionary, you would find a definition similar to the following.

37. ある事態じたいを仮定かていして述のべることを表あらわす。
It shows an event of hypothesizing and stating a certain condition.

When a clause with たら is used to show a hypothetical condition--where it may or may not happen--it is **usually** used with もし. もし is also used with counter-factual hypothetical statements where the event is extremely unrealistic. Even here, もし simply adds more **uncertainty**.

38. 毎日すしが食べられたら、私は幸せでしょう。
If I could eat sushi every day, I would be very happy.

39. もし雨が降れば私は家にいます。
If it rains tomorrow, I will stay at home.

40. もし私があなただったらすこし待つでしょう。
If I were you, I'd wait a while.

41. もし君が僕の立場たちばだったら、どうしますか？
Suppose you were in my place, what would you do?

The Conjunctive Particle ば

ば creates the *provisional conditional form* with the 已然形 *いぜんけい*. Never confuse this with the potential forms of verbs. There is a **difference** between 買えば and 買えれば. The first is ば with the basic form of the verb, and the second is ば with the potential form of the verb. The chart below shows how to conjugate with the 已然形. You are now responsible to know what this base is.

形容詞	形容動詞	一段	五段	する	来る	である	だ
-----	------	----	----	----	----	-----	---

新しければ 簡単であれば 食べれば 歌えば すれば 来（く）れば であれば ならば

ば shows that **the previous stated condition's establishment is the condition for the latter stated condition to occur**. The subjects of both clauses should not show volition. So, although the subject may be the same in both clauses, the resultant outcome should be natural in such instance.

This particle is perfect for showing desired result, so it would sound unnatural if the latter clause had some negative/undesired result specifically stated. This, then, does not mean "negative words" used in making suggestions/commands are then ungrammatical because you are soliciting a desired outcome.

ば may also show the cue for a latter stated recognition or judgment.

42. ほかに意見がなければ、これで終わしましょう。

If you don't have any other opinions, let's end here.

43. まあ、無理むり {なら・であれば}、月曜日までに出してください。

Well, if it's impossibility, turn it in by Monday.

Like たら, it can show generic, temporal, and hypothetical conditions, but it's more forceful and places emphasis on the **future aspect**. The main clause shouldn't suggest with **an action** in the following manner.

44. 京都へ来たら、ぜひ連絡してください。○京都へ来れば、ぜひ連絡してください。
X

Once you come to Kyoto, please contact me.

The suggestion is to do something once the condition of reaching Kyoto is met. Both conditionals can be followed by expressions reflecting the will of the speaker, but phrases with ば tend to be stronger and directed more specifically on something.

45. 押おせば、開ひらきます。

It will open once you push it.

46. 冬になれば、雪が降る。

When it becomes winter, snow will fall.

Grammar Note: たら has a sequence requirement, but this "once" nuance of ば focuses on the conditional as the instigator for the latter to occur. So, it is stronger.

47. 都合がよければ、一緒いっしょに大阪に行きませんか。

How about going to Osaka together if it's convenient with you?

48. 自信じしんがあれば半なかば成功せいこうしたも同然どうぜんだ。(Proverb)

Confidence is half the battle.

49. 見上げれば、星ほしが宙ちゅうをうねり、闇やみが覆おおっている。

If you look up, the stars are projected in the air, and the dark is spreading.

50. あれだけ勉強すれば、合格ごうかくするのも当然とうぜんです。

If you'll study to that extent, passing is only natural.

51. 酒も飲めば、タバコも吸う。

If you drink sake, you also smoke.

52. 歌手かしゅになりたいのであれば、楽器がっきの弾ひき方かたも習ならった方ほう
がよいのです。

If it is the case that you wish to become a singer, it is best that you also learn how to play an instrument.

Pronunciation Note: Do not pronounce 楽器 as がき because 餓鬼 = brat. So, be careful.

Practice (3): Translate the following.

1. 高ければ、買わない方がいいですよ。

2. 僕の家に来ればどう？

3. 犬と話せば、楽しいでしょう。

4. 勉強すれば、Aがもらえますよ。

5. 安ければ、買った方がいいと思います。

Proverb Note: 一犬虚いっけんきょに吠ほゆれば万犬実ばんけんじつを云いう。This proverb means that "if a single dog barks a lie, ten thousand dogs will then speak it as the truth". This is meant to show that once a rumor spreads, it will eventually be taken as the truth. 吠ゆれば is the Classical Japanese form 吠えれば, and in proverbs such as this, old forms of grammar are common.

Slang Note: ～ば may be turned into ～や in slang. Generally, this is seen when れ precedes ば, and then the combination becomes りゃ. For instance, どうすりゃいいの? However, you can still say things like どう言いやいいんだよ. Of course, this would be very casual and slang and is rather 乱暴.

Keys

Practice (1):

1. 氷を温あたためると、溶とける。

2. When I entered the room, I opened the curtains.

3. I went to Kyoto with my boyfriend.

4. When I opened the door, there was a dog. When I opened the window, there was a bird. And, when I opened the trash can, there was a rat.

Practice (2):

1. If you are going to Korea, it is best to go by plane.
2. If everyone's going, I'll go too.
3. If there's not a train, you just got to walk.
4. If you are going to Osaka, the bullet train is good.
5. If it's that you're talking about, I've heard it numerous times.

Practice (3):

1. It's best not to buy it if it's expensive.
2. How about coming to my house?
3. It would probably be fun if you could take to dogs.
4. You'll be able to receive an A if you study.
5. If it's cheap, I think that it's best to buy it.

第109課: Conditionals I: The Particles と, なら(ば), たら, & ば

Creating an "if" statement in Japanese is not easy. This lesson will showcase to you three of the most common grammar points in Japanese to make conditional phrases. By no means, though, does this mean you will be able to master them completely by reading this lesson. The differences between these patterns are highly contextual, and it will still take a lot of practice to get the hang of them. So, by all means, please take your time as you read through this lesson.

The Conjunctive Particle と

The conjunctive と can be described as being in the part of the construction of the following constructs. For all of these constructs, the particle follows the non-past tense of a verb.

1. When X happens, Y will happen. For example, "when you turn, there will be a bank".
2. When X happens, Y happens. For example, "when I opened the door, snow came in".
3. When/if..., then... (Certain)

So, "**when X happens, Y happens**". Y is predictable or an unavoidable fact. This is not an "if" statement. Even when it is translated with the word "if", Y is still something that is certain. So, this means that this pattern is **not correct for requests, judgments, etc.** These sorts of things don't have a 100% degree of certainty, and they can be easily refuted.

Examples

1. 四月になると、桜さくらが咲く。
When it becomes April, cherry blossoms will blossom.
2. 先生だと、きっと年上というえなんじゃないですか。
If he's a teacher, surely he has to be older, right?
3. 病院びょういんに行くと藤原さんがいました。
When I went to the hospital, Mr. Fujiwara was there.

4. 今出かけないと遅おくれるよ。
If you don't depart now, you'll be late.
5. 窓まどを開あけると、牛が見えます。
When you open the window, you can see cows.
6. 日が昇のぼると、明るくなります。
When the sun rises, it becomes bright.
7. 日が沈しずむと、暗くなります。
When the sun sets, it becomes dark.
8. 昆布こんぶや何かで出汁だしを取るといい。
It would be good to gather soup stock with kombu or something.
9. 3に2を足たすと、5になります。
When we add 2 to 3, we get 5.
10. 雪が降ふり始めると、動物どうぶつたちは冬眠とうみんを始める。
When it begins to snow, the animals begin hibernation.
11. ワカメやヒジキを食べると髪が生える。
Your hair grows when you eat wakame and hijiki.

Word Note: ワカメ and ヒジキ are different kinds of edible seaweed.

12. ♪さかなさかなさかな～魚を食べると～♪あたまあたまあたま～頭がよくなる～♪
Fish, fish, fish, when you eat fish, your brain gets smart, your brain gets smart, your brain gets smart.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. If you warm ice, it melts.
2. 部屋に入るとカーテンを開けた。
3. ボーイフレンドと京都に行きました。
4. ドアを開けると、犬がいた。窓まどを開けると、鳥がいた。そして、ゴミ箱ばこを開けると、ねずみがいた。

The Conjunctive Particle なら (ば)

なら may show **advice**. It can show things that would be realistic if something were to ever be the case. なら is called the *contextual conditional* because it is equivalent to "**if you are talking about..., then...**". Overall, なら(ば) is used to give *suggestions, speculation, or requests*.

13. 中国に行くなら、万里ばんりの長城ちょうじょうを見てください。
If you are going to China, please see the Great Wall.
14. カメラを買いきたいなら、秋葉原に行った方がいいです。
If you want to buy a camera, it's best to go to Akihabara.

15. 郵便局ゆうびんきょくに行くなら、60円の切手きってを5枚買ってきてください。

If you are going to the post office, please buy five 60 yen stamps.

16. いいえ、売り切れましたが、自由席じゆうせきならあります。

No, they are sold out, but we have unreserved seats.

17. どうしてもというなら仕方しかたがない。

If you must, you have no choice.

18. それなら話は早い。

That makes it easy.

19. 仕事を終えたのなら、帰かえっていいよ。

You may leave provided/providing that you finished your work.

20. 知っているんなら、教えてください。

Providing that you know, please tell me.

Grammar Note: *なら expresses the speaker's supposition or defines the basis of the statement.* There is no required temporal ordering of the two situations presented. So, it can't be used to show a consequence in the past or condition for the future.

Nuance Note: *のなら is stronger and enforces a confirmation of the content of the condition.*

Usage Note: *なら can also be used as a conjunction at the front of a sentence in broken down speech for それなら.*

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. 韓国かんこくに行くなら（ば）、飛行機ひこうきの方がよいです。
2. みなが行くなら、私も行きます。
3. 電車がなければ、歩くまでだ。
4. 大阪おおさかに行くなら、新幹線しんかんせんがいいですよ。
5. その話なら何度なんども聞いているよ。

The Conjunctive Particle たら

1. Shows an unrealized event being hypothesized, not completely certain. It's **often** preceded by もし. In a temporal condition, the next action is to happen after the action with たら. So, something happens **once certain conditions are met**.

21. 会議かいぎが終わったら、電話でんわしますね。

I'll call you once the meeting ends, OK?

22. 金持かねもちになったら、城しろを買う！

If I were rich, I'd so buy a castle!

23. もし雨が降らなかったら、行きましょう。

If it doesn't rain, let's go.

24. 雨が（降り）やんだら、どこかに行く決めた。

After it finished raining, we decided to go somewhere.

25. 日本に行けたらいいなあ。

It would be nice if I could go to Japan.

26. もし地球ちきゅうに引力いんりょくがなかったら、空中くうちゅうに浮ういているでしょう。

If there wasn't gravity on earth, you would probably be floating in the air.

27. 地震じしんが収おさまったら、正しい情報じょうほうを聞いてください。

Once an earthquake subsides, get accurate information.

2. When you do X, Y happens. The latter part is typically unexpected.

28. ドアを開けたら、加藤かとうさんが立っていました。

When I opened the door, Mr. Kato was standing there.

29. 本を読んであげたら、弟が喜よろこびました。

When I read the book for my younger brother, he was very happy.

30. 休んだら、元気になった。

When I rested, I got better.

31. 銀行に行ったら、友人ゆうじんに会いました。

When I went to the bank, I saw a friend.

3. Shows an **obvious** conditional. This is a **generic condition**. This means that something is almost always followed by some situation. This "almost always" diction suggests that it is not as certain as と.

32. この会社かいしゃの社員しゃいんだったら、あの大学だいがくで割引わりびきがもらえる。

If you are an employee of this company, you can get a discount at that college.

33. 人を殺ころしたら、死刑しけいになります。

If you kill a person, you'll get the death penalty.

34. 風邪かぜを引いたら、くしゃみが出でます。

If we catch a cold, we sneeze.

4. (の) だったら emphasizes a topic because of the condition of someone else.

35. やりたくないんだったらやめてくれ。 (Vulgar)

If you don't want to do it, stop!

36. お父さんだったら部屋にいるよ。

If you're talking about dad, he's in the room.

たら may be たらば in formal situations. In hypothetical situations, もし(も) is *almost always* added. Unlike と or なら, たら may be in a hypothetical yet unrealistic gesture. It's also the most common conditional because of its wide usage. However, it's often avoided in formal writing.

The Adverb もし

We saw that in the first usage of たら, もし was always present. もし is related to hypothetical events. If you looked in a Japanese dictionary, you would find a definition similar to the following.

37. ある事態じたいを仮定かていして述のべることを表あらわす。

It shows an event of hypothesizing and stating a certain condition.

When a clause with たら is used to show a hypothetical condition--where it may or may not happen--it is **usually** used with もし. もし is also used with counter-factual hypothetical statements where the event is extremely unrealistic. Even here, もし simply adds more **uncertainty**.

38. 毎日すしが食べられたら、私は幸せでしょう。

If I could eat sushi every day, I would be very happy.

39. もし雨が降れば私は家にいます。

If it rains tomorrow, I will stay at home.

40. もし私があなただったらすこし待つでしょう。

If I were you, I'd wait a while.

41. もし君が僕の立場たちばだったら、どうしますか？

Suppose you were in my place, what would you do?

The Conjunctive Particle ば

ば creates the *provisional conditional form* with the 已然形いぜんけい. Never confuse this with the potential forms of verbs. There is a **difference** between 買えば and 買えれば. The first is ば with the basic form of the verb, and the second is ば with the potential form of the verb. The chart below shows how to conjugate with the 已然形. You are now responsible to know what this base is.

形容詞	形容動詞	一段	五段	する	来る	である	だ
新しければ	簡単であれば	食べれば	歌えば	すれば	来(く)れば	であれば	ならば

ば shows that ***the previous stated condition's establishment is the condition for the latter stated condition to occur***. The subjects of both clauses should not show volition. So, although the subject may be the same in both clauses, the resultant outcome should be natural in such instance.

This particle is perfect for showing desired result, so it would sound unnatural if the latter clause had some negative/undesired result specifically stated. This, then, does not mean "negative words" used in making suggestions/commands are then ungrammatical because you are soliciting a desired outcome.

ば may also show the cue for a latter stated recognition or judgment.

42. ほかに意見がなければ、これで終わらしましょう。

If you don't have any other opinions, let's end here.

43. まあ、無理むり {なら・であれば}、月曜日までに出してください。

Well, if it's impossibility, turn it in by Monday.

Like たら, it can show generic, temporal, and hypothetical conditions, but it's more forceful and places emphasis on the **future aspect**. The main clause shouldn't suggest with **an action** in the following manner.

44. 京都へ来たら、ぜひ連絡してください。○京都へ来れば、ぜひ連絡してください。

X

Once you come to Kyoto, please contact me.

The suggestion is to do something once the condition of reaching Kyoto is met. Both conditionals can be followed by expressions reflecting the will of the speaker, but phrases with ば tend to be stronger and directed more specifically on something.

45. 押おせば、開ひらきます。

It will open once you push it.

46. 冬になれば、雪が降る。

When it becomes winter, snow will fall.

Grammar Note: たら has a sequence requirement, but this "once" nuance of ば focuses on the conditional as the instigator for the latter to occur. So, it is stronger.

47. 都合がよければ、一緒いっしょに大阪に行きませんか。

How about going to Osaka together if it's convenient with you?

48. 自信じしんがあれば半なかば成功せいこうしたも同然どうぜんだ。(Proverb)

Confidence is half the battle.

49. 見上げれば、星ほしが宙ちゅうをうねり、闇やみが覆おおっている。

If you look up, the stars are projected in the air, and the dark is spreading.

50. あれだけ勉強すれば、合格ごうかくするのも当然とうぜんです。

If you'll study to that extent, passing is only natural.

51. 酒も飲めば、タバコも吸う。

If you drink sake, you also smoke.

52. 歌手かしゅになりたいのであれば、楽器がっきの弾ひき方かたも習ならった方ほう
がよいのです。

If it is the case that you wish to become a singer, it is best that you also
learn how to play an instrument.

Pronunciation Note: Do not pronounce 楽器 as がき because 餓鬼 = brat.
So, be careful.

Practice (3): Translate the following.

1. 高ければ、買わない方がいいですよ。

2. 僕の家に来ればどう？

3. 犬と話せれば、楽しいでしょう。

4. 勉強すれば、Aがもらえますよ。

5. 安ければ、買った方がいいと思います。

Proverb Note: 一犬虚いっけんきょに吠ほゆれば万犬実ばんけんじつを云いう。This
proverb means that "if a single dog barks a lie, ten thousand dogs will then
speak it as the truth". This is meant to show that once a rumor spreads, it
will eventually be taken as the truth. 吠ゆれば is the Classical Japanese form
吠えれば, and in proverbs such as this, old forms of grammar are common.

Slang Note: ～ば may be turned into ～や in slang. Generally, this is seen
when れ precedes ば, and then the combination becomes りゃ. For instance,
どうすりゃいいの? However, you can still say things like どう言いやいいんだよ.
Of course, this would be very casual and slang and is rather 乱暴.

Keys

Practice (1):

1. 氷を温あたためると、溶とける。

2. When I entered the room, I opened the curtains.

3. I went to Kyoto with my boyfriend.

4. When I opened the door, there was a dog. When I opened the window,
there was a bird. And, when I opened the trash can, there was a rat.

Practice (2):

1. If you are going to Korea, it is best to go by plane.
2. If everyone's going, I'll go too.
3. If there's not a train, you just got to walk.
4. If you are going to Osaka, the bullet train is good.
5. If it's that you're talking about, I've heard it numerous times.

Practice (3):

1. It's best not to buy it if it's expensive.
2. How about coming to my house?
3. It would probably be fun if you could take to dogs.
4. You'll be able to receive an A if you study.
5. If it's cheap, I think that it's best to buy it.

第111課: Must Not

In this lesson, we will learn about the phrases for “must not”. Now, contrary to what many textbooks may say, there are actually differences among the several options that you as the listener must understand. Before we study “must” phrases, it’s important to learn about the “must not” phrases because there are fewer of them and less information overall to go through. So, let’s begin.

禁止：～てはならない・～てはいけない・～てはだめだ

Conjugations

- 動詞：連用形 + ては+ならない・いけない・だめだ
- 形容詞：連用形（く） + ては+ならない・いけない・だめだ
- 名詞・形容動詞：連用形（で） + は+いけない・だめだ/ではあっては+ならない・いけない

Contraction Note: In casual speech ては → ちゃ では → じゃ
使っては → 使っちゃ 死んでは → 死んじゃ

使い分け

～てはならない: A prohibitory command accompanied with a sense of societal duty. This is the only pattern appropriate for law documents or judicial verdicts. It is obligatory in the written language in showing commands that regard society.

～てはいけない: A prohibitory command accompanied with a sense of personal duty. ～てはならない would be more stern than ～てはいけない in this situation in the written language.

～てはだめだ: A prohibitory command projecting warning, chastise, or criticism to the listener. It may not always be a literal command. It may simply suggest prohibition or avoidance of an action. It may also be used to

encourage someone like in “don’t give up”: 諦めてはだめだ! This pattern is used primarily in the spoken language.

Spelling Note: These phrases are typically spelled in ひらがな. However, だめ is frequently spelled in 漢字 as 駄目.

In the spoken language, there is a lot of interchangeability between ～てはいけない and ～てはだめだ, and in the written language, there is a lot of interchangeability between ～てはならない and ～てはいけない.

1. 日本は、憲法けんぽうに照てらして、いかなる武器ぶきも保持してはならない。
(Formal document; 書き言葉)

Japan must not maintain any arms in light of the constitution.

2a. 町民ちょうみん等とうは、いかなる理由りゆうにせよ、廃棄物はいきぶつを不法ふほう投棄とうきしてはならない。(法律; 書き言葉)

2b. 市民は、いかなる理由であつても、廃棄物を不法投棄してはならない。(書き言葉)
Townspeople must by no reason unlawfully dump waste matter.

3. この薬は副作用ふくさようがあり、血糖値けっとうちの上昇を引き起こす可能性かのうせいがあるので、2日以上いじょう、連続れんぞくして服用ふくようしては {ならない・いけない}。(書き言葉)

There are side effects to this drug with one being a possible rise in blood sugar. So, you mustn't use it more than two days consecutively.

The Person Commanding

If we think of who makes the command, the person is of a higher status than the listener. It does not necessarily have to be the speaker who is the commander. The commander is likely as such based on what exactly you use.

Pattern	Style?	Description of Use
～てはならない	書き言葉	Commanded person is an overseeing/administering agency.
～てはいけない	Both	Commanded person is a responsible party. In the spoken language, it is mainly used by men.
～てはいけません	話し言葉	Used mainly by women: mothers, teachers, and bosses
～てはだめだ	話し言葉	Used mainly by men: fathers, teachers, bosses, and sempai.
～てはだめです	話し言葉	Used mainly by women: mothers, teachers, bosses, and sempai.

Speech Style Note: If a man is to use the non-敬語 phrases ～てはいけない and ～てはだめだ and they are not a person of ultimate authority, one can imagine the speaker becoming in an emotional state in which he just ignores the character of the addressee.

～てはだめ（だよ・よ） when used among friend and family becomes advice rather than a straight out command and can be used to one's technical superior and inferior in this situation.

4. お母さん、そんなに働いちゃだめよ。体を壊しちゃうわ。（女性語）

Mom, don't work so hard like that. You'll get sick.

5. そのぬいぐるみ、まだ持ってたの？ルパートは危ないから、持ってちゃだめだよ。捨てなさい。（Family Guy reference）

You still have that stuffed animal? I told you that Rupert was dangerous, so you can't keep him. Throw him away.

Gender Trend?

It is not that ～てはいけません and ～てはだめです are exclusively used by women, but women are often expected to be more polite. So, in this sense, regardless of whether one is male or female, the use of these polite forms emphasizes one's class more than actually showing respect to the addressee. This is expected of any well-educated 成人.

6a. 今日は、自分の車で帰るつもりでしょう？お酒を飲んでは {いけません・だめです} よ。（敬意けいい）

6b. 今日は、車で帰る？じゃ、飲んじゃ {いけません・だめです} よ。（品格ひんかく保持ほじ）

6a. Aren't you going home in your own car today? You mustn't drink.

6b. You're going home by car today? Well, you mustn't drink.

Grammar Note: Not using polite forms of conjunctive phrases makes it clear whether someone is showing 敬意 (respect) or 品格保持 (societal standing). This would show the latter.

More on ～てはならない

Using ～てはならない in things based on personal experience and knowledge in spoken, colloquial contexts is unnatural except in dramas and movies.

7. 敵に後ろを見せるのかい。そりゃならぬ。武士として、あるまじきことじゃ。（Samurai talk）

Show our rear to the enemy? That mustn't happen. That is unworthy of a warrior.

The Difference between ～てはいけない & ～てはだめだ

When ～てはいけない is used, there is a rule that needs to be protected/ followed, and if one breaks the rule, punishment follows. When ～てはだめだ

is used, it is most often the case that there is no penalty or responsibility implied for the addressee. Even if there isn't a rule to follow, if you are scolded or are to run into an unpleasant circumstance, it becomes understood to the speaker and listener that there is an unwritten rule to abide by.

8. ご飯を食べたら、すぐにお風呂！ それまでゲームをやっては {いけません・だめです} よ。

Bath right after supper! Until then, you must not play video games.

9.こんなに雨が降ってきては {だめだ○・いけないX}、計画は中止だ。

This can't do with all rain falling like this; plans are cancelled.

It's impossible for man to actually command the weather. So, in this sentence, using 〜てはいけない is just wrong.

Summary Chart

	書き言葉	話し言葉	罰ばつ・ペナルティ	命令めいれい文 ぶん	非命令ひめいれい文 ぶん
〜てはならない	○	X	○	○	X
〜てはいけない	○	○	○	○	△
〜てはだめだ	X	○	X	○	○

Definition Notes: 罰 = Punishment; 命令文 = Imperative sentence; 非命令文 = Non-imperative sentence

〜といけない・〜とだめだ

First, before we look at how these phrases differ with the ones above, consider the conjugation rules below.

- 動詞：終止形＋と {いけない・だめだ}
- 形容詞・形容動詞：終止形＋ {といけない・だめだ}
- 名詞：である・だ＋ (といけない・だめだ)

As you can see, there is no 〜とならない. You can't use 〜といけない and 〜とだめだ to make sentences that urge someone. They may be used in declarative and affirmation sentences, but they can't be interpreted as prohibitory commands.

と marks a general condition, and it can only be used with confidence based on personal experience and or knowledge. So, even if you were to tell a listener a message involving having been prohibited, the use of these options would still be unnatural. As 〜てはならない exists as an absolute

prohibitory imperative phrase, there's no way a declarative ～とならない could exist.

10. 心臓しんぞうが悪いから、歩くのはいいが、走ると {いけない・だめな} のだ。
(書き言葉)

My heart is not good, so it's OK for me to walk, but I can't run.

More Examples

11. 子供はお酒を飲んではいけない。
Children must not drink sake.

12. 家の中では走ってはいけませんよ。
You must not run in the middle of the house!

13. 遅おくれちゃだめ（だよ）。
You can't be late!

第112課: Must

This lesson will now look at the "must" phrases. There will be more variation in forms to be aware of in this section, and the grammar complications will be harder than with the "must not" forms, but don't worry.

Must

The basic patterns are ～なければならぬ, ～なければいけない, ～なくてはならぬ, and ～てはいけません. Just as with must not phrases, ～ては contracts to ちゃ in colloquial speech. Other contractions include ～なければ → なけりゃ and ～なくては いけない shortened to just ～なくちゃ.

Part of Speech Example Phrase Conjugations

動詞	食べる	食べなくては + ならない・いけない
		食べなければ + ならない・いけない
形容詞	新しい	新しくなくては + ならない・いけない
形容動詞	新鮮だ	新鮮でなければ + ならない・いけない
名詞		

Chart Note: Example verbs may not be perfect for demonstrating the actual sensitive nuances of the options to be discussed in this lesson.

Colloquial Variants

～なければ → ～なきゃ ～なければ → ～なけりゃ ～なくては → ～なくちゃ

Variant Note: ～なきゃ and ～なくちゃ are often used without anything after them.

～なくてはならない VS ～なければならない

In the written language, these two "must" phrases are both most likely to be used. This is due to the use of ならない. They're both used not to describe personal matters, but to describe societal duties in regards to law and societal norms. ～なければならない is used for *affirmative* statements. When the sense of duty you're wishing to command somewhat is directed towards individual responsibility rather than society or some institution as a whole, ～なくてはならない is acceptable.

1. 国家は直接ちよくせつ、国民すべてに、最低さいてい限度げんどの生活を保障しようしなければならない。

The nation must directly ensure a bare minimal lifestyle to all citizens.

2. 従業員じゅうぎょういんは毎日、出出勤しゅったいきん時じを、タイムレコーダーに記録きろくし {なければならない・なくてはならない} 。

Employees must record in the time recorder one's leave time.

Interchangeability in the Spoken Language

However, unlike straight-up prohibition, we find all four options ～なければならない・～なければいけない・～なくてはならない・～なくてははいけない acceptable in the spoken language. This is a perfect opportunity to get familiar with casual speech.

3. 国は、国民すべてに、最低限度の生活を保障し {なければならない・なくてはならない・なければいけない・なくてははいけない} よ。

The country must provide some minimal lifestyle to all its citizens.

4. 早く帰って、妹の世話をし {なきゃなんない・なくちゃなんない・なきゃいけない・なくちゃいけない} よ。

I have to go home and take care of my little sister.

5. 本を返かえさなくちゃ。(Casual)

I have to return the book.

6. てめーは死ななきゃ。(Masculine; vulgar)

You have to die.

使い分け

In everyday conversation, these four patterns have great interchangeability. If we are to talk about the extremities of the usages of ～なくてはならない and ～なければならない, the difference would be this.

～なくてははいけない : Duty or command to the addressee (which may be oneself or another party) regarding common sense, morality, societal common wisdom, or current conditions. The speaker is directing the

addressee. When used towards oneself, you treat yourself as the 'addressee'. If referring to oneself, a first pronoun is usually needed to tell that you mean this.

～なければならぬ : A duty of the speaker in regards to common sense, morality, and or societal common wisdom. It will show responsibility burdened upon the speaker. The person bearing the responsibility is not excluding to the speaker, but it is best described as being the subject. This may be used in the spoken language as well, and this is also when you may see the polite form ～なければなりません.

When you use ～なければ, you imply an obvious duty with no penalty involved for not complying. ～なくては is used when there is a penalty for not complying. いけない is in regards to the listener or one's conscious and ならぬ is used in regards to the speaker. So, when we say things interchangeable, we're saying that if we change one for the other, the new nuance still makes sense. It is not the case that the meaning stays completely the same.

7. 急がなければいけない。

You must hurry.

8. 子供達こどもたちは早く寝なくてははいけない。

Children must go to bed early.

9. あまりの無駄むだは避さなければならぬ。

We must avoid an excess of waste.

10. 弟と遊ばなくてはいけないから。

It's because I have to play with my little brother.

11. 毎日水を飲まなければなりません。

You have to drink water every day. (General you, which includes oneself)

12. 私はボートに乗らなくてはいけないんです。

I have to catch the boat.

13. 新刊を買わなくてはけません。

You have buy the new book.

Word Note: {その・あの} 新しい本 may be more natural in many contexts than 新刊, which can also be interpreted as "new publication". Nevertheless, 新刊 is still a commonly used word.

～ないといけない & ～ないとだめだ

As you would imagine, the rules governing these phrases is just like when used for must not. ～ないとならない doesn't exist. And, these two phrases are

quite removed semantically from the others. You can't tell whether the speaker's duty or addressee's duty is being referred to without relying on context, so it is typically only used in the spoken language or writing which can reflect back on the conditions in a dialogue. As this phrase particularly blurs the existence of penalty, it has a lighter feeling and is used a lot in the spoken language because of this.

Because the particle と is used, though, your statement should be one based on experience or knowledge of some sort. Though the situation is somewhat more ambiguous than with must not phrases, you can still see how ～ないといけない refers to rule-like behavior and ～ないとだめだ may hint at the existence of a consequence for not following through.

15. 早く帰って、妹の世話せわをしないとだめなの。(女性語)

I gotta go home quick and take care of my little sister.

16. 明日、試験だから、早く起きないといけないんだよ。

I have to wake up early tomorrow 'cause I have an exam.

17. 死活問題しかつもんだいだから、対策たいさくを講こうじないといけないのだ。

It's a matter of life or death, so I/you need to take measures.

18. 明日あすまでに報告書ほうこくしょを書かないとだめだよ。(Casual yet serious)

I/You have to write a report by tomorrow!

Casual Speech Note: In colloquial speech, you can simply use ～ないと.

19. もう行かないと。(Casual)

I've got to go.

Older Variants

There are many other older and dialectical variations of what we have just learned. As for old phrases, we have ～ねば {ならない・ならぬ} , and ～なければならぬ which are old-fashioned but not so archaic that they don't frequently show up in the written language. You may also see the very stiff ～なるまい. ～ねばならない in particular is extremely common in literature.

20. これからは、自分たちのことは自分たちで決めるんだと思った。なぜなら三人だけで生きていかねばならないからだ。

I felt that from now on that we would have decide on our own accord concerning ourselves. That is because we must live on just the three of us.

21. 何としても合格ごうかくせんばならんねな。(Old-fashioned; dialectical)

You have to pass no matter what.

From 蒼氓そうぼう by 石川達三いしかわたつぞう.

Base Note: The old みぜんけい of する, せ-, must be used with ～ぬ.

Variant Note: There are several important notes about the above sentence. The ～ね in せねば is contracted to ～ん and ～ない in ならない becomes → ～んね, which would be realized today in Modern Japanese as the casual ～んねー such as in 分かんねー・分かんない.

Important Dialectical Variants

Sometimes "must" is expressed completely differently in other dialects. The most common dialect pattern is "未然形みぜんけい + なあかんで". You can also see ～ねば contracted to ～にゃ in Western Japanese Dialects.

いけない is very sensitive in respect to dialect. Below is a chart of the most common variations you may encounter.

いかん、いけん、あかん

22. 片道かたみち切符きっぷを買わなあかんで。

I have to buy a one-way ticket.

23. 歌わなくてはいいけん。

I have to sing.

More Notes:

1. せにゃならん = しなければならない

2. せないかん = しなければならない

3. Note 2 is also a Western Japanese dialect example. Here, we see a rare example of ～ない following the old 未然形 of the verb する, せ-, and あかん contracted as かん.

第113課: いかない vs いけない

To be or not to be, or in this case, to choose いかない or いけない is a not so simple choice for the Japanese learner to make at times. They both come from the verb 行く, which has the basic meaning of "to go." Unsurprisingly, the basic meanings of 行かない and 行けない are "to not go" and "cannot go" respectively.

1. 何なにもかもうまくいかないときは、自分じぶんを変かえる、いいチャンスではないでしょうか。

Isn't when everything goes wrong a great chance to change oneself?

2. でも、そうかといって俺おれが投票とうひょう（をし）に行いっても行いかなくても別べつに一票いっぴょうの重おもみを感じかんじない。

But even so, whether I go vote or not, I don't particularly feel the weight of one vote.

3. 読んでももらえないだけならまだしも、本当ほんとうに注目ちゅうもくしてほしいところに注意ちゅういが行いれないってことが問題もんだいなんですよ。

If it were just not being able to have him read that would be one thing, but the problem is that his attention doesn't go to the areas that I really want paid attention to.

4. トイレに行いけないときに限かぎって腹痛ふくつうが起おこるのはなぜでしょうか。
Why is it that occurrences of abdominal pain is limited to when I can't go to the bathroom?

5. 空港くうこうに見送りおくりに行いけなくてごめんね。
I'm sorry for not being able to see you off at the airport.

Orthography Note: The uses of these two phrases that are to be discussed are typically written in Hiragana.

わけにはいかない

Translated as "there's no way...can..." or "...cannot (afford to) ..." this expression is used to state that an action is not reasonable/proper for obvious reasons and cannot be done as a result.

6. 日本語にほんごの授業じゅぎょうでは英語えいごを話はなすわけにはいきません。
You cannot speak English in Japanese class.

7. アメリカ史しの授業ではガムを噛かむわけにはいきません。
You cannot chew gum in American history.

8. 授業じゅぎょうでは寝ねるわけにはいきません。
You cannot afford to sleep in class.

9. 忙しいそがしくても寝ねないわけにはいかないよ。
Even if you're busy, you can't afford to not sleep.

10.

A: 漢字かんじは勉強べんきょうするのに時間じかんがかかりますねえ。

B: ええ、でも覚おぼえないわけにはいかないしねえ。

A: It must take a lot of time to study Kanji.

B: Yeah, but I can't afford not to remember them.

11. 「この頃ごろサークル活動かつどうで忙しいようだね」「うん、でも、忙しいそがしいといって宿題しゅくだいをしないわけにはいかないしね」

"You seem pretty busy these days with club activities, don't you?" "Yeah but, just because I'm busy with them, I can't afford not to do my homework."

12. 「漢字かんじは難むずかしいねえ」「うん、でもそうかと言いって漢字かんじで書かかないわけにはいかないしねえ」

"Kanji are difficult, aren't they?" "Yeah, but even so, I can't afford not to write with them, you know..."

13. 「毎日忙まいにちいそがしくて寝ねる時間じかんもない」「でもそうかといって全然寝ぜんぜんねないわけにはいかないでしょ」

"I'm so busy every day that there's no time to sleep." "Yeah, but even so, there's no way you can just not sleep at all."

いけない

The not so literal usages of いけない revolve around being a euphemism of 悪い.

14. 彼かれは事故じこに遭あったって？それはいけない、あいつは大丈夫だいじょうぶなの？

He got in an accident? That's not good; is he alright?

15. 最近さいきん、日本酒にほんしゅを飲のめるようになったんですが、熱爛あつかんはあまりいけない口くちなんですね。

Recently, I've become able to drink sake, but I can't really handle hot sake.

16. 異物混入いぶつこんにゅうなんか全部報道ぜんぶほうどうしていたら、どこの店みせもいけなくなるわ。

If every single instance of contamination were reported (in the media), all stores would go out.

17. 馬鹿ばかな美容師びようしだなあ、この店みせもいけなくなるだろう。

What a stupid stylist...well that shop will probably go under.

18. 飲のみすぎは体からだにいけない。

Drinking too much is not good for the body.

ていけない

The phrase ていけない is used to show that something is "undesirable/unpleasant."

19. 口くちの中なかが塩辛しおからくていけないので、水みずを飲のんだ。

I drank water since having the inside of my mouth being salty would be unpleasant.

20. あのくらの年齢ねんれいの女性じょせいは本当ほんとうにお喋しゃべりでいけないっすね。

Women at that age are chatterboxes, which is really unpleasant, you know.

21. 冬ふゆは寒さむくていけないね。

Winter is cold and unpleasant, you know.

22. 君きみがいなきゃ生きていけない。

I can't live without you.

23. 最近何さいきんなにかとやりたいことが多おおいせいか、どうにも気きが散ちっていけない気きがする。

Recently one way or another, perhaps from having a lot of stuff I want to do, I feel like getting distracted by no means would be good.

てはいけない

The phrase てはいけない is used to show that some state/action is not permissible/acceptable. It is typically translated as "must/may not."

24. 芝生しばふに入はいってはいけません。
You must not get on the lawn.

25. 教室きょうしつの中なかでタバコを吸すってはいけません。
You must not smoke inside the classroom.

26. 水みずと一緒にいっしょに飲のんではいけません。
You must not take (the medicine) with water.

27. 猫ねこはネギを食たべてはいけません。
Cats must not eat scallions.

28. 外そとで遊あそんじゃいけないぞ。(Masculine)
You mustn't play outside.

To ikenai/Tara ikenai と・たらいけない

The phrase といけない is used to show that if said state comes to be, the speaker and or persons involved will be troubled. たらいけない is also possible, and as expected, it simply shows that a certain state/action would not be pleasant if it happens/is done.

29. 遅刻ちこくするといけないので、何なにより時間厳守じかんげんしゅです。
Being late is bad, and so strict observance of time is above all.

30. 野菜やさいが腐くさるといけないから、一旦家いったんいえに帰かえって冷蔵庫れいぞうこに入いれてから出でかけましょう。
It won't be good if the vegetables go bad, so let's return to the house for a moment, put them in the refrigerator, and then go out.

31. 毎日まいにち歯はを磨みがかないといけない。
You must brush your teeth every day.
Literally: It'll be bad if you don't brush your teeth every day.

32. 賞味期限しょうみきげんが切きれたら、絶対ぜったいに食たべたらいけないものといえ、確かしかに卵たまごや鶏肉とりにくとかですね。
In speaking of foods you should never eat once it's passed its expiration date, there's definitely eggs and poultry, right?

33. 高血圧こうけつあつの薬くすりを服用ふくようしているときに、グレープフルーツなど食たべたらいけないとよく言われます。

When taking high blood pressure medicine, you're often told not to eat things like grape fruit.

なくては・なければいけない

The phrase なくては・なければいけない is used to express some obligation/necessity to do something and it is typically translated as “must do...” As we have discussed once before when we discussed the “must/must not” phrases, double negatives like in this situation create positive expressions just as in English.

34. 足下あしもとに注意ちゅういしなくてははいけません。
You must watch your step.

35. 必要ひつような書類しよるいを提出ていしゅつしなくてははいけません。
You must submit necessary documents.

36. 有料道路ゆうりょうどうろを通とおらなければはいけません。
We must go through a toll road.

37. そうしたチャンスは稀まれなので、見みつけたときには大おおきく投資とうししなくてははいけません。
Such chances are rare, and so when you find them, you need to invest a lot.

38. タオルも大量たいりょうに購入こうにゅうしなくてははいけません。
We have to purchase a large quantity of towels as well.

いかん・いかぬ

In addition to what we've seen, it's important to note that いかない sometimes becomes いかん・いかぬ. The latter is more dialectical and or potentially old-fashioned, but you will still frequently encounter it in anime/manga among other places. Interestingly enough, despite having seen the different usages of いかない and いけない, いかん・いかぬ can be used in the same instances as both いかない and いけない.

39. 背中を見せるわけにかんぞ。
You cannot show your backside.

40. 通すわけにはいかぬぞ。
I cannot have you pass by.

41. やられたわ、もういかん。
Ugh, I'm done for.

42. 威張ってはいかん。
Don't be stuck up.

43. 無理をしてはいかん。
You mustn't push yourself.

あかん

Another noteworthy variant that can be used for any of the usages we've discussed thus far is あかん. This word is famously used in Kansai dialects and likely derives from the set phrase 埒が明かない, which means "to not get anywhere." This word, not being in Standard Japanese, has a peculiar pitch accent in that all three syllables are high pitch. This word is so well-known and frequently used that there is no way that you can watch TV for more than an hour before it's used.

As far as grammar is concerned, many of the example sentences below will incorporate dialectal grammar that we have yet to ever cover, but contrary to the "must" patterns you've grown accustomed to, あかん follows verb by adding ない and dropping the /i/.

Ichidan Verbs 食べる + あかん = 食べなあかん

Godan Verbs 飲む + あかん = 飲まなあかん

Suru する + あかん = せなあかん

Kuru 来る + あかん = 来なあかん

45. そないことしたら、あかん。
You shouldn't do stuff like that.

Dialect Note: そんな becomes そない for most Kansai dialect speakers.

46. 子共は見たらあかん。
Kids don't need to watch.

47. 一回ぐらいいは見に来なあかんで。
You must come see at least once!

Dialect Note: The particle で the end of a sentence in Kansai dialect is similar in meaning to the particle よ.

48. あかんゆうたら、あかん。
If you say it's no good, then it's no good.

Dialect Note: 言ったら tends to be pronounced as *yūtara* in Kansai dialects. The verb 言う also tends to be used without the quotation particle と.

49. あかん子やなあ。
What a messed up kid.

Dialect Note: The copula verb is usually や in Kansai dialects.

50. 体重を減らすどころか増やさなあかんぐらいやで。
Rather than losing weight, you've gotten to the point you need to be gaining some.

51. あかん、雨降ってきた。
Crap, it's started to rain.

52. こんだけ頼んでもあかん。

You can't entrust anything to (him) even if it's just something like this.

Dialect Note: これだけ becomes こんだけ in most Kansai dialects.

53. しっかり勉強せなあかんで。

I have to properly study.

54. こら、あかんわ。

This is no good.

Dialect Note: これは is frequently contracted to こら in most Kansai dialects.

55. 何で朝起きなあかんのか。

Why do I have to wake up in the morning?

第112課: Must

This lesson will now look at the "must" phrases. There will be more variation in forms to be aware of in this section, and the grammar complications will be harder than with the "must not" forms, but don't worry.

Must

The basic patterns are ～なければならない, ～なければいけない, ～なくてはならない, and ～なくてははいけない. Just as with must not phrases, ～ては contracts to ちゃ in colloquial speech. Other contractions include ～なければ → なけりゃ and ～なくてははいけない shortened to just ～なくちゃ.

Part of Speech	Example Phrase	Conjugations
----------------	----------------	--------------

動詞	食べる	食べなくては + ならない・いけない
		食べなければ + ならない・いけない
形容詞	新しい	新しくなくては + ならない・いけない
形容動詞 名詞	新鮮だ	新鮮でなければ + ならない・いけない

Chart Note: Example verbs may not be perfect for demonstrating the actual sensitive nuances of the options to be discussed in this lesson.

Colloquial Variants

～なければ → ～なきゃ ～なければ → ～なけりゃ ～なくては → ～なくちゃ

Variant Note: ～なきゃ and ～なくちゃ are often used without anything after them.

～なくてはならない VS ～なければならない

In the written language, these two "must" phrases are both most likely to be used. This is due to the use of ならない. They're both used not to describe personal matters, but to describe societal duties in regards to law and societal norms. ～なければならぬ is used for *affirmative* statements. When the sense of duty you're wishing to command somewhat is directed towards individual responsibility rather than society or some institution as a whole, ～なくてはならぬ is acceptable.

1. 国家は直接ちよくせつ、国民すべてに、最低さいてい限度げんどの生活を保障しようしなければならぬ。

The nation must directly ensure a bare minimal lifestyle to all citizens.

2. 従業員じゅうぎょういんは毎日、出出勤しゅったいきん時じを、タイムレコーダーに記録きろくし {なければならぬ・なくてはならぬ}。

Employees must record in the time recorder one's leave time.

Interchangeability in the Spoken Language

However, unlike straight-up prohibition, we find all four options ～なければならぬ・～なければいけない・～なくてはならぬ・～なくてははいけない acceptable in the spoken language. This is a perfect opportunity to get familiar with casual speech.

3. 国は、国民すべてに、最低限度の生活を保障し {なければならぬ・なくてはならぬ・なければいけない・なくてははいけない} よ。

The country must provide some minimal lifestyle to all its citizens.

4. 早く帰って、妹の世話をし {なきゃなんない・なくちゃなんない・なきゃいけない・なくちゃいけない} よ。

I have to go home and take care of my little sister.

5. 本を返かえさなくちゃ。(Casual)

I have to return the book.

6. てめーは死ななきゃ。(Masculine; vulgar)

You have to die.

使い分け

In everyday conversation, these four patterns have great interchangeability. If we are to talk about the extremities of the usages of ～なくてはならぬ and ～なければならぬ, the difference would be this.

～なくてははいけない : Duty or command to the addressee (which may be oneself or another party) regarding common sense, morality, societal common wisdom, or current conditions. The speaker is directing the addressee. When used towards oneself, you treat yourself as the 'addressee'.

If referring to oneself, a first pronoun is usually needed to tell that you mean this.

～なければならぬ：A duty of the speaker in regards to common sense, morality, and or societal common wisdom. It will show responsibility burdened upon the speaker. The person bearing the responsibility is not excluding to the speaker, but it is best described as being the subject. This may be used in the spoken language as well, and this is also when you may see the polite form ～なければなりません.

When you use ～なければ, you imply an obvious duty with no penalty involved for not complying. ～なくては is used when there is a penalty for not complying. いけない is in regards to the listener or one's conscious and ならない is used in regards to the speaker. So, when we say things interchangeable, we're saying that if we change one for the other, the new nuance still makes sense. It is not the case that the meaning stays completely the same.

7. 急がなければいけない。

You must hurry.

8. 子供達こどもたちは早く寝ねなくてははいけない。

Children must go to bed early.

9. あまりの無駄むだは避さけなければならぬ。

We must avoid an excess of waste.

10. 弟と遊ばなくてはいけないから。

It's because I have to play with my little brother.

11. 毎日水を飲まなければなりません。

You have to drink water every day. (General you, which includes oneself)

12. 私はボートに乗らなくてはいけないんです。

I have to catch the boat.

13. 新刊を買わなくてはけません。

You have to buy the new book.

Word Note: {その・あの} 新しい本 may be more natural in many contexts than 新刊, which can also be interpreted as "new publication". Nevertheless, 新刊 is still a commonly used word.

～ないといけない & ～ないとだめだ

As you would imagine, the rules governing these phrases is just like when used for must not. ～ないとならない doesn't exist. And, these two phrases are quite removed semantically from the others. You can't tell whether the

speaker's duty or addressee's duty is being referred to without relying on context, so it is typically only used in the spoken language or writing which can reflect back on the conditions in a dialogue. As this phrase particularly blurs the existence of penalty, it has a lighter feeling and is used a lot in the spoken language because of this.

Because the particle と is used, though, your statement should be one based on experience or knowledge of some sort. Though the situation is somewhat more ambiguous than with must not phrases, you can still see how 〜ないといけない refers to rule-like behavior and 〜ないとだめだ may hint at the existence of a consequence for not following through.

15. 早く帰って、妹の世話せわをしないとだめなの。(女性語)

I gotta go home quick and take care of my little sister.

16. 明日、試験だから、早く起きないといけないんだよ。

I have to wake up early tomorrow 'cause I have an exam.

17. 死活問題しかつもんだいだから、対策たいさくを講こうじないといけないのだ。

It's a matter of life or death, so I/you need to take measures.

18. 明日あすまでに報告書ほうこくしょを書かないとだめだよ。(Casual yet serious)

I/You have to write a report by tomorrow!

Casual Speech Note: In colloquial speech, you can simply use 〜ないと.

19. もう行かないと。(Casual)

I've got to go.

Older Variants

There are many other older and dialectical variations of what we have just learned. As for old phrases, we have 〜ねば {ならない・ならぬ} , and 〜なければならぬ which are old-fashioned but not so archaic that they don't frequently show up in the written language. You may also see the very stiff 〜なるまい. 〜ねばならない in particular is extremely common in literature.

20. これからは、自分たちのことは自分たちで決めるんだと思った。なぜなら三人だけで生きていかねばならないからだ。

I felt that from now on that we would have decide on our own accord concerning ourselves. That is because we must live on just the three of us.

21. 何としても合格ごうかくせんばならんねな。(Old-fashioned; dialectical)

You have to pass no matter what.

From 蒼氓そうぼう by 石川達三いしかわたつぞう.

Base Note: The old みぜんけい of する, せ-, must be used with 〜ぬ.

Variant Note: There are several important notes about the above sentence. The ～ね in せねば is contracted to ～ん and ～ない in ならない becomes → ～んね, which would be realized today in Modern Japanese as the casual ～んねー such as in 分かんねー・分かんない.

Important Dialectal Variants

Sometimes "must" is expressed completely differently in other dialects. The most common dialect pattern is "未然形みぜんけい + なあかんで". You can also see ～ねば contracted to ～にゃ in Western Japanese Dialects.

いけない is very sensitive in respect to dialect. Below is a chart of the most common variations you may encounter.

いかん、いけん、あかん

22. 片道かたみち切符きっぷを買わなあかんで。

I have to buy a one-way ticket.

23. 歌わなくてはいいけん。

I have to sing.

More Notes:

1. せにゃならん = しなければならない

2. せないかん = しなければならない

3. Note 2 is also a Western Japanese dialect example. Here, we see a rare example of ～ない following the old 未然形 of the verb する, せ-, and あかん contracted as かん.

第???課: The Particle に III: Agent Marker

In Lesson 21, we learned how the particle が functions as an object marker for stative-transitive predicates. In this lesson, we will be learning how the particle に marks the agent of such predicates.

Stative-transitive predicates are *predicates that describe states/conditions but still have objects*. The term itself presents a dynamic often missed when discussing transitivity and the concepts of “object” and “agent.”

The “**agent**” is *either the cause or the initiator/doer of the sentence*. In the context of this lesson, only the latter purpose will be relevant. A doer doesn’t always have to be actively doing anything.

For example, when an animal “needs” food, it has no control over its need for sustenance, but grammatically speaking, “food” is the object of the verb “to need.” In English, “animals need food” is easily explained as involving the transitive verb “to need” and its object “food,” but in Japanese, the primary equivalent of “to need” is 要る.

In Japanese, 要る is categorized as a 自動詞. This is because the object is marked with が. The concept of “object” becomes befuddled here, though, because が for all other kinds of predicates marks the subject.

1. お金かねが要いる。
- i. Money is needed.
- ii. I need money.

～が要る can be interpreted as being no different as is evident in translation

- i. Regardless of whether が is a subject or object marker here, お金 is not the agent. The understood “I” is. An agent/doer, though, need not be the subject of a sentence. The same can be said in English such as in passive expressions.

- i. [The man] was chased by /the dog/ for hours.
- ii. [The cat] was sold to /an elderly couple/.
- iii. [The turtle] was released back into the ocean by /its rescuers/.

In these sentences, the nouns in [] are subjects and the nouns in // are agents. If we were to view the が with stative-transitive verbs as a subject marker, then the verbs would remarkably resemble passive verbs. After all, “needed” is the passive form of “to need,” and translation i. could easily be reworded as “Money is needed by me.”

The next question to ask is how the “agent” of these predicates is marked by に.

2. 君きみのいる場所ばしょが僕ぼくにはわかるんだ。
- i. I know where you are.
- ii. Where you are is known by me.

In English, translation ii. is strange, but it’s exactly how Japanese expresses the emotion that can be felt in the English of translation i. The use of に exemplifies 僕 as the agent of knowledge concerning [君のいる場所]. The use of に, however, is not obligatory. As such, Ex. 2 can be reworded as follows:

3. 僕ぼくは君きみのいる場所ばしょがわかる。
- I know where you are.

Nuance-wise, Exs. 2 and 3 are almost the same. However, Ex. 2 is more emphatic. Grammatically speaking, the “agent” of both Ex. 2 and Ex. 3 is 僕. Just as we learned in Lesson 12, the particle は, when it is in fact the topic marker, is best understood as only marking the topic. As such, the deep structure (the form of a sentence that represents the interworking grammar in the mind) of Ex. 3 would still, in fact, look like: “boku-wa (ø-ni) kimi-no iru basho-ga wakaru.”

Motivation for why the particle に marks the agent of a sentence can be found in its basic use of denoting the place where something exists. Although long-winded and not representative of typical speech, one could say “it is within me where the knowledge of your location resides.” By

extension of this, one can view the particle に as purposely marking the existence of an agent/doer as agent/doer = someone.

We will now look at each verbal stative-transitive predicate that uses に to optionally mark the agent. This is a precursor to the next lesson in which we'll finally learn about the passive form of verbs where に obligatorily marks the agent of a sentence. The verbs to be discussed in this lesson are as follows:

- 分かる
- 聞こえる
- 見える
- ある
- いる
- 出来る
- 要る

Because you already have a basic understanding of what these verbs mean and how they're used, each section will mainly focus on particle issues the agent-marker に presents in relation to other kinds of に and other particles.

Particle Note: The agent-marking function of に is most often accompanied with the contrast-marker は. When one feels it is necessary to explicitly state the agent, one is doing so because the natural happenstance of the verb is tied to the person being stated in contrast with others.

分かる

The verb 分かる, as we have learned, refers to non-intentional, natural understanding. Its lack of volition is why Japanese categorizes it as a 自動詞. The basic patterns a sentence can take with 分かる are as follows:

- ① XはYがわかる
- ② Xに (は) Yがわかる
- ③ XはYをわかる

In these patterns, "Y" is understood to be an "object." Even if it can be conceptualized as a "subject" due to the use of が to mark it, "X" is what is conceptualized as the subject, and as such, the exhaustive-listing function of が can be used to mark X. This can be seen in Exs. 13 and 14 below. It is also impossible to forget how there are indeed cases when the object of 分かる is indeed marked by を when the verb itself is no longer treated as being non-volitional.

Ultimately, however, it is Pattern 2 that is the basic pattern of 分かる. Pattern 1 is simply a derivative with the marking of the agent treated as an unspoken, understood element.

Examples

4. 分わかる人ひとには分わかるけど、分わからない人ひとには全まったく分わからな
い話はなしをします。

I'm going to talk about something that will be understood by those who understand it but will be totally not understood by those who don't understand it.

Particle Note: には is obligatory. Using は would disrupt the single-dependent clause modifying the noun 話. には is also obligatory due to the contrast grammar in the sentence. Lastly, using が instead of には would be too syntactically ambiguous and would not be able to express the contrast the sentence expresses.

5. 人間にんげんの気持ちもちがお前まえには分わかるものか。

You would understand what people are feeling?

Particle Note: The use of ものか is very emphatic, which matches well with the emphasis provided by には. The flipping of constituents so that お前には is not at the front of the sentence is so that が can be interpreted as being the exhaustive-listing function.

6. 俺おれにはわかるさ。

I can tell.

7. ちなみに、私わたしはドイツ語ごが分わかるから、歌詞かしの意味いみも理解りか
いできます。

Incidentally, because I understand German, I can also understand the meaning of the lyrics.

Particle Note: There is no heightened sense of emotion packed into this sentence, so there is no reason to use に (は) after 私 even if it would still be grammatically correct. The same can be said for Ex. 8.

8. イルカは人間にんげんの言葉ことばが分わかるのだろうか。

I wonder if dolphins can understand human speech?

9. 人気にんきがあるのは分わかるが、微妙びみょうだね。

I understand *that it's possible*, but it's iffy, huh.

Particle Note: In this example, the は after the nominal phrase 人気があるの is the contrastive は, which means that the sentence implies that the speaker may not understand other aspects of the discussion at hand.

10. 味あじの違ちがいは分わかるんですか。

You understand the difference in taste?

Particle Note: The は of this sentence should not be interpreted as the contrastive は.

11. 君きみに俺おれの何なにが分わかる？

What about me do you understand?

Particle Note: The particle は doesn't follow the particle に in this sentence because there is no reason for the speaker to contrast the target agent's (you) understanding of himself with another person.

12. 私わたし {に・が} わかるように教おしえてください。
Please teach so that [it can be understood by me/I can understand it].

Particle Note: The use of the particle が should invoke the exhaustive-listing interpretation in this sentence, but that doesn't have to be the case, especially if the object of discussion—the it—isn't at the forefront of the speaker's mind. In which case, が would just be marking the subject of a dependent clause like it usually does. However, if the exhaustive-listing meaning isn't intended, the choice of が creates unnecessary grammatical ambiguity that is solved by using に.

13. 本当ほんとうの私わたしは誰だれにもわからない。そして、本当ほんとうのあなた {を・が} 私わたし {が・には} わかることもできない。
The true me is understood by no one. And, I cannot understand the true you.

Particle Notes:

1. The は after 私 is the contrastive は, meaning that 私 is still the object of わからない.
2. Provided を marks 本当のあなた as the object, the following 私 would typically be marked with が as it is established via を that わかる is being treated as a typical transitive verb. には can still be used to mark 私 in this situation, but the sentence would go from sounding like "It is indeed I who doesn't understand the true you" to "Others may, but it is not I who understands the true you."
3. If 本当のあなた is properly marked with が, then には ought to be used. This is because the も preceding できない technically deletes another instance of が, and although the exhaustive-listing function of が does allow for two が in a clause, Japanese never allows three instances of が in a single clause.

14. 彼かれ (に) もわかっているはずだ。
He should also understand (the situation).

Particle Note: Without context, simply using も would cause the sentence to be ambiguous, making 彼 the object of understanding. This is why when も is used, に is frequently employed.

聞こえる

The verb 聞こえる is often mistaken as a potential verb, and although it is translatable as "can hear," it merely describes the natural phenomenon of something being audible, making it fundamentally different from both 聞ける and 聞くことが出来る, which are true potential expressions in the sense that they imply volition over the exercise of said ability.

The basic patterns of a sentence with 聞こえる is as follows:

- ①XにはYが聞こえる
- ②XはYが聞こえる
- ③XにはYがZ (のよう) に聞こえる

①② can be translated as “Y is audible to X/Y can be heard by X.” Typically, the “X” element is not ever stated with 聞こえる in patterns for ①②. When it is, though, the first pattern is overwhelmingly the most used of the two. The second pattern would be limited to non-emphatic instances in which one wishes to contrast what’s audible to oneself with others (Ex. 24).

③ means “Y sounds like Z to X.” The reason why it has a difference in meaning is because there’s an additional argument (element) added to the sentence, and with it a different function of に comes into play, which can also be potentially modified by は. Whereas the に that follows X is the agent-marking function, the に after Z indicates an (indirect) object of comparison. Z can also be an adjective or verb instead of a noun, in which case it must be followed by よう so it can be treated as a nominal phrase.

Although Japanese often drops elements out of a sentence if they're deemed unimportant or understood, if you see a sentence that only has ○○が○○に 聞こえる, it's going to be ③. However, just ○○に (は) 聞こえる could have either interpretation depending on the context. One way to differentiate Xに (は) 聞こえる and Zに (は) 聞こえる is that X must be a sentient agent (human or personified non-human), whereas Z is usually some physical/ abstract entity.

Examples

15. 彼かれらは私わたしに聞きこえるように悪口わるくちを言っていた。
They were speaking bad of me to where I could hear them.

Particle Note: There is no logical reason to think that “they” were speaking ill of the speaker in a way that could be heard by him/her but not others. Although に is the proper particle after 私, it could be seen replaced with が, especially if one wishes to strongly emphasis the exhaustive-listing of oneself—italicizing of “I.”

16. 若わかい人ひとには聞きこえる音おとが、私わたし (に) は聞きこえない。
I can't hear sounds that can be heard by young people.

Particle Note: For parallelism, には would be the preferred choice after 私. However, there is nothing wrong with just using は. This would be indicative of the spoken language where people are not always going to necessarily stay grammatically consistent.

17. 大人おとなには聞きこえず、若わかい人ひとにしか聞きこえない不思議ふしぎな音
おと、それがモスキート音おんです！
A strange noise that cannot be heard but by the ears of young people and not adults, and that is the mosquitone!

Particle Note: It's important to understand that しか cancels out は, meaning that it should be viewed as a derivative. しか and ～ない, and this agreement is what cancels out は. は and しか are incidentally both bound particles.

18. 人間にんげんには聞きこえないけれど犬いぬには聞きこえる音おとというのは、実際じっさいには存在そんざいする。

There are, in fact, sounds that can be heard by dogs but not by people.

Particle Note: The には after 実際 is simply the emphatic は after the adverb 実際に.

19. {夏なつ} には蝉せみの声こえが聞きこえる。

The buzz of cicadas can be heard in the summer.

Particle Note: This example is meant to remind you that には could simply emphatically denote temporal setting. This can be ascertained from には not being attached to a sentient agent (people/personified non-humans).

20. 夫おつとが私わたしに聞きこえるような小声こごえで私わたしの悪口わるくちを言うのが苦痛くつうです。

It's painful that my husband insults me in a whisper where I can hear him.

Particle Note: Understand that the 私に in this sentence is in a dependent clause modifying よう which then modifies 小声, which is why が is used beforehand with 夫.

21. 右耳みぎみみが聞きこえるようになった。

I've become able to hear out of my right ear.

Particle Note: The use of に (は) would change the meaning to "I then became able to hear it in my right ear." This sentence exemplifies how ② can be altered to Xが聞こえる, leaving out "Y" entirely. Of course, Xは聞こえる is possible as well.

22. 突然聞とつぜんきこえなくなったあと、耳みみは聞きこえるようになったが、耳鳴みみなりが残のこった。

After suddenly becoming unable to hear, my ears became able to hear to again, but severe tinnitus remained.

Particle Note: The topic of this sentence is the speaker's ears, which is why there is no 私は or the like that accompanies the first clause. If it were stated, it would be accompanied with 耳が, creating 私は耳が○○. Although this is an example of ②, this is not XやYが聞こえる. Rather, it's XはXが聞こえる. Although the nouns for X are different, they are parts of a single entity.

23. 僕ぼくの耳みみが聞きこえにくいと分かるなら、僕ぼく {が・に} 聞きこえるように話はなすのが筋すじじゃないか。

If you understand that I'm hard of hearing, then wouldn't it be logical to speak such that [I can hear what's being said/what's being said can be heard by me]?

Particle Note: The が after 耳 shouldn't be replaced, but because the use of が after 僕 may imply the exhaustive-listing function, the typical particle choice there would be に.

24. (私わたしは) 今変いまへんな音おとが聞きこえました。
I heard a strange noise/sound just now.

25. めっちゃ働はたらいているように聞きこえるけれど、実際じっさいのところ、ダレて仕事しごと(を)してる。
It may sound like I'm working real hard, but in actuality, I'm slacking at my job.

26. ずいぶん成長せいちょうが早はやいように聞きこえるかもしれないですね。
It might sound like growth has been quite fast, huh.

27. 嵐あらしを運はこんでくる落雷らくらいも、南極なんきょくの氷こおりが砕くだけの音おとも、このコには、この世界せかいの鼓動こどうに聞きこえているのだと思おも
う。
Lightning which carry storms, the sound of Antarctic ice breaking, they must sound like the heartbeat of this world to this kid.

Particle Note: The pattern of this sentence is YがXにはZに聞こえる. Don't let the fact that the Y elements come before the X element confuse you.

Grammar Note: The use of ている emphasizes how the truth of the statement holds for more than just the present point in time and has been so for some period of time.

28. とても日本語にほんごには聞きこえないなあ。
It sounds absolutely nothing like Japanese.

29. 遠とおくにいてもあなたの声こえは私わたしにだけは聞きこえるの。
No matter if you are afar, your voice can only be heard by me.

Particle Notes:

1. The は after あなたの声 replaces the が that would typically follow the “Y” element to topicalize/emphasize it.
2. だけに (は) is also possible, but this would shift emphasis off 聞こえる to the noun phrase that precedes the combination particle, which would be 私 in this sentence. Although 私 is emphasized thanks to だけは, the presence of に helps bring a stronger emphasis between the agent and 聞こえる.

30. 日本にっぽんの三菱電機株式会社みつびしでんきかぶしきがいしゃが、ブラインドサッカーに適応てきおうする指向性しこうせいスピーカーの開発かいはつを進すすめて
いる。位置いちが少すこしずれるだけで、音おとが聞きこえたり聞きこえなかったり
するものだ。ピッチでは音おとは聞きこえないけれど、観客席かんきゃくせき**だけ**には聞
きこえるようにすることができる。
Japan's Mitsubishi Corporation is developing a directional speaker adapted
for blind soccer. Just by shifting direction slightly, sound can be heard or not
heard. Although sound won't be heard on the field, one can have it so that
sound will only be heard in the spectator stands.

Particle Note:

1. The は after 音 in the third sentence replaces the が that would otherwise follow the “Y” element so that it can be topicalized and used as the “Y” element for the next clause

without having to be restated.

2. だけに (は) emphasizes the distinctiveness of the person/people who are a part of the phenomenon described by 聞こえる, which in this sentence is 観客席. Although not a typical person, the people who sit in the stands are people.

見える

見える is also often mistaken as a potential verb, and although it is translatable as “can see,” it merely describes the natural phenomenon of something being visible, making it fundamentally different from both 見 (ら) れる and 見ることが出来る.

The basic sentence patterns for 見える are as follows:

- ①XにはYが見える
- ②XはYが見える
- ③XにはYがZ (のよう) に見える。

The grammatical dynamics for 見える are the same as with 聞こえる. ①② are interpreted as “Y is visible to/can be seen by X” and ③ is interpreted as “Y looks/seems like Z to X.” The Z is an (indirect) object of comparison and can be made up of just a noun or with an adjective or verb that is then purposed into a nominal phrase with the help of よう. So for instance, 働いているように 見える = “to seem like (one) is working.”

Of ① and ②, the latter is most common, with には only really explicitly marking the agent if there is a strong, emotional appeal being made (Exs. 31 and 32). To distinguish ①② from ③ when various elements may be missing, remember that X is always a topicalized argument (sentence element) that is a sentient agent (human or personified non-human). Z has no restriction as both people and non-human entities are frequently used as objects of comparison. However, Z must be directly followed by 見える for the comparison-marker function of に to be made clear.

Translation Note: There are two translations provided for each example. The only difference being showcased is the variation in the interpretation of が with 見える.

Examples

31. 信仰者しんこうしゃには神かみが見みえる理由りゆうは何故なぜですか。

- i. Why is it that God is visible to believers?
- ii. Why is it that believers can see God?

32. 神かみが信仰者しんこうしゃ{にだけ (は) ・だけに (は) } 見みえるようにしているんでしょか。

- i. Is it that (they) are making it so that God is only visible to believers?
- ii. Is it that (they) are making it so that only believers can see God?

Particle Note: だけに (は) is also possible, but this would shift emphasis off 見える to the noun phrase that precedes the combination particle, which is 信仰者 in this sentence. にだけ (は) emphasizes the distinctiveness in the phenomenon which is described by 見える, whereas だけに (は) emphasizes the distinctiveness of the person/people who are a part of the phenomenon described by 見える.

33. お前まえに見みえるか、俺おれの哀かなしい顔かおが…
Can you see, my sad face…?

Particle Note: The sentence pattern here is a derivative of ①. There is some inversion in here, which is why the “Y” element appears after the verb. Although this means that the “X” element is right next to 見える, because it is お前, there really isn’t ambiguity here to confuse it with ③.

34. 動物どうぶつ (に) は幽霊ゆうれいが見みえるのですか。

i. Can ghost be seen by animals?

ii. Can animals see ghosts?

Particle Note: The importance of being able to see spirits/ghosts can be deemed important enough to emphasize “animals” as the agent of 見える.

35. 視力しりょくの悪わるい人ひとにしか見みえない画像がぞうをご紹介しょうかいしていきます！

i. I’m going to introduce you to images that are invisible but to people whose eyesight is poor!

ii. I’m going to introduce you to images that only people with poor eyesight can see!

Particle Note: The fact that にしか appears in a dependent clause modifying 画像 indicates that 画像 is the “Y” element of ①. Furthermore, the use of しか emphasizes the fact that “X” is the agent of 見える.

36. この手相てそうの持もち主ぬし (に) は幽霊ゆうれいが見みえる。

i. Ghosts are visible to possessors of these palm lines.

ii. Possessors of these palm lines can see ghosts.

37. 昆虫こんちゅうもカラスも紫外線しがいせんが見みえる。

i. Ultra-violet rays are visible to even insects and crows.

ii. Even insects and crows can see ultra-violet rays.

Particle Note: As this is a generic statement concerning fact, there is no semantic reason for why 昆虫 and カラス to be marked with にも instead.

38. 実じつは、犬いぬは色いろが見みえるが、色弱しきじゃくの人間にんげんと同おなじ程度ていどに見みえる。

i. As for dogs, colors are in fact visible to them, but only to the same degree as a person who has slight color-blindness.

ii. Dogs can in fact see color, but only to the same degree as a person who has slight color-blindness.

Particle Note: The に after 程度 functions as a comparison-marker. It can also be seen as being adverbial, creating a degree-adverb out of 色弱の人間と同じ程度.

39. 蜜蜂みつばち（に）は紫外線しがいせんが見みえ、それを利用りようして自分じぶんの好このみの花はなを見みつけることができる。

i. Ultra-violet rays are visible to honeybees, and they can find their favorite flowers by utilizing them.

ii. Honeybees can see ultra-violet rays, and they can find their favorite flowers by utilizing them.

Particle Note: The use of には accounts for the agent of both 見える and 見つけることができる. Using it over は helps emphasize the uniqueness of honeybees being explained by both predicates.

40. 新あたらしい恐竜きょうりゅうはアライグマに見みえるかもしれない。
A new dinosaur might look like a raccoon.

Particle Note: The は of this sentence actually mark the “Y” element of Pattern 3. The “X” would be an implied あなたには.

41. トムソンガゼルの群むれを襲おそうクロコダイルたち^が完全かんぜんに化ばけ物ものにしか見みえない。
Crocodiles attacking a herd of Thomson’s gazelle just completely look like monsters.

Particle Note: Due to the elements in the sentence and word order, にしか is after the “Z” element and not the “X” element, like has been the case for other examples in this lesson.

42. 猫ねこには人ひとの目めに見みえない「あるもの」^が見みえているらしい！
There appears to be a “certain something” not visible to the human eye that is visible to cats!

Particle Note: The phrase 目に見える means “visible to the eye.” The use of には after 猫 establishes grammatical parallelism with 目, as both are agents. 猫 is the agent of 見えている. 見えている is used instead of 見える to emphasize the ability cats (unintentionally) utilize that isn’t accessible to humans.

43. 人間にんげんのようなものに化ばけてはいるが、とても人間にんげんには見みえない。
Although it has shape-changed to something like a person, it hardly looks like a person.

44. 目め^が見みえない状態じょうたいでメイクするなんてできません。
I couldn’t possibly do my make-up blind.

Particle Note: This example demonstrates how ② can be modified to X^が (Y^が) 見える, especially when the “Y” element is irrelevant, such as is the case here. Furthermore, ^が is obligatory here because it is in a dependent clause modifying the noun 状態.

45. 今夜こんやは十六夜いざよいの月つき、家いえの近ちかくでは見みえるかな。
Tonight is the sixteenth-day moon; I wonder if I can see it near my/the house.

Particle Notes:

1. This sentence reminds us not to forget other particle expressions that could appear before 見える. では shows the location of 見える and has nothing to do with the “X” or “Y” elements of the basic sentence patterns with 見える. The same can be said for 聞こえる.
2. The “Y” element of the sentence is 十六夜の月. The “X” element is an understood 私. However, the thing topicalized in the sentence is 今夜, the time which the phenomenon of 見える is to potentially occur.

ある & いる

In the sense of “to have” as in indicating possession, there are two basic sentence patterns with ある and いる, which are as follows:

- ①Xに (は) Yが {ある・いる}
- ②XはYが {ある・いる}

The use of には emphasizes the agent of possession, in other words, who is doing the possessing. “X” must be a human agent or a personified non-human agent. Both ①② are equally common with ある. For when the object of possession is people, いる almost always refer to having family members. In this situation, the agent can either take には or は. Of course, if the exhaustive-listing function of が needs to be employed, it too can follow “X.”

As we learned in Lesson 21, the possession of other animate, living things such as pets is usually not expressed with いる. However, when it is, には is used but with words such as うち and 我が家 which both refers to oneself and one’s household.

Particle Notes:

1. The use of に to mark the agent with ある and いる also calls upon に’s function of indicating where something exists, which is why には is so emphatic here.
2. に isn’t usually by itself to mark the agent with these verbs except when it’s in a dependent clause with just the “X” element that modifies the “Y” element.

Examples

46. うちにはお金かねが無いから。
‘Cause I don’t have money.

47. 私わたしたちには、禁酒中きんしゅちゅう、ぼーっと酔よっ払はらっていたころでは考かんがえられないほど、時間じかんがあるんです。
When we’re abstaining from alcohol, we have so much time that we couldn’t have ever thought when we’d be spaced out drunk.

Particle Note: The adverbial phrase ending with the particle **ほど** does not interfere with the basic sentence pattern **XにはYがある**. It is just one of two adverb phrases in between **Xには** and **Yが**, the other being **禁酒中**.

48. 自分じぶん**には**お金かねがあるのに、なぜ周まわりの人ひと**は**お金かねをもっていないだろう。

Why is it that the people around me don't have money when one oneself does?

Particle Note: The reason for why **には** doesn't follow 周りの人 is because 持っている is not a stative-transitive predicate. Although it expresses the continuous state of having money, it also implies there is an active volition behind the agent carrying money around, which is contrary to **ある**, which implies that the possession in question is just a natural circumstance.

49. 大学生だいがくせい**は**一般的いっぱんてき**には**時間じかん**が**あるように見みえるが、サークル活動かつどうやバイトなど様々さまざまなこと**が**あり、意外いがいと忙しい。

It may seem that college students, generally, have time, but they are surprisingly quite busy with various things such as club activities and part-time jobs.

Particle Notes:

1. The use of **には** after 大学生 would be strange as the clause it's in is just a generic statement. In such situations, the "agent" of possession should just be marked by **は** and not **には**.

2. Note that the agent of the second **が** phrase in the second clause is the same as the first.

3. The **には** after 一般的 is simply the adverbial form of 一般的だ (to be typical) followed by the contrast-marker **は**.

50. 特捜班とくそうはん**には**フランス語ごが分かるメンバー**が**誰だれもいないんだ！
There's not a single member in the squad that understands French!

Particle Note: 特捜班 can be treated as a location of affiliation and/or a sentient, human agent of possession of people, which is why it is marked **に** **は**. Using **は** here would be ungrammatical.

51. うち**には**犬いぬがいます。

i. I have a dog.

ii. [I/we] have a dog at home.

Particle Note: The translation that best reflects the particle grammar of the sentence is translation ii.

52. 我わが家やは犬いぬ**が**いるから、余計掃除よけいそうじするようになった。

Our house has begun to excessively clean because we have a dog.

Particle Note: This is an instance where **いる** can show possession of a non-human object (pet) with the agent being marked by **は**. For one, 我が家 is a personified noun referring to both oneself and one's household. Two, 我が家

is both the topic of the first clause and the second clause. Although it can be viewed as the subject and agent of both clauses, the second clause is not a stative-transitive predicate, and because **には** doesn't mark the agent of a regular transitive predicate, using it would be ungrammatical here.

53. 人生じんせい**は**犬いぬ**が**いることによって美うつくしく輝かがやいて見みえる！
Life seems to shine so beautifully by having a dog.

Particle Note: This sentence demonstrates that you mustn't ignore independent-dependent clause boundaries. This is not an example of ② because **犬がいる** is in a dependent clause modifying **こと**. However, this is an example of **いる** indicating the possession of pets, which is common with **こと** with the "X" element being omitted as an understood—one's self and/or people in general.

54. 自分じぶんに**しか**ないものは何なんだろう。
What is it that only I myself have?

55. 自分じぶんに**ない**ものを数かぞえるより、自分じぶんに**ある**ものを考かんがえましょう。
Rather than count what you don't have, count what you do have.

出来る

As we learned in Lesson 83, **出来る** is the potential verb of **する** and is the representative verb of potential in general in Japanese. The agent of a potential sentence can be marked with **に (は)** so long as the potential phrase in question can be perceived as being a natural phenomenon. Meaning, when you see **に (は)**, the sense of "volition" that may or may not otherwise be present becomes voided out. If cancelling out the nuance of volition is not possible, then so too is the use of **には** in that circumstance. To demonstrate this, consider Ex. 56.

56. 私わたし (**には** ??・**は** ○) テニスができますよ。
I can play tennis!

Although it is not entirely ungrammatical to use **には** to mark **私** as the agent of this sentence due to **できる** being a stative-transitive predicate at its basic understanding, it is incredibly unnatural here because the strong volitional nuance of the transitive **する**.

Though at this point it goes without saying, there are two basic sentence patterns involving potential phrases, which are as follows:

- ① Xに (は) Yができる
- ② XはYができる

As for ①, **に** is typically only seen when in a dependent clause where "X" is only present to directly modify "Y," or when "Y" and "X" flip places. Having **に** directly next to the predicate helps emphasize the agent to the point that **は** isn't needed unless one wishes to also contrast the agent with other

people. Otherwise, には is typically seen. ① is frequently employed when showing the inherent abilities of one agent over that of another (Exs. 59 and 61). Another reason for using には is when は is used as the contrast-marker and not as the topic marker.

As for ②, this is the most common pattern for potential phrases because most people generally imply volitional control of the execution of their abilities. As we have already seen with Ex. 56, the presence of this nuance will cause には to sound unnatural. Because we have already seen plenty of examples of ② in previous lessons, all the examples below will be of ①.

Examples

57. 私わたしにできることはなんだろう。

i. What is it that I can do?

ii. What is it that can be done by me?

58. 私わたしにはできることとできないことがあります。

i. There are things that I can and cannot do.

ii. There are things that can and cannot be done by me.

Particle Note: This example is a misnomer as には is used with the predicate ある. However, the presence of できる in the sentence, emphasizes the necessity of には in the speaker's mind. Simply using は would cause the sentence to sound rather unnatural.

59. 人ひとには出来ないが、神かみには出来る。

It cannot be done by man, but it can be done by God.

60. 何なんでこんな馬鹿偉ばかえらそうな事ことがお前まえに書かけるんや！

How is it that you can write such absurdly cocky crap like this?!

Particle Note: Topicalizing お前 and having it come at the front of the sentence to make it follow ② would ruin the chastising tone. Although お前 could theoretically be marked by が with the exhaustive-listing function, the use of に is further enforced by the standard phenomenon of avoiding particle duplication in the same clause.

61. そりゃやれる人ひとにはやれるし、できない人ひとにはできないとしか答こたえようがない。

That's something that can be done by those capable of doing it, and the only answer is that it cannot be done by those incapable.

Particle Notes:

1. そりゃ is a contraction of それは. The それ is the “Y” element to やれる人にはやれる. It also happens to be “X” element to ない in the second clause, but it's important to note that the purely existential meaning of ある, with which there isn't an agent/owner to the existence.

2. Just as に is common when “X” and “Y” are flipped in ①, the same can be

said for には. Additionally, the contrast-marker は is obligatory here due to the contrast being made between やれる人 and できない人.

62. どっちにしろ、日本語にほんごにはない言葉ことばだから日本人にほんじんには発音はつおんできないんだよね。

Either way, since it's a word that isn't in Japanese, Japanese people can't pronounce it, no?

Particle Note: The “Y” element here is 日本語にはない言葉. It is not repeated after 日本人には due to the lack of “it” in Japanese grammar.

63. もはや、エラーコードを人間にんげんに読よめる形式けいしきに変換へんかんする必要ひつようはない。

No longer is there a need to convert error codes into expressions that are human-readable.

Particle Note: This sentence demonstrates how ① is the base pattern of potential expressions. Although using が instead is possible here, because the conditions for using に are all met, and because it is the base pattern, に is the preferred particle choice.

64. 暗号あんごうとは、解読方法かいどくほうほうを知しらない人ひとには解読かいどくできないものだ。

An encryption is something that cannot be deciphered by someone who doesn't know how to decode it.

65. 食たべなければならぬのは人間にんげんには作つくれない物質ぶっしつがあるからです。

We must eat because there are substances that cannot be created in people.

Particle Note: には is used to contrast with how other organisms may very well be able to create substances that the human body cannot.

66. それは我々われわれには想像そうぞうができないような苦くるしみだろう。

That is surely a hardship that is unimaginable to us.

Particle Notes:

1. With する verbs, が is often inserted between the base-noun and できる, making the base-noun the object of できる. When this happens, the presence of が after “X” for the exhaustive-listing function becomes less likely.

2. Because special emphasis is being placed on 我々 for being the agent of 想像ができない, simply marking the agent with は would be inappropriate, especially also given that the topic is already established as being それ.

要る

To bring this lesson to a conclusion, the last stative-transitive predicate that we will learn about will be the very one used as an example in the opening: 要る. As we know, this is the basic verb for “to need.” As has been the case for the other verbs, 要る too has two basic sentence patterns:

①Xに（は）Yが要る

②XはYが要る

Although ① is inherently the base pattern, ② is most commonly used at a ratio of ten-to-one. Whenever the agent of “to need” is actually present, に will always be optional. には is used to emphasize the relation between the agent and 要る. As is to be expected, XにYが要る is exceedingly rare and would only be seen in dependent clauses in which “X” directly modifies “Y” (Ex. 70) or when “Y” and “X” flip places followed by some emphatic sentence ending (Ex. 71).

Examples

67. お年寄としより（に）はお金かねが要らないんじゃないか？

Don't old people not need money?

68. 息子むすこには、お金かねは要らないからその代わり旅行りょこうに連れて行いってって頼たのんでるのさ。

I ask my son to take me on trips instead since I don't need money.

Particle Note: This example is a misnomer. The には after 息子 goes with 頼んでる. The sentence pattern for 要らない is simply ② with only “Y” present. は is used to imply that of the things the speaker needs, money is not one of those things. However, the fact that the speaker does need things is not negated, just the need for money.

69. 奴隷どれい（に）は、お金かねは要らない。

i. Slaves don't need money.

ii. Money isn't needed by slaves.

Particle Note: Translation i. is most appropriate for when は is used, whereas translation ii. is most appropriate when には is used.

70. 我われらに要いるものは、銀河ぎんがを包つつむエネルギーである。

What is needed by us is the energy that envelops the galaxy.

71. 何なにかを使つかう前まえに、自分じぶんに要いるものか（を）確認かくにんしてから使つかったほうがいいと思おもう。

Before using something, I think it's best to use it after verifying whether it's something you yourself need.

～に必要だ: The Purpose-Marker に

The one adjectival stative-transitive predicate that can take に is 必要だ, unsurprisingly synonymous with 要る. 必要だ means “to be necessary,” and the use of に indicates “to whom” “Y” is necessary. However, this use of に isn't quite the agent-marker. This is because “X” is not limited to sentient entities. In fact, “X” can be anything, including nominalized expressions (Ex. 73). This に marks a purpose/reason for an action/state.

72. 運命うんめいの人ひとに出会であうために、今いまの私わたしに必要ひつようなことは何なんでしょうか。

What is it that my current self needs to meet my soulmate?

Particle Note: Thematically, both **に** in bold can be viewed as marking purpose/reason.

73. ギターを始はじめる**のに**必要ひつようなものをまとめてみました。

I've tried to compile the things necessary for beginning guitar.

The greatest cliffhanger in the introduction of this lesson was the lack of a Japanese translation for “animals need food.” Without further ado, the translation of this sentence is as follows:

74. 動物どうぶつが生いきる**には**食物しょくもつが要いる。

i. Animals need food (to live).

ii. For animals to live, they need food.

iii. For animals to live, food is needed.

This sentence represents another facet of **には**. This **には** is thematically the same as the ones in Exs. 72 and 73, making it equivalent to “for/to.” The reason why **には** can directly follow a verb is that the verb is actually nominalized as an effect. This makes **には** equal to **のに (は)**.

The three translations above tie back to various things detailed in this lesson. The insertion of **～が生きる** re-purposes **に** as the purpose-marker because 動物 isn't a true agent. However, because 生きる ends up being nominalized, it is not illogical to treat this as an extension of the agent-marker **に**. In fact, it's contexts like these where the purpose-marker **に** likely derived. A way to conceptualize this as such is translating Ex. 74 as “The state of animals living requires that there be food.”

75. 人ひとが生いきる**には**意味いみがあり、そして価値かちがあるのです。

There is meaning and value to people living.

Particle Note: The relation between **には** and ある can be interpreted as both being its existential and its possessive meaning. Where “meaning” resides is within people living, and it is the act of man living which has meaning. Additionally, if we view the purpose-marker **に** as being one in the same as the agent-marker, then one could translate this as “The state of people living has meaning and value.”

Verb + **には**

Thinking this deep into how and why **には** is used after verbs helps in understanding how **に** truly works in its various functions. Although one could create grammatically literal translations for any instance of **には** like the ones just presented, Verb + **には** is typically translated as “in + verb + -ing...”

76. 飲食店いんしょくてんをやる**には**、調理師免許ちょうりしめんきょが必要ひつようだと思おもっている人ひとが多おおいですが、実じつはそんな必要ひつようはありませ

ん。

There are many people who think a chef certificate is needed [in running/to run] a restaurant, in reality, there is no such need.

77. 自分じぶんに必要ひつような保険ほけんを考かんがえるには、まず保険ほけんに加入かにゅうする目的もくてきを確認かくにんすることが大切たいせつだ。

In thinking about what insurance is needed for oneself, it is important to first confirm one's aim in subscribing for insurance.

Curriculum Note: As has been alluded to, there is overlap between “Verb + のに（は）” and “Verb + には.” However, due to the complexity of the topic, this will be foregone for now and will thoroughly discussed in a later lesson.

第114課: Directions

Having a large vocabulary is important. So, let's learn about places for directions!

Places

Place	所	ところ	Amusement park	遊園地	ゆうえんち
Post office	郵便局	ゆうびんきょく	Bank	銀行	ぎんこう
Company	会社	かいしゃ	Work	仕事	しごと
Hospital	病院	びょういん	Graduate school	大学院	だいがくいん
College	大学	だいがく	Department store	デパート	デパート
School	学校	がっこう	Department store	百貨店	ひゃっかてん
Theater	映画館	えいがかん	Convenience store	コンビニ	コンビに
Coffee shop	喫茶店	きっさてん	Supermarket	スーパー	スーパー
Park	公園	こうえん	Museum	博物館	はくぶつかん
Home	家	いえ	Restaurant	レストラン	レストラン
Police station	交番	こうばん	Train station	駅	えき
Airport	空港	くうこう	Church	教会	きょうかい
Mosque	モスク	モスク	Synagogue	シナゴグ	シナゴグ
High rise	ビル	ビル	Skyscraper	摩天楼	まてんろう
Zoo	動物園	どうぶつえん	Art museum	美術館	びじゅつかん
Shrine	神社	じんじゃ	Chinese restaurant	中国料理店	ちゅうごくりょうりてん

Temple	寺	てら	Japanese restaurant	日本料理屋	にほんりょうりや
Hotel	ホテル	ホテル	Inn	旅館	りょかん
Family inn	民宿	みんしゅく	Pharmacy	薬局	やっきょく
Public bath	銭湯	せんとう	Cemetery	墓地	ぼち・はかち

Culture Note: A 旅館 is a traditional Japanese inn. They are wooden structures where guests may sleep, bathe, and eat traditional food. The flooring is laid out with 畳たたみ. Bedding is 布団ふとん, and you wear 浴衣ゆかた to sleep.

Shops

Store in Japanese is 店みせ and shop is 店舗てんば. Store names often end in ～屋や or ～店てん. To address an employee of a store, address him or her as:

Kind of Store + ～さん

At times ～員いん is used to mean "employee". As it is more polite to address a person with his or her actual name, always look for a name tag if available. To say where one works, you use the phrase ～に勤つとめています.

Kinds of Stores

Stationer	文房具屋	ぶんぼうぐや	Butcher shop	肉屋	にくや
Cleaners	クリーニング屋	クリーニングや	Photo shop	写真屋	しゃしんや
Fish store	魚屋	さかなや	Grocery store	八百屋	やおや
Fruit store	果物屋	くだものや	Bakery	パン屋	パンや
Cake shop	ケーキ屋	ケーキや	Candy shop	お菓子屋	おかしや
Appliance store	電気屋	でんきや	Shoe store	靴屋	くつや
Sushi shop	寿司屋	すしや	Flower store	花屋	はなや
Drug store	薬屋	くすりや	Food stand	出店	でみせ
Book store	本屋	ほんや	Book store	書店	しょてん
Retail store	小売店	こうりてん	Liquor store	酒屋	さかや
Supermarket	スーパー	スーパー	Toy store	玩具屋	おもちゃや
Camera store	カメラ屋	カメラや	Old book store	古本屋	ふるほんや

Furniture store	家具屋	かぐや	Jewelry store	宝石店	ほうせきてん
Clothing store	衣料品屋	いりょうひんや	Restaurant	飲食店	いんしょくてん
Convenience store	コンビニ				

Location

To describe the location of an item or place, you must use the following expressions in Japanese. Unlike in English, the location phrase is after the noun.

Xの前	Xのまえ	In front of X	Xの上	Xのうえ	On top of X
Xの横	Xのよこ	(To) the side of X	Xの中	Xのなか	Inside X
XとYの間	XとYのあいだ	Between X and Y	Xの後ろ	Xのうしろ	Behind X
Xの奥	Xのおく	In the back of X	Xの側面	Xのそくめん	At the side of X
Xの下	Xのした	Under X	Xの隣	Xのとなり	Next to X
Xの向かい	Xのむかい	Across from X	Xの周り	Xのまわり	Around X
Xの正面	Xのしょうめん	In front of X	Xの近く	Xのちかく	Near X
Xの先	Xのさき	Past X	Xの遠く	Xのとおく	Far from X
Xの向こう	Xのむこう	Beyond X	Xの脇	Xのわき	On the side of X
Xの方	Xのほう	In the direction of X	Xの近隣	Xのきんりん	Adjacent to X
Xの（直ぐ）側	Xの（すぐ）そば	Right by X	Xの傍ら	Xのかたわら	Aside from X
Xの手前	Xのてまえ	On this side of			

Word Note: You can add 斜（ななめ） at the front of a direction word to mean "diagonally". So, 斜め後ろ = diagonally behind. 向き means "facing". So, 南向き = facing south.

- 銀行はどこですか。
Where is the bank?
- 工場（こうじょう）の隣（となり）にあります。
It's right next to the factory.

3. 近くに電気屋はありますか。
Is there a electronics store nearby?
4. 辞書じしょは机の上にあります。
The dictionary is on the desk.
5. 交番の前に学校があります。
There is a school in front of the police station.
6. 美術館の横に病院があります。
There is a hospital to the side of the art museum.
7. 川（の）向うの家
House on the other side of a river
8. テーブルの下に置いてある。
It's been placed under the desk.
9. 変な線せんが学校の周りにあります。
There is an odd line around the school.
10. あそこの本棚ほんだなの下の段だんの左の方の小さい字引じびきの隣の本
The book over there next to the small dictionary on the left side of the bottom shelf on the bookshelf
11. 消防署の向かいに喫茶店がある。
There is a coffee shop across from the fire station.
12. 湖みずうみのわきで散歩さんぽする。
To take a walk on the side of the lake.
13. 彼は扉の向こうへ走り出した。
He began to race beyond the door.
14. この部屋の前には縁側えんがわがあって、その前は庭です。
There is a veranda in front of the room, and in front of it is a garden.
15. この先通行止さきつうこうどめ
Road Blocked!
16. 病院ならすぐこの先です。
If you're talking about the hospital, it's only a little way from here.
17. 駅の隣に大きなスーパーができました。
A big supermarket has been made next to the train station.

Word Note: Remember that できる does not mean just "can" but can also mean "completed", "be made", "come into being", etc.

Asking for Directions

Below are some more additional vocabulary words for the examples that follow.

Intersection	交差点	こうさてん	Traffic Light	信号	しんごう
Bridge	橋	はし	End of the Street	突き当り	つきあたり
Meter	メートル	メートル	Train	電車	でんしゃ
Subway	地下鉄	ちかてつ	Bus	バス	バス
Bus Stop	バス停	バスてい	Taxi	タクシー	タクシー
Taxi Station	乗り場	のりば	Bullet train	新幹線	しんかんせん
Street	道	みち	Road	道路	どうろ
Highway	ハイウェイ	ハイウェイ	Expressway	高速道路	こうそくどうろ
Highway	ハイウエー	ハイウエー	Main road	幹線道路	かんせんどうろ
Corner	角	かど	Left	左	ひだり
Left Side	左側	ひだりがわ	Right	右	みぎ
Right Side	右側	みぎがわ	Left and Right	左右	さゆう
North	北	きた	South	南	みなみ
East	東	ひがし	West	西	にし
Northeast	北東	ほくとう	Northwest	北西	ほくせい
Southeast	南東	なんとう	Southwest	南西	なんせい
North-north-east	北北東	ほくほくとう	North-north-west	北北西	ほくほくせい
South-south-east	南南東	なんなんとう	South-south-west	南南西	なんなんせい
South and North	南北	なんぼく	East and West	東西	とうざい
All 4 directions	東西南北	とうざいなんぼく	Vicinity	辺り	あたり
Neighborhood	辺	へん	Direction	方	ほう
To Turn	曲がる	まがる	To cross	渡る	わたる
To Go	行く	いく	To pass	過ぎる	すぎる

Word Notes:

1. "By" in the sense of a mode of transportation is expressed by で.
2. 側 = side. This can be used to refer to direction, side of something, a position, and a third person. For the first three, it can be read as かわ and even be seen as っかわ, but these are no longer standard readings.

Directions Note: Directions like 南東なんとう are reversed if they represent location. For example, southeast Asia is 東南とうなんアジア.

When asking for directions, there are many different ways you can formulate your question. You may opt to say you're lost, use a conditional, or use a certain level of politeness. Below are some of the many viable ways you would do this in Japanese.

...に・へ行きたいですけど・が・けれど (も)	I want to go to...but
どうやって...に・へ行ったらいいですか。	How should I go if I am going to...?
どうやって...に・へ行けばいいですか。 道に迷ってしまいました。	How should I go if I am going to...? I've gotten lost.
...への行き方を教えてください (ませんか)。	Could you please tell me how to get to...?
...ここは、どの辺ですか。	What neighborhood is this?
...どうやって行くんですか	How do I get to...?
...はどこですか。	Where is...?
...はどちらですか。	Where is...? (Formal)
...がどこか教えてください (ませんか)。	(If you would) please tell me where...is.

Word Note: You can use 何で instead of どうやって, but it isn't as common.

As politeness is often heightened when asking for directions, です is often changed to でしょう, its volitional form. People will typically respond to you by using the と conditional or 〜てください.

18. どうやって行ったらいいでしょうか。
How should I go there?
19. 2つ目の交差点を渡わたって、40メートルぐらい行ってください。
Cross the second intersection, and go about forty meters.
20. 40メートルぐらい行くと、左側に美術館があります。
If you go about forty meters, an art museum will be on your left.
21. その美術館の角を左に曲がって、しばらくまっすぐ行ってください。
Turn left at the corner of the art museum, and go straight for a while.
22. しばらくまっすぐ行くと、郵便局が見えますよ。
If you go straight for a while, you will see a post office.
23. すみません、私もこの辺は初めてなんです。
Sorry, I am new to this area.
24. 旅館はどちらですか。
Where is the ryokan?

Culture Note: In a 旅館 guests live on traditional tatami mats, take Japanese baths, and sleep on futon. You will most likely encounter Japanese style toilets, which look quite different. You have to squat on those.

25. 「新幹線に乗ったことがありますか。」 「いいえ、乗ったことはありません。ところで、東京駅に行きたいですけど、どうやって行けばいいですか。」 「3つ目の交差点を右に曲がってください。そうすると、左にありますよ。」 「どうも。」

"Have you ridden the Shinkansen?" "No, I haven't". "By the way, I want to go to Tokyo Station, but how should I get there?" "Turn right on the third intersection. Then, it will be on your left". "Thanks".

Culture Note: The 新幹線, also known as the "bullet train", is one of the fastest passenger train services in the world. The 新幹線 opened in 九州 in 2011.

26. Xへはどうやって行きますか。
How do I get to X?

27. 道に迷いました。銀行を探さがしています。どうすれば行けますか。
We're lost. We are trying to find a bank. How can we get there?

28. 「遠いですか」 「いいえ5分くらいですよ」 「ああ、そうですか。どうもありがとうございます」 「どういたしまして」
"Is it far?" "No, it's about five minutes (from here)" "Ah, really. Thank you very much" "You're welcome".

Then

"Then" is それから when you're explaining a progression of events, which is very important in giving directions and showing what happens right after in general, and そうすると is used when you do something, something else will happen.

29. 2つ目の交差点を左に曲がってください。それから、まっすぐ行ってください。
Please turn right on the second intersection. Then, please go straight.

30. この道をまっすぐ行ってください。そうすると、右に病院があります。
Please go straight on this street. Then, there will be a hospital to your right.

31. 薬を口に含ふくんだ。それから、水で流ながし込んだ。
I swallowed the medicine. Then, I washed it down with water.

32. 私は仕事で皿さらを洗い、それから乾かわかしました。
I washed then dried the dishes at work.

Exercises

Translate into Japanese (1-5)

1. I'm going to school tomorrow.

2. Where is the bank?
3. How should I go to the movie theatres?
4. The police station is behind the department store.
5. The neighborhood is to the left side of the highway.
6. How do you say then as in continuing your directions?
7. Explain そうすると.
8. Make a paragraph using 3 locations, and 2 specific indicators where they're are.

第137課: ～ために I: In order to...

The purpose-marker に attaches to a handful of nouns, creating several important grammar patterns. This is very much the case when it follows the noun 為, which means “objective/benefit” or “result.” Although most typically seen paired with the particle に, 為 can still be used like any other noun with these meanings as demonstrated below.

1. あなたの**為**ためを思おもって言いうのよ！
I'm saying this **for** your own **good**!

2. 世界せかいの**為**ためなら犠牲ぎせいは仕方しかたない。
If they're **for the sake of** the world, sacrifices can't be helped.

3. 子供こどもの**為**ためを思おもって言いつついるつもりが、逆ぎゃくにストレスを与あたえているかもしれません。
Your intentions of saying that **for** your child's **benefit** may in fact be conversely stressing out your child.

4. 部下ぶかの沈黙ちんもくは上司じょうしの**ため**にならないし、組織そしきにとってもその上司のキャリアにとってもプラスにはならない。
Silence from subordinates is not **for the benefit of** the boss, nor will it be a plus for the organization or for that boss' career.

5. 情なさけは人ひとの**為**ためならず。
Compassion is not **for** other people's **benefit**.

Grammar Note: ならず is the Classical Japanese equivalent of ではない and is commonly seen in proverbs such as Ex. 5.

When the purpose-marker に follows ため, it is used to express an **objective/goal to realize something by one's utmost effort**. In doing so, it is often translated as “for” or “(in order) to” as we will soon see. Aside from showing purpose, in concurrence with its second definition, ため **may also be used to show cause**. This lesson will focus solely on the first meaning, and in the next lesson we'll focus on the second meaning.

Orthography Note: It's important to note that 為 is typically written as ため , which is how it will be spelled for the remainder of this lesson. Nonetheless, 為 is still a common spelling. Often, it is the writer's style or the medium that dictates which spelling is used.

Marking an Objective

The primary purpose of ～ために is to express purpose. In doing so, ～ために **must be used with verbs of volition**. This does not mean that it is limited to transitive verbs. Rather, it is limited to verbs which have an agent who has control over achieving the stated goal.

Conjugation Recap

Although ～ために follows the same grammar as any other instance of a noun following a verb, because the Japanese expression itself is very different in regard to part of speech from its English counterpart “(in order) to,” we will look at how to conjugate ～ために with each kind of verb.

/eru/-Ichidan Verb	食べる + ために →	食べるために	(In order) to eat
/iru/-Ichidan Verb	見る + ために →	見るために	(In order) to see
/u/-Godan Verb	使う + ために →	使うために	(In order) to use
/ku/-Godan Verb	行く + ために →	行くために	(In order) to go
/gu/-Godan Verb	泳ぐ + ために →	泳ぐために	(In order) to swim
/su/-Godan Verb	話す + ために →	話すために	(In order) to talk
/tsu/-Godan Verb	勝つ + ために →	勝つために	(In order) to win
/nu/-Godan Verb	死ぬ + ために →	死ぬために	(In order) to die
/mu/-Godan Verb	読む + ために →	読むために	(In order) to read
/ru/-Godan Verb	測る + ために →	測るために	(In order) to measure
Suru (Verb)	する + ために →	するために	(In order) to do
Kuru	来る + ために →	来るために	(In order) to come

Conjugation Note: This usage of ～ために is usually used with affirmative expressions, and it must be used with the non-past form of a verb.

The Four Scenarios of the Objective-Marking ～ (の) ために

Regardless of how ～ (の) ために expresses purpose, the agent of both clauses in the sentence are always the same. To visualize this, envision all instances of the purpose-ため as being “AためにB.” The someone doing A and the someone doing B must be the same person. In case you've forgotten what “agent” means, the “agent” of a sentence is the “someone doing X.”

Particle Note: Interestingly, the particle に is often dropped in literary settings from these two expressions when in declarative statements, but in

interrogative sentences and/or comments directed at others, に is not dropped. Motivation for this is that in literary settings, grammatical connections such as に's role of marking purpose that are easily deduced from context are dropped out of a necessity to be concise. Questions or statements directed toward others, though, present a need to be explicit, and so omission of latent parts of a sentence becomes out of place.

①: Noun A + の + ため: Thinking about A's benefit

This interpretation is used with nouns that either concern people or are/made up of people. This usage is usually translated as "for." Even when the "A" element in the base sentence pattern "AためにB" is a noun, the particle の is conceptualized as being an abbreviation of some verbal expression. For instance, in Ex. 6, a verb that comes to mind that の before ため stands for is 援助えんじょする (to aid).

6. 貧まずしい人々ひとびとのために何百万円なんひゃくまんえんもの慈善寄付金じぜんきふきんを集あつめました。

We have collected millions of yen in charity contributions **for** the poor.

7. 今いままでで一番国民いちばんこくみんのための政治せいじを行おこなってくれた総理大臣そうりだいじんは誰だれだと思おもいますか？

Of the prime ministers up till now, who do you think has governed **for** the people the most?

8. 社会貢献活動しゃかいこうけんかつどうを通とおして、安全あんぜん・快適かいてきな社会しゃかいのために、様々さまざま活動かつどうを行おこなっています。

Through social action programs, we are conducting various operations **for** a safe and pleasant society.

9. 言葉ことばの壁かべにより、高たかい能力のうりょくを生いかせない外国人生徒がいこくじんせいとのため、取とり出だし授業じゅぎょうや外国人生徒がいこくじんせいとサポーターなどによる教育支援体制きょういくしえんたいせいを整ととのえている。

For foreign students who cannot make the best of their high-level abilities due to language barrier, (they) have arranged an education support structure by means of separate classes and foreign-student supporters.

10. 会社かいしゃのために働はたらいていることが、お客様きゃくさまに喜よろこばれ、それが自分じぶんや家族かぞくのためになるのであればそれでいいし、自分じぶんや家族かぞくのために働はたらくことでお客様きゃくさまから支持しじされ、それが会社かいしゃにとっても有益ゆうえきならそれでいい。また、お客様きゃくさまのために働はたらいていることが、自分じぶんの喜よろこびとなり、それが結果的けっかてきに会社かいしゃの利益りえきに繋つながら、給料きゅうりょうが上あがることで家族かぞくの喜よろこびとなればそれでいい。

Working **for** the company will delight one's clientele, which is fine if it becomes beneficial **for** oneself and one's family, and if one receives support from one's clients by working **for** oneself and one's family and that is also profitable to the company, then that's fine. Also, if working **for** one's clientele becomes one's joy, which is then consequently tied to the

company's benefit, and leads to a raise that becomes one's family's delight, that too is fine.

②: Noun A + の + ため: Objective to realizing A

In this usage, "Noun A" refers to some entity that can be viewed as a purpose/goal, and what follows is the objective for realizing that said purpose/goal. This usage can also have its parts reversed to have the objective stated first with the sentence ending in ～ためだ (Ex. 11). This usage is also typically translated as "for."

11. なぜ会社かいしゃの**ために**仕事しごと（を）するかというと、自身じしんの収入しゅうにゅう**のため**です。

As to why one works **for** one's company, it's **for** one's own income.

Grammar Note: Though the first instance of ため is of Usage 1, the sentence-ending instance is of Usage 2. "Working for one's computer" is the objective for realizing one's source of income.

12. 安全あんぜんな社会しゃかいの実現じつげんの**ためには**、すべての市民しみんの理解かいと協力きょうりょくが必要ひつようです。

For the realization of a safe society, understanding and cooperation of all townspeople is necessary.

13. 自分自身じぶんじしんの健康けんこうと幸福こうふくの**ために**敵てきを赦ゆるし、忘わすれましょう。

For one's own health and happiness, forgive one's enemies and forget.

14. 何なんの**ために**闘たたかうのか。権力けんりょくの**ため**か。自由じゆうの**ため**か。平和へいわの**ため**か。

What do you fight **for**? **For** influence? **For** freedom? **For** peace?

15. 責任せきにんある科学者かがくしゃは、科学かがくの健全けんぜんな発展はってんの**ために**、こうした事態じたいに自みずから適切てきせつに対応たいおうしていく必要ひつようがある。

As for the scientists responsible, it is necessary that they themselves adequately handle these situations **for** the healthy development of science.

念のため、確認したいのですが、上記の認識で大丈夫でしょうか。

I want to make sure just in case. Is my understanding above okay?

③: Verb + ための Noun B: Noun B which realizes stated goal

Although this can also be seen as Noun A + ための Noun B, the point of Usage 3 is that when ～（の）ため is followed directly by another noun, that Noun B is what realizes the stated goal seen before ため. This usage may be translated as "for" or "to."

16. 住民じゅうみんの福祉ふくしを向上こうじょうさせる**ための**政策せいさくを実施じっしする。

To implement political measures **for** advancing the welfare of residents.

17. 幸しあわせになる**ための**たったひとつの道みちとは？

What is the one single path **to** becoming happy?

18. 場所ばしょによっては、着替きがえる**ための**部屋へやを提供ていきょうしてくれるところもある。

Depending on the location, there are also places that will offer you a room **to** change.

19. 一人暮らしひとりぐらしをする**ための**部屋へやを借かりるときには、部屋へやを貸かしてくれる大家おおやさんと賃貸契約ちんたいけいやくを結むすぶことになります。

When renting a room **to** live alone, you will sign a lease agreement with the landlord who is renting you the room.

20. 全すべては、家族かぞくにより良よい生活せいかつをもたらす**ためだ**。

It is all [**for** bringing/**to** bring] about a better life for (their) families.

漢字 **Note:** The verb もたらす (to bring about) is only seldom spelled as 齎す.

④: Verb of Volition + **ためには** + Expression of Obligation

～**ためには** involves willful action/control by the agent/speaker in question.

For verbs that have intransitive-transitive pairs, only the transitive form should be used with this pattern. This is further enforced by the sentences ending in an expression of obligation.

21. 成功せいこうする**ためには**、面倒臭めんどうぐさいことをたくさんしなければなりませんよ。

(In order) to success, you must do lots of tiresome things.

22. 優良ゆうりょうな見込みこみ客きゃくを獲得かくとくする**ためには**、これを見極みきわめなくてはなりません。

(In order) to acquire excellent prospective [customers/clients], you must get to the bottom of this.

23. 大型船舶おおがたせんぱくを運航うんこうする**ためには**海技士かいぎしの免許めんきょが必要ひつようです。

(In order to) operate a large seacraft, [a mariner license is necessary/you must be a licensed mariner].

24. 心臓病しんぞうびょうを予防よぼうする**ためには**、どうすればいいですか。

(In order) to prevent heart disease, what should one do?

25. 英語えいごを習得しゅうとくする**ためには**、あなたの生活せいかつの中なかで英語えいごの優先順位ゆうせんじゅんいを高たかくしましょう。

(In order) to learn English, increase the priority of English in your daily life.

～ないために

As mentioned earlier, ～ないために is seldom used. This is because for it to be grammatical, 100% or near 100% confidence that the agent has control over the non-realization of “A” must be implied. Remember, the base sentence pattern for ～ために is “AためにB.” Just as how ため carries a very affirmative nuance of “A” being realized by a stated objective “B,” when paired with a negative sentence, this becomes a very affirmative statement that “A” won’t realize by means of the stated objective “B.”

26. スズメバチに襲おそわれないためには、どのようなことに気をつけたらよいのでしょうか。

What sort of things should one be careful of to not be attacked by wasps?

Sentence Note: This question asks about what actions—“B”—can be taken to give the agent control over the non-realization of “A”—being attacked by wasps.

27. 被害ひがいに遭あわないために、様々さまざまな詐欺さぎの手口てぐちについて知っておきましょう！

Know about the various scam tricks in order not to become victimized!

Sentence Note: The use of ～ために is appropriate so long the speaker implies that “B”—actively finding out and learning about the various scam tricks—brings about person control over not becoming a victim.

28. そうならないためにも専門家以外の人に相談するのはやめましょう。

Refrain from consulting with non-experts to make it **so** it also doesn’t happen that way.

Grammar Note: Although なる typically doesn’t imply volition, this sentence implies that “B” is the means by which the agent has control over “A” not realizing, thus making the sentence grammatical.

29. 死しないために生いきるのは御免ごめんだ。

I’ll have nothing to do with living in order not to die.

30. ～パリ協定後きょうていごの投融資とうゆうしを誤あやまらないために～

—In Order not to Make Investment and Lending Mistakes Post-Paris Accords—

Sentence Note: The use of ～ないために is most common in headlines such as this.

第115課: The Passive I

This lesson is actually our second lesson concerning ～られる and ～れる but sadly not the last. They not only make the potential, but they also make the passive voice. The Japanese passive is used in ways the English passive is not. This is aside from the obvious fact that the times when English speakers and Japanese speakers use it won’t be the same across the board.

～られる and ～れる

～られる and ～れる attach to the 未然形 and may be used for the following things. ～られる is used with 一段 verbs and 来る and ～れる is used with 五段 verbs and する.

一段 食べられる 五段 飲まれる する される 来る こられる

As you can see, 来る is intransitive but is shown here. You will learn in the next lesson on the passive how the Japanese passive endings can be used with intransitive verbs. You'll also learn in a future lessons how to create spontaneity and light honorific phrases.

Conjugation Notes:

1. For する, the older passive form is せられる (せ-未然形 + ～られる). Some verbs like 課す (to tax; levy) are still sometimes used with the old form せられる.
2. The voiced forms of する, ずる is conjugated as follows: ずる + られる = ぜられる (Ex. 感ぜられる). Using ずる is old-fashioned and restricted to 書き言葉.

More Conjugation Examples

五段 To take	取る → 取られる	一段 To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一段 To see	見る → 見られる	五段 To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
カ変 To come	来る → 来られる	五段 To buy	買う → 買われる
サ変 To do	する → される	五段 To change (int.)	変わる → 変わられる
五段 To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一段 To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五段 To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五段 To indulge	貪る → 貪られる
五段 To fasten	繫ぐ → 繫がれる	五段 To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Caution Note: 五段 verbs ending in る—remember that all verbs in this category etymologically just end in -u—appear to end in ～られる. However, as their 未然形 is ら-, this is not the case.

Usage Note: 変わられる would only be correct Japanese if used in honorifics or compound verbs like 移り変わる.

受身形

'Direct' Passive

Basic passive sentences are like Ex. 2, deriving from a non-passive sentence like Ex. 1. However, just as how English speakers can say "the tournament will be held in Paris", there doesn't even have to necessarily be a subject with overt emotion. First, though, consider this basic example yet comical example.

1. 犬が鯨くじらを食くった。
The dog **ate** the whale.

2. 犬が鯨に食われた。
The dog **was eaten** by the whale.

Although odd, the sentences show the differences well. In a passive sentence there is an **action receiver and an action performer**. The action received is always there: it's the passive verb. What *may or may not* be there is the receiver and or the performer. The performer (agent) is marked by に --"by". The subject is the action receiver. In the **past tense** the subject is the "doer". The **(direct) passive voice** has the whale be the "doer" and the dog the one being eaten.

Curriculum Note: For instances of the agent being marked by から in the passive, click [link](#).

Lastly, によって shows what an action was done under. It's especially used for showing when something is created, discovered, or named by someone. If there is a direct object in the sentence, you will see を too.

Examples

3. アリは弟に食くわれた。
The ant was eaten by my brother.

4. ネックレスが泥棒どろぼうに盗られました。
The necklace was stolen by a thief.

5. この本は僕に読まれました。
This book was read by me.

6. ボールがパスされ、彼女はそれを受けた。
The ball was passed and she received it.

7. 子供は引っ掻かれて、泣いた。
The kid was scratched, and he cried.

8. 親にまで見限られた。
Even his parents have turned their backs on him.

9. このため開発が急がれている。
Because of this, the development is being hurried.

10. 彼女に騙だまされたよ。
I got cheated by my girlfriend.

11. 姿を他人たにんに見られる。
To have one's figure seen by others.

12. 二人ふたりだけ取り残のこされた。
The two were left all alone.

13. アメリカに住んでいるのは恵めぐまれた環境かんきょうにあるということです。
Living in America is in a blessed environment.
14. 一句いっくの内うちに万感ばんかんの思いが凝縮ぎょうしゅくされていた。
Floods of emotions were condensed into a single phrase.
15. 彼女は雇やとわれて五ヶ月もしないうちに首くびになったさ。(Casual; Tokyo Dialect)
She hadn't been employed for five months before she got fired.
16. この塔とうは200年前に建たてられました。(Passive)
This tower was built two hundred years ago.
17. 一人だけ取り残された孤独な学生が迷子まいごになった。
The left behind lonely student got lost.
18. すりに財布さいふをすられた。
I got my wallet pocket picked by a pickpocket.
19. 上司じょうしに叱しかられました。
I got scolded by my boss.
20. 呪のろわれた島だよ。
It is a cursed island.
21. 日本の車は世界中せかいじゅうへ輸出されています。
Japanese cars are exported throughout the world.
22. その計画はあの人たちに思い付かれたものです。
That plan is something that was thought up of by those people.
23. この「火車」という小説は宮部によって書かれました。
This novel called "Kasha" was written by Miyabe.
24. その仕事は加藤かとうさんによってなされました。
The work was done by Mr. Kato.
25. あの島はコロンブスによって名づけられた。
That island was named by Columbus.
26. 彼女は皆から愛されています。
She is loved by everybody.
27. 渋滞じゅうたいに巻き込まれたからだよ。
(It's) because I got stuck in traffic!
28. この歌は英語で歌われました。
This song was sung in English.
29. 道を聞かれた。
I was asked the way.

30. 濟なし崩しに変更される。
It will be changed little by little.
31. 彼の名前は決して忘れられないだろう。
His name will never be forgotten.
32. 昔日本の家は木で造つられました。
In the past Japanese homes were made with wood.
33. ブロードバンドルータが取り付けられました。
The broadband router was installed.
34. 保管庫に鍵かぎがかけられた。
The vault was secured with a key.
35. 金きんから城しろを作ったといわれている。
It is said that he built the castle from gold.
36. 町を歩いていると呼び止められた。
I was halted when I was walking through the town.
37. 先生に叱られて泣いている。
He is crying because he was scolded by his teacher.
38. 私は先生に褒ほめられました。
I was praised by my teacher.
39. 何の料金は含まれていますか。
What fines are included?
40. 悪口を言われてもへこたれんな！ (Slang)
Don't be discouraged even if you're bombarded by slurs!
41. 今でも、この習慣はまだ行われています。
Even now this custom is still carried out.
42. これは何に使われるのですか。
What is this used for?
43. 犬が鎖くさりで繋つながれている。
The dog is chained up.
44. 洞爺湖とうやこサミットは抗議とともに行われた。
The G8 Summit in Toyako (Hokkaido) started out with protests.
45. 彼の理論はでたらめな調査に基もとづいて立てられている。
His theory is based on haphazard inquiry.
46. 笑顔えがおに釣つられて微笑ほほえむ。
To grin from looking at a smiley face.
47. 大名に召めし抱かかえられる。
To be employed as a retainer by a daimyo.

48. 彼女は男に恋こい焦こがれられる女だね。

She's certainly a woman deeply loved by men, isn't she?

WARNING Note: 焦がれる (To yearn for) is not in the passive form. Its passive would be 焦がれられる. The verb 焦がれる can also be used as a supplementary verb in expressions such as 思い焦がれる (to pine for) and 恋(い) 焦がれる (to be deeply in love with). So, be careful with these phrases as well.

とされる

とされる shows that an idea is held by people in general.

49. 一般いっぽんに成功は難しいとされる。

It is believed that success is generally difficult.

Word Note: There are some words that are not verbal expressions but are passive in nature. One such phrase is と思おぼしい, which is equivalent to と思われる.

Grammar Note: The copula is not used with the passive voice.

Contraction Note: For passive meanings in the negative, you could see ～らない.

The Potential

The potential and passive verbs go hand in hand. The difference lies in context and particle usage. Even earlier forms of these endings had the same functions. However, the use of ～れる for the potential has rapidly fallen in recent times, though it is still seen in many set phrases and old-fashioned speech.

50. 越すに越されぬ大井川

The Ooi River that one just can't cross

51a. 見捨てておかれようか。

51b. 見捨てておけるだろうか。(More Modern)

Can you leave and forsake it?

52. 鬼が怖くて行かれない。

The oni is scared and can't move.

第116課: The Passive II: 不可抗力の受身

Throughout the site, extremely complicated names for things are avoided. However, in this discussion, it is important to bring up proper terminology as common names for what is to be discussed cause the confusion.

The use of "passive" endings on intransitive verbs puzzled Western scholars from the very beginning. Common names for this have been 迷惑の受身 (trouble passive), 被害の受身 (painful passive), and 間接受身 (indirect passive). Though these definitions are right within specific examples, they not only fail at explaining all instances of this passive sentence type, nor does it address the fact that it is not exclusive to intransitives. The passive sentences we will see all have one thing in common. What might that be? Find out next!

不可抗力性

Calling the 受身文 below "indirect" is very tempting, especially when you see examples like Ex. 1, but this does us little good. "Indirect" passive, grammatically speaking, means that the agent, which is marked by に, is not directly affecting the subject of the passive sentence. This is very vague, and the relation of "influence" between the doer and the person affected could vary greatly from sentence to sentence.

1. 畠中さんは大統領に才能を買われました。

Hatanaka-san's abilities were appreciated by the president.

This sentence, though, doesn't describe a bad thing. Yet, the overall grammar has been called the "painful passive." For one, there are very few verbs, much less intransitive verbs, referring to painful things. Some of the most painful verbs are transitive like 殺す. That's not to say this pattern never describes 被害.

2. 私は愛犬に死なれて悲嘆に暮れた。

My beloved dog died, and I suffered from heartache.

Because many examples describe 迷惑, some people are fine with calling any usage some sort of 迷惑 even if it's a stretch, but does this really create a good analysis? We also haven't even touched on why を can show up. From an English point of view, the use of intransitives is already bizarre.

3. 私たちは雨に降られた。

We were rained on.

4. 弟は地下鉄の中で中年の女性に足を踏ふまれた。

My little brother got his foot stepped on by some middle aged woman on the subway.

What if we were to say that what is really at work is the existence of a sense of inevitability or something being irresistible which does not exist in a typical passive like in Ex. 5

5. カエルがワニに食われた

The/a frog was eaten by the alligator.

The frog just happened to get eaten by the alligator. In Ex. 4, your brother being stepped on by the woman was inevitable and something he couldn't have avoided. The frog, again, just got straight up eaten in the jaws of a beast. With this grammar, the agent does some action which is stated in full, which is why you can see を. Depending on what this is, you are unable resist being put in a situation, and you let into it. Sometimes it's a good thing, but it is very frequently a bad thing.

More Examples

6. またあいつに家に来られたようさ。(東京弁)

It seems that guy came to my house again. (You don't like it)

7. 両親に死なれた。(Will be rude and inappropriate)

Literally: I was died on by my parents.

My parents died on me.

8. 雨に降られて、びしょ濡ぬれになった。

I was rained on and became soaking wet.

9. 妹に先に卒業された。

My younger sister graduated before me (and I was really embarrassed).

10. 私は犬に手を噛かまれました。

I (had/got) my hand bitten by a dog.

11. 私が河田に水藤へ藤原を紹介された。

Kawada introducing Fujiwara to Suito was inconvenient to me.

12. 先に子供に死なれたら、どうなるんだろう。

What would happen if my child/the child were to die first?

第117課: ニ格 VS カラ格

格 refers to grammatical case. Case marking is used to state the role of individual phrases (arguments) in the sentence. Many different particles overlap each other, and に and から are no different. In this lesson, we'll learn when they are interchangeable with each other and how they differ in those situations.

に VS から

There are three kinds of expressions in which we find に and から interchangeable.

1. ~てもらう

2. Passive phrases

3. 借りる, もらう, 教える, 聞く, etc.

Differentiating between に and から can be done several ways, but it's best to keep all factors in mind.

Starting Point

The first thing to consider is whether the agent (doer) of the action is the same thing as the starting point of a transfer of some kind. For physical borrowing or exchange of something via favor, that makes sense because the giver is where the transaction begins.

1. 友里はセス {に・から} 英語を教えてもらった。
Yuri had Seth teach her English.

2. 智哉がセス {に・から} 科学の教科書を借りた。
Tomoya borrowed a/the science textbook from Seth.

In these sentences, we can see how the agent of the action is the same as the starting point of a transfer. In Ex. 1, the person giving knowledge of English is Seth, and the receiver is Yuri. In Example 2, Seth is the one actually giving the book and Tomoya is the end point of the physical transfer. Not all "transfers" are physical, however.

3. 百華は上司から褒められたよ。
Momoka was praised by her boss.

Only に

Let's assume, then, that the actual motivation for when you can use both has to deal with the kind of recipient. The agent would still be the person doing the action and then we would have direct and indirect recipients possible. We see that if there is only an indirect recipient in the sentence, から cannot be used.

4. 秀晃は光太郎 {に ○・から X} パーティーに来てもらった。
Hidemitsu had Kotaro come to the party.

5. 有紀子は時計屋 {に ○・から X} 時計を直してもらった。
Yukiko had a watch fixed by a watch shop.

Furthermore, if there is only a direct recipient, に can only be used if that recipient has a change in its condition. The recipient in this case also happens to be the subject.

6. 私はきのう、医者 {に ○・から X} 診てもらった。
I had the doctor see me yesterday.

7. 私は去年、愛犬 {に ○・から X} 死なれました。
Literally: I was died on by my beloved dog last year.

When Interchangeable

When the subject is receiving a direct effect from an agent but no condition change occurs, both particles may be used.

8. 私は親切な人 {に・から} 席を譲ってもらいました。

I got a nice person to lend me his/her seat/I had a seat given to me from a nice person.

9. 喜久子は潤子 {に・から} お金を出してもらった。

Kikuko had Junko give her money/Kikuko had money given to her by Junko.

So long as the direct recipient doesn't undergo a state change, there could be an indirect recipient in the sentence. Another dynamic that makes から more likely is if the agent and the direct recipient are both marked by に, then から would appear more frequently to prevent the doubling of the same particle. This does not mean not doing so is grammatically incorrect.

10. 藤川さんは担任教師 {に・から} 息子を叱ってもらった。

Fujikawa had his son scolded by the homeroom teacher.

11. 悠子は級友 {から・に} 代表に選ばれました。

Yuuko was elected as representative by her classmates.

12. リーさんは友達 {に・から} 笑われた。

Lee-san was laughed at by his friend(s).

13. 謙太は俊太郎 {から・に} 小田原先生にそのメッセージを伝えてもらった。

Kenta had the message sent to Odawara-Sensei by Shuntaro.

Only から?

If there are situations when you can only use に, there must also be situations when you can only use から. An agent of a transfer can always be marked with に. If no agent is even used at all, then に would not be possible.

14. セスは図書館から本を借りてもらった。

Seth had a book borrowed for him from the library.

The only known giving-receiving verb pair that does not take に is 預かる. In this case, you must use から. However, this appears to be the only case in which から must be used.

15. 有希から荷物を預かった。

My luggage was entrusted with Yuki.

If we look at the meaning of this verb pair more closely, we see that the action is only a one-way deal. In other words, when you are entrusted with something, you don't have any way of definitively making that be the case (for the sake of the use of these words). In a few of the sentences earlier, we

saw how this sort of nuance splitting could be done with に vs. から (though for many utterances no difference is typically felt when interchangeable).

Putting Verb and Particle Meaning Together

Nevertheless, it is certain that から is the only particle that can imply receiving something or an action without personal want. With this in mind, the meanings of these verbs involving giving and receiving combined with what you know about these particles now determine which one you use.

16. 誰から聞いたの?
Who did you hear that from?
17. 誰に聞いたの?
Who did you ask?
18. 智哉はセス {に ○ ・ から X} 古典の辞書を貸した。
Tomoya lent Seth a classics' dictionary.
19. 花束が先生に贈られました。
A bouquet was presented to the teacher.
20. 先生からプレゼントを贈っていただきました。
I received a present from the teacher.
21. そのメダルは藤原から杉村に贈られました。
The medal was presented to Sugimura by Fujiwara.
22. セスは智哉 {に ○ ・ から X} 古典の辞書を借りた。
Seth borrowed a classics' dictionary from Tomoya.

Particle Note: For physical borrowing, we don't see much nuance splitting at all, and it is not possible to say that speaker want is not present in borrowing when you use から. So the pairing of it and 借りる essentially overrides から's possible role of inferring non-volitional receiving. It is important to note, over all, though, that when both particles are possible, に is typically the most common.

参照: <http://ir.nul.nagoya-u.ac.jp/jspui/bitstream/2237/5645/1/BZ001907107.pdf>

第118課: The Causative I: ～させる & ～せる

The auxiliary verbs ～させる and ～せる are primarily used to create the **使役形 (causative form)**, which equates to "**to make/let X do Y**". Before we look at what "causation" means and the grammatical restrictions, know that 作る is **not** used to make the causative form because it means "to make". 作る is used in the physical sense. Furthermore, 作る is a verb, not an auxiliary

verb. Knowing that Japanese uses auxiliaries to make forms such as this, you would not be tempted to make a mistake like 1a.

1a. 怒る作る X

1b. 怒らせる ○

To make angry

Again, the **causative** make is "to make X do Y". Do not confuse the causative with the similar pattern XをYにする, which is used to show that one "makes/has a thing (X) be a certain way (Y)". If you were to couple this with XがYになる, you should be able to avoid confusion. Consider Exs. 2~4 which differentiates these three patterns.

2. 音楽が小さくなった。

The music('s volume) got smaller/quieter.

3. 音楽を小さくした。

(I) turned down the music.

4. 彼に音楽を小さくさせた。

I made him turn down the music.

The Auxiliaries ~させる & ~せる: 使役形

The 使役形 is used with both transitive and intransitive verbs, but the grammar is a little different. These endings attach to the 未然形 and conjugate as 一段 verbs. In **contracted speech** ~させる and ~せる become ~さす and ~す respectively, which are conjugated as 五段 verbs.

Chart Note: In the chart below, class refer to the class of the verb being used as the example.

Class	Auxiliary	Example	Auxiliary	Example
一段	~させる	食べさせる	~さす	食べさす
五段	~せる	行かせる	~す	行かす
する	~せる	させる	~す	さす (X/△)
来る	~させる	来させる	~さす	来さす (X/△)

Grammar Notes:

1. The copula is not used in the causative form and should be replaced with ~にさせる.

Ex. バカ {だ・である} → バカにさせる (to make...out to be stupid).

2. さす is rather uncommon by itself, but when used in conjugations it may be seen. For instance, 勉強さした (made...study). This, however, just like 来さす are **dialectical** at best and are not correct in Standard Japanese.

3. To make an **adjectival causative expression**, add させる after the く-連用形 of 形容詞 and after the に-連用形 of the copula for 形容動詞.

Conjugation Chart

Class	Verb	動詞・形容詞	使役形	Neg	Past	Short使役形	Neg	Past
一段	To see	見る	見させる	見させない	見させた	見さす (X/△)	X	見さした
一段	To endure	耐える	耐えさせる	耐えさせない	耐えさせた	耐えさす (X/△)	X	耐えさした
五段	To say	言う	言わせる	言わせない	言わせた	言わす	X	言わした
五段	To strike/beat	叩く	叩かせる	叩かせない	叩かせた	叩かす	X	叩かした
五段	To clamor	騒ぐ	騒がせる	騒がせない	騒がせた	騒がす	X	騒がした
五段	To knock down	倒す	倒させる	倒させない	倒させた	倒さす	X	倒さした
五段	To share/divide	分かつ	分かたせる	分かたせない	分かたせた	分かたす	X	分かたした
五段	To die	死ぬ	死なせる	死なせない	死なせた	死なす	X	死なした
五段	To be delighted	喜ぶ	喜ばせる	喜ばせない	喜ばせた	喜ばす	X	喜ばした
五段	To smile	微笑む	微笑ませる	微笑ませない	微笑ませた	微笑ます	X	微笑ました
五段	To rub	擦る	擦らせる	擦らせない	擦らせた	擦らす	X	擦らした
形容詞	New	新しい	新しくさせる	新しくさせない	新しくさせた	X	X	X/△
形容動詞	Easy	簡単だ	簡単にさせる	簡単にさせない	簡単にさせた	X	X	X/△

使役形

With Transitive Verbs

If the original verb is **transitive**, the direct object is marked with を if there is one mentioned. Remember, though, that if there is a transitive verb in a sentence or clause, a direct object must be implied. Japanese just doesn't require one to be used explicitly if it is information recoverable in context. The subject of the action, in other words, the person/performer being made to do something, is **marked by** に.

5. 弟にゴミを出させる。

I make my younger brother take out the trash.

6. 太郎くんのカメを殺させる。

To make Taro-kun kill a turtle.

7. 母は弟に犬にエサをやらせた。

My mom made my little brother feed the dog.

Sentence Note: The first に marks the brother as the person being made to do the action and the second に marks the dog as the recipient of the food.

With Intransitive Verbs

If the original verb is **intransitive**, を **and** に may seem to be interchangeable to mark the person being made to do something (被使役者) . Most resources have failed in addressing the issue that adequately matches the actual decision between these two by regular native speakers. What is certain, though, is that the deciding factor for using them is determined by semantics.

As for the particle を, it may imply a *compelling force*. It may also be accidental/overbearing in nature. However, as you will see though, there is speaker variation in this interpretation. It is chosen, however, with 非情物 (things lacking emotion=inanimate objects) subjects and with emotion phrases.

8. 友達を怒らせる。

To anger a friend.

9. 風が木を揺らせていた。

The wind shook the tree(s).

10. ネズミを死なせる。

To make the rat die.

Sentence Note: This last sentence fits in this description as bringing about an effect such as making something die is a means of a compelling force. If we think of animal abuse, using 死なせる in the case of accusing the owner of causing the pet's death would be completely logical.

を would be expected in situations in which the direct object is something that could never have any will to act on its own (Ex. 11).

11. 心を乱れさせる。

To upset someone's feelings.

に shows self-discipline and recognition of the will of the person being made to do something, which is why it goes with the "let" definition. Movement verbs are great examples of this. Nevertheless, natives don't actually consciously differentiate between let and make. So, in reality, what this

means is that に can give the interpretation of "let", but in context, the speaker could still just mean "make". In fact, as the next example shows, even when a modal like ～てあげる is added, many speakers would still choose を to mark the 被使役者.

12. 父親は子ども {を・に} プールで泳がせてあげました。
The father let his child swim in the pool.

13. 今回は山本に行かせましょうか。
Next time, let's have Yamamoto go.

Sentence Note: It's unlikely that Ex. 13 implies the speaker(s) are thinking of Yamamoto's intents, but as the English translation suggests, it's possible to be vague on this matter.

14. 子どもをベンチに座らせる。
To make the/a child(ren) sit on the bench.

15a. 子どもを座らせる。

15b. 子どもに座らせる。 (△)
To make the/a child(ren) sit.

Sentence Note: Most speakers would say 15a is more assertive, and some speakers would think 15b is wrong. There is also natural ambiguity in the exact interpretation of 15a and 15b. 15a may sound like a command or as if a parent is physically forcing the child to sit. 15b may sound like someone is having something sit in the kid's lap.

16. 先生は吉田さん {を・に} そこへ座らせました。
The teacher made/let Mr. Yoshida sit there.

17. 犬に公園を散歩させます。
I let my dog walk in the park.

As far as realistic usage of Japanese, a large motivation of which particle to use has to deal with not using the same one twice in a clause for the same purpose. Japanese has no problems using the same particle twice if it's for something different like we saw in Ex. 7, but it does not tolerate the doubling of the same thing for the same purpose.

18. 子供 {を・ (△・X) に} おつかいに行かせる。
To make/let a kid go do an errand.

Sentence Note: Despite the grammatical correctness of this sentence, some speakers would say that Ex. 18 is wrong due to the doubling of に.

19. 親は子供 {を・ (△・X) に} 買い物に行かせた。
The parent made/had his/her child(ren) go shopping.

20. ワンちゃんに道の内側を歩かせる。
To make the dog walk inside the road.

Sentence Note: Though the particle を is not used in this sentence to mark a direct object, the particle に is used to mark the 被使役者 is used first and foremost to avoid from using を twice. Unlike the particle に, native speakers are not aware of there being different usages of を.

The particle に is also used with verbs that are actions regarding people such as 答える, しゃべる, etc.

21. 先生は、学生に質問に答えさせる。

The teacher made/had his/her students answer (to) the questions.

Sentence Note: The status of に as a must with 答える is the same as with 行く. Yet, some speakers would still try to replace at least one of the に with を. Grammatically speaking, the first would be the best to change, but in reality, some speakers would say ～を答えさせる.

Particle Note: Overall, native speakers use を considerably more often even when either particle is possible. When a place is added into the sentence marked with に, the number of people who would chose を to mark the 被使役者 drastically goes up. In the end, as we've seen, there is certainly individual differences in exact usage of these particles in this situation. So, if you get corrected harshly, do not be discouraged. It's easiest to say that in the case for intransitive verbs, you may mark a 被使役者 with either を or に, but it is most important to most speakers to avoid the doubling of either one of them.

More Examples

22. 先生は学生を帰らせました。

The teacher sent his/her students home.

23. 毎朝犬を散歩させます。

I walk the dog every morning.

24. 妹を大阪に来させる。

I'll make/have my younger sister come to Osaka.

25. 公園に犬を散歩させます。

I walk the dog in the park.

26. 気分が悪そうなので生徒 {を・に} 先に帰らせた。

Since the student seemed to feel bad, I had/let him/her go home earlier.

27a. 人に立たせる。？

27b. 人を立たせる

To make a person stand.

Sentence Note: 27a sounds like you're making someone stand something up. So, you should use 27b.

Had Someone Do

When you say you **had someone do something for you**, instead of using the causative, you use ～てもらう・～ていただく. With expressions concerning emotions, those things are not in your control to cause. So, using them with the causative is fine. So, you can say something like 母を心配させた. This is because the causative does not have to be intentional. ～てもらう・～ていただく always are.

28. 先生に推薦状すいせんじょうを書いていただきました。(You didn't make the teacher do it.)

I had my teacher write me a letter of recommendation.

29. 先生に推薦状を書かせました。(Not for your benefit at all)

I made the teacher write a letter of recommendation.

Also note that the use of に is different. In the first sentence it shows from whom you received the action. In the second sentence it marks who was forced to do the action.

More Examples

30. 笑わせないでください。

Please don't make me laugh.

31. 頭をすっきりさせる。

To clear the head.

32. 人を酔よわせる。

To intoxicate a person.

33. 方言は日本語をより美しくて、素晴らしい言語として成り立たせていると思います。

I think that dialects makes Japanese a more beautiful and wonderful language.

34. 母が妹に掃除そうじさせたのにがらがらと笑ったんだ。

I laughed so hard about my mom making my younger sister wash the dishes.

35. でも、父が僕に空手を習わせたのはいやだったよ。

But, I hated that my dad made me take karate.

36. 僕にもやらせてもらえない(か)。(Casual)

Could you let me play it?

37. 彼をあっと言わせたい。

I want to surprise him.

38. あたしを悲しくさせないで。(Feminine)

Don't make me sad.

39. 森林を焼けさせる。

To have the forests burn.

40. 祖母を休ませました。

We made our grandmother take a rest.

41. 風邪かぜを拗こじらせて、寝込む。

To complicate a cold and stay in bed (because of it).

Word Note: 拗らせる shouldn't be used in its basic form. Use the intransitive 拗れる in that case.

42. 弟は野菜が嫌きらいだが、母は弟に毎日野菜を食べさせるつもりだ。

My younger brother hates vegetables, but my mother plans to make him eat them every day.

43. 今働き始めたら、それだけ早く済ませるだろう。

If we were to start working now, the quicker we would probably finish.

44. 何と言っても金が世よの中を動かすのさ。

No matter what, money makes the world go round.

45. 演出家えんしゅつかは助言じょげんを与あたえるため度々たびたびリハーサルを中断ちゅうだんさせた。

The producer interrupted rehearsals frequently in order to give advice.

46.

A. あなたが、日本語の先生だったら、学生に何をさせますか。

B. 日本語の先生だったら、学生に {日本語の本・和書} を読むようにさせるでしょう。

A. If you were a Japanese teacher, what would you make your students do?

B. If I were a Japanese teacher, I'd make my students try to read Japanese words.

47.

A. あなたが、社長になったら、秘書に何をさせますか。

B. 週ごとに報告書を書かせるでしょう。

A. If you were a company president, what would you make your secretary do?

B. I would make (the secretary) write a report a week.

48.

A. 頭のいいロボットがいたら、何をさせますか。

B. 掃除をさせるでしょう。

A. If you had a smart robot, what would you make it do?

B. I'd make it do my laundry.

49.

- A. 親になったら、子供に何をさせてあげますか。
B. 日本語と韓国語かんこくごを習わせてあげるでしょう。
A. When you become a parent, what would you have your children do?
B. I would have (them) study Japanese and Korean.

50.

- A. 結婚したら、相手に何をさせてあげますか。
B. ハワイに旅行させてあげるでしょう。
A. When you're married, what would you have your partner do?
B. I'd take him/her on a trip to Hawaii.

Unconcern or Let

"Making" someone do something and "letting" someone do something are very similar. In Japanese, context largely plays a role in determining whether ～させる and ～せる actually stand for either or because in both cases someone is causing something/someone else to do something. Contexts for when "let" is the natural interpretation include "neglect" or "unintentional" circumstances.

51. 昼に全生徒を帰らせました。
I let all of my students go home at noon.
52. お風呂ふろの水を溢あふれさせてしまったの！ (Old person)
I accidentally let the water in the tub overflow!
53. 育て方を間違えて子供をいじけさせるのは親の最悪の悪夢だ。
Incorrectly raising up one's child and having that child grow perverse is a parent's worst nightmare.
54. ちょっと考えさせてください。
Please let me think about it.
55. 車を使わせてください。
Please let me use your car.

When paired with ～てもらう・ていただく, the speaker humbly takes permission to do something. Rather than simply saying "I will do something", you are saying that you are taking it upon yourself, but you are aware of the person/people responsible for allowing you to even do it in the first place. This is why ～させていただきます is becoming ever more common in honorifics.

56. 会議を始めさせていただきます。(謙譲語)
Allow me to start this meeting.

When the causative form is paired with ～てあげる・やる, ～てくれる, ～てもらう, the sense of permission becomes clear and distinguishable from the "make" definition.

57. 先生は学生 {を・に} トイレに行かせてあげた。
The teacher let the student go to the restroom.

58. 父は僕に車を運転させてくれた。
My dad let me drive the car.

59.

- A. 子供の時、皆の両親は、何をさせてくれませんでしたか。
B. 子供の時、一人で遊ばせてくれませんでした。
A. As a child, what did everyone's parents not let them do?
B. When I was a child, I wasn't allowed to play alone.

60.

- A. 高校の時、皆の両親は、何をさせてくれませんでしたか。
B. {酒・アルコール} を飲ませてくれませんでした。
A In high school, what did everyone's parents not let them do?
B. They wouldn't let me drink.

第119課: Causative-Passive

Adding the causative and passive forms together creates the 使役受け身形. As the name suggests, the ordering of the endings is causative then passive. Because there is a short causative form, there is a short causative-passive form. So, we will need to look into detail on that. Also, because the causative can either be interpreted as make and let depending on context (remember that natives often do not sense a difference between the two concepts), the causative-passive reflects this as well.

Causative-Passive

The 受身形 (passive form) and the 使役形 may be put together by combining ~させる・せる and ~られる together.

Class	Verb	動詞	使役受身形
一段	To wear	着る	着させられる
一段	To close	閉める	閉めさせられる
五段	To eat (俗語)	食う	食わせられる
五段	To scratch	掻く	掻かせられる
五段	To sniff	嗅ぐ	嗅がせられる
五段	To pierce/sting	刺す	刺させられる
五段	To shoot	撃つ	撃たせられる
五段	To die	死ぬ	死なせられる
五段	To jump	跳ぶ	跳ばせられる
五段	To carve	刻む	刻ませられる
五段	To print	刷る	刷らせられる

To begin our grammar analysis, let's consider the particle differences to expect between the passive, causative, and causative-passive conjugations.

Take note of the first three very similar example sentences demonstrating this point.

The particle に marks the forcer and the person made to do the action is simply the subject of the sentence. Notice the differences in translation and particle usages in the following.

1. 先生に発音を直された。(Passive)

My pronunciation got corrected by the teacher.

Sentence Note: 先生 is the doer of the correction; the pronunciation is the direct object of what was corrected.

2. 人にほかの人の発音を直させる。(Causative)

To make a person correct someone else's pronunciation.

Sentence Note: 人 is the person being made; you are the person making the person do so.

3. 先生にほかの学生の発音を直させられた。(Causative-passive)

I was made to correct the pronunciation of the other students by the teacher.

Sentence Note: The teacher is who forced you to correct the pronunciation of the other students.

Contracting the Causative-Passive Form

Remember the short causative endings ～さす and ～す? For the latter, you can add the ending ～れる to create the short causative-passive. Because these endings are using the 未然形, some students mistakenly think that ～される is somehow the ending, which is not the case. However, using the legitimate short causative-passive form when you should be using the passive form because of confusing this as a longer passive form is most certainly incorrect.

As we know, ～す only attaches to 五段 verbs. The short causative-passive form has another restriction. When a verb ending in す takes ～す, you use the 未然形 さ. Because ～す will also be in its 未然形 さ to take ～れる, two さ would be next to each other. So, you cannot say things like 話さされる. Therefore, only 五段 verbs not ending in す can have a short causative-passive form. The chart below illustrates the causative, short causative, causative-passive, and short causative-passive forms for all kinds of verbs.

活用	動詞	使役形	使役縮約形	使役受身形	使役受身縮約形
五段カ行	描く	描かせる	描かす	描かせられる	描かされる
五段ガ行	泳ぐ	泳がせる	泳がす	泳がせられる	泳がされる
五段タ行	待つ	待たせる	待たす	待たせられる	待たされる
五段ナ行	死ぬ	死なせる	死なす	死なせられる	死なされる △
五段バ行	遊ぶ	遊ばせる	遊ばす	遊ばせられる	遊ばされる

五段マ行	読む	読ませる	読ます	読ませられる	読まされる
五段ウ行	帰る	帰らせる	帰らす	帰らせられる	帰らされる
上一段	見る	見させる	見さす (△)	見させられる	見さされる X
下一段	食べる	食べさせる	食べさす (△)	食べさせられる	食べさされる X
サ変	する	させる	さす (△)	させられる	さされる X
カ変	来る	来させる	来さす (△)	来させられる	来さされる X
五段サ行	話す	話させる	話さす	話せられる	話さされる X

The final three short causative-passives being wrong is not surprising. After all, two さ is unnatural and is resultant of using this shortcut with the wrong kind of verb. Surprisingly, though, one combination was given a △. This means that 死なされる is not common Japanese and is usually avoided. For instance, say you have 本人の意思で医者の手により死なされた. This is odd considering the antonym 生かされる exists. This is because rephrasing with 死なせる is more common/natural. Thus, 死なされる isn't grammatically faulty but hardly ever used and thus usually unnatural.

～す should only be used with 五段 verbs. However, you often hear things like 食べさして, although this sort of speech sounds dialectical. You could view this as a corruption of 食べさせて or a use of the short ～す in the て形. Thus, △ should actually be X in terms of 標準語.

Examples

- 兄が母に部屋を掃除させられました。
My brother was made by his mother to clean the room.
- 学生は先生に漢字を練習させられる。
The students are made to practice Kanji by the teacher.
- 兄にクッキーをすべて食べさせられた。
I was made to eat all of the cookies by my big brother.
- ガールフレンドに待たされた。
I was made to wait by my girlfriend.
- 奴隷どれいは毎日ただで働かせられていたということです。
The slaves were made to work for no pay every day.
- 僕は子供の時、母親にニンジンを食べさせられなかったから、今でも大嫌いだよ。
Since I wasn't forced to eat carrots by my mom when I was a kid, I still hate them.
- 熱に浮かされる。(Idiomatic)
To be in a craze.
- 彼は学校をやめさせられた。
He was expelled from school.

X makes Y get...by Z

In English, we can say the following sentences.

- The apple was eaten by the student. (Passive)
- The teacher made the student eat the apple. (Causative)
- The student was made to eat the apple by the teacher. (Passive-causative)
- The teacher made the apple get eaten by the student. (Causative-Passive)

In Japanese, there is a fixed ordering of causative and passive. They go in that order, which is why we have *させられる* and not *られさせる*. How, then, can we have Japanese mimic the final possibility? The labels are for English, not Japanese. So, although we can easily translate the third sentence by keeping the word order as is minus "was made" being flipped, the fourth is exceptionally difficult.

The first worry we have is if we try to translate 4 directly, we'll get a literally translated expression that sounds foreign. This means unnatural speech, which is not what we want. The following two sentences would be the options a native speaker would suggest for 4. Contextual details are meant to make up for any lack of meaning in 4.

12. 学生は先生にリンゴを食べさせられた。◎

13. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べさせた。◎

It appears already that a direct reflection of 4 is impossible. Consider, though, the following which relies on introducing a different word to the equation: *仕向ける*.

14. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べさせるように仕向けた。○ But not ◎

15. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

16. 先生はリンゴが生徒に食べられるようにした。X

17. 先生は、リンゴが生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

～られるように仕向ける and *～させるように仕向ける* both exist, but the former is incorrect in this context as the speaker is not being affected. This is because there is will involved in making something be acted upon. Now, we'll see how *～させるように仕向ける* can go from ○ to △ because of what *仕向ける* means and not because of the existence of the phrase.

仕向ける is working up someone to doing something (tempting/inducing) and it's a lot more work than just a simple scene of a witch giving an apple, eat, and then done. Even if the witch was pushy at that moment, the work behind for *仕向ける* situations would be a mismatch. With this in mind, consider the following.

18. 魔女まじょは白雪しらゆき姫ひめに毒どくリンゴを食べさせるように仕向けた。
(ちょっと変)

19. 魔女は白雪姫が毒リンゴを食べるよう(に)仕向けた。

20. 魔女は白雪姫に毒リンゴを渡わたし、食べるように言った。(一番自然)

Japanese may not allow you to explicitly say what you can in English with "the teacher made the apple get eaten by a student", but you can supplement this semantic information with context. This is what we have to do when languages don't meet eye to eye.

Causative + Potential

It just so happens that ～られる also has the "potential" usage, meaning that what looks like the "causative-passive" may in fact be the "causative potential." Because the particles would differ, there usually isn't ever confusion as to what is meant. Note that the abbreviated causative cannot be used with this because す → せる would simply revert them back to the non-abbreviated causative form. However, both the short and long causative forms can be followed by ～ことができる.

21. 私は犬にえさを食べさせられますよ。
I can feed the dog.

第119課: Causative-Passive

Adding the causative and passive forms together creates the 使役受け身形. As the name suggests, the ordering of the endings is causative then passive. Because there is a short causative form, there is a short causative-passive form. So, we will need to look into detail on that. Also, because the causative can either be interpreted as make and let depending on context (remember that natives often do not sense a difference between the two concepts), the causative-passive reflects this as well.

Causative-Passive

The 受身形 (passive form) and the 使役形 may be put together by combining ～させる・せる and ～られる together.

Class	Verb	動詞	使役受身形
一段	To wear	着る	着させられる
一段	To close	閉める	閉めさせられる
五段	To eat (俗語)	食う	食わせられる
五段	To scratch	掻く	掻かせられる
五段	To sniff	嗅ぐ	嗅がせられる
五段	To pierce/sting	刺す	刺させられる
五段	To shoot	撃つ	撃たせられる
五段	To die	死ぬ	死なせられる

五段	To jump	跳ぶ	跳ばせられる
五段	To carve	刻む	刻ませられる
五段	To print	刷る	刷らせられる

To begin our grammar analysis, let's consider the particle differences to expect between the passive, causative, and causative-passive conjugations. Take note of the first three very similar example sentences demonstrating this point.

The particle に marks the forcer and the person made to do the action is simply the subject of the sentence. Notice the differences in translation and particle usages in the following.

1. 先生に発音を直された。(Passive)

My pronunciation got corrected by the teacher.

Sentence Note: 先生 is the doer of the correction; the pronunciation is the direct object of what was corrected.

2. 人にほかの人の発音を直させる。(Causative)

To make a person correct someone else's pronunciation.

Sentence Note: 人 is the person being made; you are the person making the person do so.

3. 先生にほかの学生の発音を直させられた。(Causative-passive)

I was made to correct the pronunciation of the other students by the teacher.

Sentence Note: The teacher is who forced you to correct the pronunciation of the other students.

Contracting the Causative-Passive Form

Remember the short causative endings ～さす and ～す? For the latter, you can add the ending ～れる to create the short causative-passive. Because these endings are using the 未然形, some students mistakenly think that ～される is somehow the ending, which is not the case. However, using the legitimate short causative-passive form when you should be using the passive form because of confusing this as a longer passive form is most certainly incorrect.

As we know, ～す only attaches to 五段 verbs. The short causative-passive form has another restriction. When a verb ending in す takes ～す, you use the 未然形 さ. Because ～す will also be in its 未然形 さ to take ～れる, two さ would be next to each other. So, you cannot say things like 話さされる. Therefore, only 五段 verbs not ending in す can have a short causative-passive form. The chart below illustrates the causative, short causative, causative-passive, and short causative-passive forms for all kinds of verbs.

活用	動詞	使役形	使役縮約形	使役受身形	使役受身縮約形
----	----	-----	-------	-------	---------

五段カ行	描く	描かせる	描かす	描かせられる	描かされる
五段ガ行	泳ぐ	泳がせる	泳がす	泳がせられる	泳がされる
五段タ行	待つ	待たせる	待たす	待たせられる	待たされる
五段ナ行	死ぬ	死なせる	死なす	死なせられる	死なされる △
五段バ行	遊ぶ	遊ばせる	遊ばす	遊ばせられる	遊ばされる
五段マ行	読む	読ませる	読ます	読ませられる	読まされる
五段ラ行	帰る	帰らせる	帰らす	帰らせられる	帰らされる
上一段	見る	見させる	見さす (△)	見させられる	見さされる X
下一段	食べる	食べさせる	食べさす (△)	食べさせられる	食べさされる X
サ変	する	させる	さす (△)	させられる	さされる X
カ変	来る	来させる	来さす (△)	来させられる	来さされる X
五段サ行	話す	話させる	話さす	話せられる	話さされる X

The final three short causative-passives being wrong is not surprising. After all, two さ is unnatural and is resultant of using this shortcut with the wrong kind of verb. Surprisingly, though, one combination was given a △. This means that 死なされる is not common Japanese and is usually avoided. For instance, say you have 本人の意思で医者の手により死なされた. This is odd considering the antonym 生かされる exists. This is because rephrasing with 死なせる is more common/natural. Thus, 死なされる isn't grammatically faulty but hardly ever used and thus usually unnatural.

～す should only be used with 五段 verbs. However, you often hear things like 食べさして, although this sort of speech sounds dialectical. You could view this as a corruption of 食べさせて or a use of the short ～す in the て形. Thus, △ should actually be X in terms of 標準語.

Examples

- 兄が母に部屋を掃除させられました。
My brother was made by his mother to clean the room.
- 学生は先生に漢字を練習させられる。
The students are made to practice Kanji by the teacher.
- 兄にクッキーをすべて食べさせられた。
I was made to eat all of the cookies by my big brother.
- ガールフレンドに待たされた。
I was made to wait by my girlfriend.
- 奴隷どれいは毎日ただで働かせられていたということです。
The slaves were made to work for no pay every day.
- 僕は子供の時、母親にニンジンを食べさせられなかったから、今でも大嫌いだよ。
Since I wasn't forced to eat carrots by my mom when I was a kid, I still hate them.

10. 熱に浮かされる。(Idiomatic)

To be in a craze.

11. 彼は学校をやめさせられた。

He was expelled from school.

X makes Y get...by Z

In English, we can say the following sentences.

- The apple was eaten by the student. (Passive)
- The teacher made the student eat the apple. (Causative)
- The student was made to eat the apple by the teacher. (Passive-causative)
- The teacher made the apple get eaten by the student. (Causative-Passive)

In Japanese, there is a fixed ordering of causative and passive. They go in that order, which is why we have *させられる* and not *られさせる*. How, then, can we have Japanese mimic the final possibility? The labels are for English, not Japanese. So, although we can easily translate the third sentence by keeping the word order as is minus "was made" being flipped, the fourth is exceptionally difficult.

The first worry we have is if we try to translate 4 directly, we'll get a literally translated expression that sounds foreign. This means unnatural speech, which is not what we want. The following two sentences would be the options a native speaker would suggest for 4. Contextual details are meant to make up for any lack of meaning in 4.

12. 学生は先生にリンゴを食べさせられた。◎

13. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べさせた。◎

It appears already that a direct reflection of 4 is impossible. Consider, though, the following which relies on introducing a different word to the equation: *仕向ける*.

14. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べさせるように仕向けた。○ But not ◎

15. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

16. 先生はリンゴが生徒に食べられるようにした。X

17. 先生は、リンゴが生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

～られるように仕向ける and ～させるように仕向ける both exist, but the former is incorrect in this context as the speaker is not being affected. This is because there is will involved in making something be acted upon. Now, we'll see how ～させるように仕向ける can go from ○ to △ because of what *仕向ける* means and not because of the existence of the phrase.

仕向ける is working up someone to doing something (tempting/inducing) and it's a lot more work than just a simple scene of a witch giving an apple, eat, and then done. Even if the witch was pushy at that moment, the work behind for 仕向ける situations would be a mismatch. With this in mind, consider the following.

18. 魔女まじょは白雪しらゆき姫ひめに毒どくリンゴを食べさせるように仕向けた。
(ちょっと変)

19. 魔女は白雪姫が毒リンゴを食べるよう (に) 仕向けた。

20. 魔女は白雪姫に毒リンゴを渡わかし、食べるように言った。(一番自然)

Japanese may not allow you to explicitly say what you can in English with "the teacher made the apple get eaten by a student", but you can supplement this semantic information with context. This is what we have to do when languages don't meet eye to eye.

Causative + Potential

It just so happens that ～られる also has the "potential" usage, meaning that what looks like the "causative-passive" may in fact be the "causative potential." Because the particles would differ, there usually isn't ever confusion as to what is meant. Note that the abbreviated causative cannot be used with this because す → せる would simply revert them back to the non-abbreviated causative form. However, both the short and long causative forms can be followed by ～ことができる.

21. 私は犬にえさを食べさせられますよ。
I can feed the dog.

第120課: The Volitional I

Volition is the speaker's will to do or not do something. In Japanese, there are both affirmative and negative volitional forms. For starters, we will learn about the endings used to create affirmative volitional statements.

Plain Speech Affirmative Volitional Endings: ～よう & ～う

As far as meaning is concerned, the affirmative volitional form either translates as "let's" or "I will." If the statement implies participation from others, then the former interpretation is intended. If the statement doesn't imply the participation of others, then the latter interpretation is intended.

Although verbs aren't the only things that have volitional forms, we will limit our discussion to verbal volitional phrases for now. In plain speech, there are two auxiliary verbs used to create the affirmative volitional form: ～よう & ～う. The only difference between ～よう and ～う is what class of verbs they're used with.

Conjugation Chart

/iru/-Ending <i>Ichidan</i> Verbs	見る + よう →	見よう	Let's/I'll see
/eru/-Ending <i>Ichidan</i> Verbs	食べる + よう →	食べよう	Let's/I'll eat
/u/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	買う + う →	買おう	Let's/I'll buy
/ku/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	書く + う →	書こう	Let's/I'll write
/gu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	泳ぐ + う →	泳ごう	Let's/I'll swim
/su/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	話す + う →	話そう	Let's/I'll talk
/tsu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	勝つ + う →	勝とう	Let's/I'll win
/nu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	死ぬ + う →	死のう	Let's/I shall die
/mu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	読む + う →	読もう	Let's/I'll read
/ru/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	図る + う →	図ろう	Let's/I'll devise
<i>Suru</i> Verbs	する + よう →	しよう	Let's/I'll do
<i>Kuru</i>	来る + よう →	来（こ）よう	Let's/I'll come

Translation Note: In English, it is not always the case that "I will" is the best phrasing to indicate personal volition to do something, especially since it also functions as the future tense auxiliary. Whenever this is the case, "shall" can be a better working translation of the affirmative volitional auxiliaries of Japanese.

Pronunciation Note: In casual speech, the final う at the end of these forms may be heard omitted.

One's Volition/Will

The main usage of these endings is to express one's volition/will to do something. This is referred to as the 意志形 in Japanese. This is either used in a sense of including those around you or simply used to solely indicate one's own intention.

1. 寿司を食べよう。
I'll eat sushi/Let's eat sushi.
2. これだけははっきりとさせておこう。
Let's get this (much) straight.
3. 少し休もうか。
How about taking a rest for a while?
4. もう間に合わないから、ゆっくりしよう。
It's not that we have to make it on time. So, let's go slowly.

Word Note: 間に合う should only be used with time.

5. さらに食べようっていうの？
You're going to eat on top of this?
6. 出かけよう{では・じゃ} ないか？
Why don't we go out?

Grammar Note: ～ようでは・じゃないか can also make a volitional question.

7. 中国語を勉強しようか。

How about I/we study Chinese?

8. 食事を済ませてから、外に出よう。

Let's go outside after we finish dinner.

9. この電車は込んでるから、次のに乗ろう。(Colloquial)

Since this train is crowded, let's get on the next one.

Determination/Volition of Others

～（よ）うと思います shows that oneself is *now* determined to do something. In contrast, ～（よ）うと思っています either shows that oneself has made the decision to do something some time ago or the volition of others.

10. 姉は中国で日本語を教えようと思っています。

My older sister is thinking about teaching Japanese in China.

11. ハワイに行こうと思います。

I think I'm going to Hawaii.

12. 奨学金しょうがく金をもらおうと考えています。

I'm considering receiving scholarship money.

13. 将来しょうらいは映画監督えいがかんとくになろうと思っている。

I'm thinking of becoming a movie director in the future.

Likelihood (Old-Fashioned Speech)

A meaning that has fallen out of use but is still seen in old-fashioned speech and literature is the ability to show likelihood. This has largely been replaced with のだろう, which combines だ and ～う, as we will see again later in this lesson. Though this meaning is largely defunct, it can be distinguished from the others by not just differences in tone but also by context. This meaning of the volitional endings involves statements about state, not an action in which the speaker has control over.

14a. 長時間歩いたのでお腹もすいていよう。(Old-fashioned)

14b. 長時間歩いたのでお腹もすいているのだろう。

You're also probably starving because you've been walking for so long.

15a. 彼らは指摘してきできよう。(Old-fashioned)

15b. 彼らは指摘できるのだろう。

They'll probably be able to point it out.

There are some grammatical instances where this meaning of the volitional endings lives on in modern language use. These instances include the patterns ～（よ）うはずがない and （よ）うものなら.

16. そんなことがあろうはずがない。
Such a thing should not happen.

17. 黙っていようものなら、自滅するぞ。
If you are to remain quiet, you will end yourself.

Rhetorical Questions

Another usage of these endings is making rhetorical questions when followed by the rhetorical question-marker か. In this situation, か has a sharp drop in pitch. This usage has largely been replaced by ～のだろうか, which incidentally also uses the auxiliary ～う.

18a. 許されようか。 (Old-fashioned)
18b. 許されるのだろうか。
Will [I/you/he/she/it] really be forgiven?

19a. 彼はそれができようか。 (Old-fashioned)
19b. 彼はそれができるのだろうか。
Can he really do that?

No Matter What

"...(よ)うが", "... (よ)うと", "... (よ)うとも", "(よ)うものなら", and "... (よ)うにも", show supposition and is equivalent to "しても". They are like "no matter what" or "even if".

20. 家出をしようにもお金がないよ。
Even if run away, you don't have any money.

21. 真実であろうが嘘であろうが、まだ関係はない。
Whether it's true or a lie, I still have no part in it.

22. 行こうと行くまいと僕の勝ちだ。
Even if you go or don't go, it's my victory.

23. どんなに反対されようが、消費税の引き上げが施行される。
No matter how much it's protested against, the consumer tax hike will be enforced.

24. どんな苦しみを味わおうが、自分が決めたことは変えたくない。
No matter the suffering I suffer, I won't want to change what I've decided.

25. どれだけお金を損しようが、賭博し続けるよ。

No matter how much money I lose, I'll continue to gamble.

26. 何をしようと私の知ったことではありません。

Whatever you do, it's nothing that I know.

27. たとえ雨が降ろうともフットボールをする。

I play football even if it rains.

28. どれだけ時間がかか {ろうとも・っても}、彼らを支持します。

I will support them no matter how long it takes.

29. 先生に厚あつかましくも口答くちごたえをしようものなら、大目玉おおめだまを食くらうでしょう。

Should you ever have the nerve to talk back to the teacher, you'll surely get scolded severely.

30. 火事になろうものなら、大変だぞ。

It would be grave should there be a fire.

Just About To...

～（よ）うとしたら is when "just as one is about to do X, Y happens". Y is out of your control, and often includes speech modals like ～てしまった and ～きた。

31. 電車に乗ろうとしたら、ドアが閉まってしまいました。

I was about to get on the train when the door (regrettably/accidentally) closed.

32. アイスcreamを買って、歩きながら食べようとしたら、「みっともないですよ」っておこられちゃったし。

When I tried to eat the ice cream I bought while walked, I was scolded and told that it was "indecent".

33. 喫茶店へ行こうとしたら、雨が降って来た。

Just as I was about to go to the coffee shop, it started to rain.

34. 出かけようとしたら、電話がかかって来た。

Just as I was going to leave, a phone call came.

Polite Speech Affirmative Volitional Ending: ～ましょう

The polite speech equivalent of both ～よう and ～う is ～ましょう。

Conjugating with this is the same as with ～ます。In fact, this is just a combination of ～ます + ～う! Meaning-wise, it is not used in all sorts of grammar patterns like its plain speech counterparts. Instead, it is limited to showing "let's" or "I will/shall." Very rarely is it used to show likelihood, in which case it behaves just like its plain speech counterparts.

Conjugation Chart

/iru/-Ending <i>Ichidan</i> Verbs	見る + ましょう →	見ましょう	Let's/I'll see
/eru/-Ending <i>Ichidan</i> Verbs	食べる + ましょう →	食べましょう	Let's/I'll eat
/u/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	買う + ましょう →	買いましょう	Let's/I'll buy
/ku/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	書く + ましょう →	書きましょう	Let's/I'll write
/gu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	泳ぐ + ましょう →	泳ぎましょう	Let's/I'll swim
/su/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	話す + ましょう →	話しましょう	Let's/I'll talk
/tsu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	勝つ + ましょう →	勝ちましょう	Let's/I'll win
/nu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	死ぬ + ましょう →	死にましょう	Let's/I shall die
/mu/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	読む + ましょう →	読みましょう	Let's/I'll read
/ru/-Ending <i>Godan</i> Verbs	図る + ましょう →	図りましょう	Let's/I'll devise
<i>Suru</i> Verbs	する + ましょう →	しましょう	Let's/I'll do
<i>Kuru</i>	来る + ましょう →	来(き)ましょ う	Let's/I'll come

Pronunciation Note: Though less polite, the final う in these forms can be heard omitted. It is also possible to hear the しょ pronounced as ひょ in certain dialects, especially traditional Kyoto Dialect speech.

Examples

35. 価格を下げることで売り上げが伸びるように定価から2千円を割り引きしましょう。

In lowering prices in order to boost sales, let's knock off 2000 yen from the price.

36. 乾杯かんぱいしましょう。

Cheers!

37. 私から電話しましょうか。

Shall I call?

Particle Note: This usage of から may be replaced with が.

38. 一緒に外食しましょう。

Let's go out to eat together.

39. 早速出かけましょう！

Let's head out at once!

40. 世よにある限かぎり最善さいぜんを尽つくしましょう。

Let's do our best to live in this world as much as possible.

Phrase Note: 世にある means "to live in this world".

～だろう

～だろう comes from the volitional form of だ. It is often shortened to ～だろ. ～だろう is often not used by females due to the brisk tone it often gives.

1. Used to show guess. It may follow nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

41. 明日は雨が降るだろう。

It will probably rain tomorrow.

42. 結局けっきょくは悪化あつかするだろう。

It will surely get worse.

43. 出席者は高々たかだか10人だろう。

There will be no more than ten attendees.

44. あの様子ようすからして離婚は間近まちかだろう。

Based on that condition, divorce is surely close.

45. 迷惑めいわくだろう。

It's probably a bother.

2. ～だろうか may be used to express personal doubt, especially in one's inner monologue. This is the case for both men and women, and in this sense, it can be translated as "I wonder..." In the spoken language when paired with a rising intonation, it can be used to direct serious doubt at someone about something or that individual.

46. 何時だろうか。

I wonder what time it is.

47. いつ行うだろうか。

I wonder when he'll carry it out.

48. 誰が議事堂ぎじどうに行くのだろうか。

Who would go to the Diet?

49. あんな馬鹿ばかな行為が許されるだろうか。

How would such a stupid action be allowed?

50. 犯人なのではないだろうか。

Isn't he supposed the criminal?

51. お前も来るだろう？ (Casual/Masculine)

Aren't you coming too?

Grammar Note: When the particle か is dropped like in Ex. 51, the speaker is strongly seeking affirmation from the listener.

3. "...だろうが" and "...だろうと" show supposition and mean "even (in/as)" or "no matter". The former is used in the sense of "even as" whereas the latter is used in the sense of "even in/no matter."

52. 雨天うてんだろうと決行するつもりです。
I plan to carry it out even in rainy weather

53. 子供だろうが容赦ようしゃはしない。
Even as children, they don't show mercy.

54. どんな人だろうと、この映画は楽しめます。
No matter what kind of person you are, you can enjoy this movie.

4. ～だろうに means "even though it's supposed to be". When seen at the end of a sentence, it is often translated as "how I wish!"

55. 苦しかっただろうに、よく頑張った。
Even though it was supposed to be painful, he persevered well.

56. 人生をもう一度やりなおせたらどんなにいいだろうに。
How I wish I could live my life again!

57. もう少し早く出れば間만에合っただろうに。
If we only left a little bit more early, we would have made it on time.

～でしょう

For the most part, ～でしょう is the polite form of ～だろう. ～でしょう comes from the combination of です and ～う. It is often shortened to ～でしょ in casual speech. It has largely replaced だろう whenever it isn't followed by some particle. However, it is possible to see ～でしょうに.

58. 今晚は雪でしょう。
It's probably snow this evening.

59. 戻ってくるでしょう。
It'll probably return.

60. 薬くすりで頭痛ずつうは収おさまるでしょう。
Headache should subside with medicine.

61. よろしいでしょうか。
Will this be alright?

62. 彼女は本当に喜よろこぶでしょう。
I think it'll probably make her really happy.

63. 間に合わないのではないのでしょうか。
Are we not going to be able to make it?

～ますでしょうか

～でしょうか normally goes after the plain form, but it's occasionally after ～ます in attempts to be more honorific.

64. 日本に來られて何年になりますでしょうか。
How many years has it been since you've come to Japan?

65. お分かりになりますでしょうか。
Do you understand?

第119課: Causative-Passive

Adding the causative and passive forms together creates the 使役受け身形. As the name suggests, the ordering of the endings is causative then passive. Because there is a short causative form, there is a short causative-passive form. So, we will need to look into detail on that. Also, because the causative can either be interpreted as make and let depending on context (remember that natives often do not sense a difference between the two concepts), the causative-passive reflects this as well.

Causative-Passive

The 受身形 (passive form) and the 使役形 may be put together by combining ～させる・せる and ～られる together.

Class	Verb	動詞	使役受身形
一段	To wear	着る	着させられる
一段	To close	閉める	閉めさせられる
五段	To eat (俗語)	食う	食わせられる
五段	To scratch	掻く	掻かせられる
五段	To sniff	嗅ぐ	嗅がせられる
五段	To pierce/sting	刺す	刺させられる
五段	To shoot	撃つ	撃たせられる
五段	To die	死ぬ	死なせられる
五段	To jump	跳ぶ	跳ばせられる
五段	To carve	刻む	刻ませられる
五段	To print	刷る	刷らせられる

To begin our grammar analysis, let's consider the particle differences to expect between the passive, causative, and causative-passive conjugations. Take note of the first three very similar example sentences demonstrating this point.

The particle に marks the forcer and the person made to do the action is simply the subject of the sentence. Notice the differences in translation and particle usages in the following.

1. 先生に発音を直された。(Passive)

My pronunciation got corrected by the teacher.

Sentence Note: 先生 is the doer of the correction; the pronunciation is the direct object of what was corrected.

2. 人にほかの人の発音を直させる。(Causative)

To make a person correct someone else's pronunciation.

Sentence Note: 人 is the person being made; you are the person making the person do so.

3. 先生にほかの学生の発音を直させられた。(Causative-passive)

I was made to correct the pronunciation of the other students by the teacher.

Sentence Note: The teacher is who forced you to correct the pronunciation of the other students.

Contracting the Causative-Passive Form

Remember the short causative endings ～さす and ～す? For the latter, you can add the ending ～れる to create the short causative-passive. Because these endings are using the 未然形, some students mistakenly think that ～される is somehow the ending, which is not the case. However, using the legitimate short causative-passive form when you should be using the passive form because of confusing this as a longer passive form is most certainly incorrect.

As we know, ～す only attaches to 五段 verbs. The short causative-passive form has another restriction. When a verb ending in す takes ～す, you use the 未然形 さ. Because ～す will also be in its 未然形 さ to take ～れる, two さ would be next to each other. So, you cannot say things like 話さされる. Therefore, only 五段 verbs not ending in す can have a short causative-passive form. The chart below illustrates the causative, short causative, causative-passive, and short causative-passive forms for all kinds of verbs.

活用	動詞	使役形	使役縮約形	使役受身形	使役受身縮約形
五段カ行	描く	描かせる	描かす	描かせられる	描かされる
五段ガ行	泳ぐ	泳がせる	泳がす	泳がせられる	泳がされる
五段タ行	待つ	待たせる	待たす	待たせられる	待たされる
五段ナ行	死ぬ	死なせる	死なす	死なせられる	死なされる △
五段バ行	遊ぶ	遊ばせる	遊ばす	遊ばせられる	遊ばされる
五段マ行	読む	読ませる	読ます	読ませられる	読まされる
五段ラ行	帰る	帰らせる	帰らす	帰らせられる	帰らされる

上一段	見る	見させる	見さす (△)	見させられる	見さされる X
下一段	食べる	食べさせる	食べさす (△)	食べさせられる	食べさされる X
サ変	する	させる	さす (△)	させられる	さされる X
カ変	来る	来させる	来さす (△)	来させられる	来さされる X
五段サ行	話す	話させる	話さす	話せられる	話さされる X

The final three short causative-passives being wrong is not surprising. After all, two さ is unnatural and is resultant of using this shortcut with the wrong kind of verb. Surprisingly, though, one combination was given a △. This means that 死なされる is not common Japanese and is usually avoided. For instance, say you have 本人の意思で医者の手により死なされた. This is odd considering the antonym 生かされる exists. This is because rephrasing with 死なせる is more common/natural. Thus, 死なされる isn't grammatically faulty but hardly ever used and thus usually unnatural.

～す should only be used with 五段 verbs. However, you often hear things like 食べさして, although this sort of speech sounds dialectical. You could view this as a corruption of 食べさせて or a use of the short ～す in the て形. Thus, △ should actually be X in terms of 標準語.

Examples

- 兄が母に部屋を掃除させられました。
My brother was made by his mother to clean the room.
- 学生は先生に漢字を練習させられる。
The students are made to practice Kanji by the teacher.
- 兄にクッキーをすべて食べさせられた。
I was made to eat all of the cookies by my big brother.
- ガールフレンドに待たされた。
I was made to wait by my girlfriend.
- 奴隷どれいは毎日ただで働かせられていたということです。
The slaves were made to work for no pay every day.
- 僕は子供の時、母親にニンジンを食べさせられなかったから、今でも大嫌いだよ。
Since I wasn't forced to eat carrots by my mom when I was a kid, I still hate them.
- 熱に浮かされる。(Idiomatic)
To be in a craze.
- 彼は学校をやめさせられた。
He was expelled from school.

X makes Y get...by Z

In English, we can say the following sentences.

- The apple was eaten by the student. (Passive)
- The teacher made the student eat the apple. (Causative)
- The student was made to eat the apple by the teacher. (Passive-causative)
- The teacher made the apple get eaten by the student. (Causative-Passive)

In Japanese, there is a fixed ordering of causative and passive. They go in that order, which is why we have *させられる* and not *られさせる*. How, then, can we have Japanese mimic the final possibility? The labels are for English, not Japanese. So, although we can easily translate the third sentence by keeping the word order as is minus "was made" being flipped, the fourth is exceptionally difficult.

The first worry we have is if we try to translate 4 directly, we'll get a literally translated expression that sounds foreign. This means unnatural speech, which is not what we want. The following two sentences would be the options a native speaker would suggest for 4. Contextual details are meant to make up for any lack of meaning in 4.

12. 学生は先生にリンゴを食べさせられた。◎

13. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べさせた。◎

It appears already that a direct reflection of 4 is impossible. Consider, though, the following which relies on introducing a different word to the equation: *仕向ける*.

14. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べさせるように仕向けた。○ But not ◎

15. 先生はリンゴを生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

16. 先生はリンゴが生徒に食べられるようにした。X

17. 先生は、リンゴが生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

～られるように仕向ける and ～させるように仕向ける both exist, but the former is incorrect in this context as the speaker is not being affected. This is because there is will involved in making something be acted upon. Now, we'll see how ～させるように仕向ける can go from ○ to △ because of what *仕向ける* means and not because of the existence of the phrase.

仕向ける is working up someone to doing something (tempting/inducing) and it's a lot more work than just a simple scene of a witch giving an apple, eat, and then done. Even if the witch was pushy at that moment, the work behind for *仕向ける* situations would be a mismatch. With this in mind, consider the following.

18. 魔女まじょは白雪しらゆき姫ひめに毒どくリンゴを食べさせるように仕向けた。
(ちょっと変)

19. 魔女は白雪姫が毒リンゴを食べるよう（に）仕向けた。

20. 魔女は白雪姫に毒リンゴを渡わかし、食べるように言った。（一番自然）

Japanese may not allow you to explicitly say what you can in English with "the teacher made the apple get eaten by a student", but you can supplement this semantic information with context. This is what we have to do when languages don't meet eye to eye.

Causative + Potential

It just so happens that ～られる also has the "potential" usage, meaning that what looks like the "causative-passive" may in fact be the "causative potential." Because the particles would differ, there usually isn't ever confusion as to what is meant. Note that the abbreviated causative cannot be used with this because す → せる would simply revert them back to the non-abbreviated causative form. However, both the short and long causative forms can be followed by ～ことができる.

21. 私は犬にえさを食べさせられますよ。
I can feed the dog.

第123課: Titles

One's title is important in society, especially Japanese society. Sometimes, it's so important that it's how you're addressed. Last lesson, you were introduced to embellishments called 呼称こしょう that attach to people's names and provide insight to their relation with you or whoever's speaking. You were also introduced to the concept of 呼び捨て, which is not using a 呼称 at all, and when it's okay to address people solely by their names (casual circumstances).

The World of Titles

The most recognizable title in Japanese is 先生, an honorific word which literally means "one born earlier." 先生 refers to teachers, professionals, and leaders. Like a 呼称, it must not be used to refer to oneself. The reason for this is that in honorifics, you are supposed to be humble in speaking about yourself.

Titles may differ in wording depending on whether you are referring to someone else or oneself, but there is always a way to phrase someone's title, putting aside who exactly one is talking about. Embellishing with 呼称 is a good way at bridging the gap between referring to one's own occupation to referring to someone else; however, many occupations suffice alone as titles. This is because the large majority of occupation terms are neutral in honorifics, and using them in tangent with a surname is usually all you need to do. However, it's important to study how individual words are used to get all this correct.

Now it's time to expand your vocabulary by absorbing many of the common occupation words you may encounter. Some may function like 呼称 while others will simply function as standalone words. For instance, you may talk about your boss as 上司, but you'll refer to him in person by his actual position.

Title?/Occupation?

The best way to learn when to use what and how is not by staring at a list of words but by seeing them used in action. Word notes will be provided per example sentence to give you information about how titles are used and how they may be used outside the example itself.

1. 課長、新規しんきの見積(書)をご覧になりましたか。
Chief, have you seen the new quote?

Word Note: The word 課長, meaning "(department) chief," is both a title and an occupation.

2. アメリカのトランプ次期大統領じきだいとうりょうにメキシコ工場の建設計画けんせつけいかくを批判ひはんされているトヨタ自動車の豊田章男社長とよだあきおしゃちょうは9日、アメリカのデトロイトで開かれているモーターショーに出席し、アメリカで今後5年の間に100億おくドル（1いっ兆円以上ちやうえんいじょう）を投資とうしする計画になっていることを明らかにしました。

Akio Toyoda, the president of Toyota Motor Corporation, who has been criticized by President-elect (Donald) Trump for plans to construct a factory in Mexico, while attending an auto show being held in Detroit in America on the ninth, revealed that the company has made plans to invest over 10 billion dollars (over 1 trillion yen) into America in coming five years.

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: トランプ次期大統領 incorporates a "surname + occupation." (次期) 大統領 may be used as a standalone word.

Word Note: The company president of Toyota Motor Corporation is Akio Toyoda. He is referred to initially by the "full name of the company + full name + title." Workers of his company would undoubtedly refer to him as 社長. Other mentions of him in the article would have abbreviated his full address to just "surname + title" (豊田社長).

3. 薬師寺やくしじの村上太胤管主むらかみたいいんかんしゅは「東塔とうとうの再建さいけんが順調じゅんちやうに進んでいくものと心強く思っています」と話していました。

Tai'in Murakami, the chief abbot of Yakushi-ji, spoke of the matter saying, "I'm strongly reassured that the reconstruction of the East Tower is to proceed steadily."

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: 管主 refers to the chief abbot of a temple, and depending on the sect, it may alternatively be 貫首かんじゅ, 座主ざす, etc.

4. 台湾たいわんの蔡英文総統さいえいぶんそうとうは、外交関係がいこうかんけいのある中米ちゅうべい4か国を訪問ほうもんするのを前に8日、経由地けいゆちのアメリカ南部テキサス州しゅうのヒューストンで、地元選出じもとせんしゅうつで若手わかつての有力政治家ゆうりよくせいじかの1人である共和党きょうわとうのテッド・クルーズ上院議員と会談かいだんしました。

Taiwanese President Tsai Ing-wen on the eighth, before traveling to four Central American nations with which Taiwan has diplomatic relations, met with Republican Senator Ted Cruz, a young, local elected political star, at her transit point in Houston, which is located in the south of the U.S.
From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: The president of some countries, Taiwan being an example, is called 総統. Senator in Japanese is “上院議員.” 議員 simply means “assemblyman” and can be used in a variety of government/bureaucracy related terminology.

5. おとし、町長ちょうちょうと数人の議員たちが逮捕たいほされるといふ不祥事ふしょうじが起きました。

Two years ago, there was a scandal in which the town mayor and several assembly members were arrested.

Word Note: 町長 is both a title and an occupation.

6. これに関連かんれんして中国外務省ちゅうごくがいむしょうの陸慷りくこう報道官ほうどうかんは9日の記者会見きしゃかいけんで

In the context of this, Press Secretary of Chinese Foreign Affairs, Lu Kang, in a press interview on the ninth...

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: 中国外務省の陸慷報道官 utilizes the occupation/title 報道官. ～官 is a suffix meaning “officer” that you’ll see in several other titles/occupations.

7. F I F Aは9日、去年の年間最優秀選手ねんかんさいゆうしゅうせんしゅうを発表し、男子は、ポルトガル代表だいひょうのキャプテンで、スペイン1いち部ぶリーグ、レアルマドリードのエース、クリスチアーノロナウド選手せんしゅうが選ばれました。

On the ninth, FIFA announced the Player of the Year of 2016, choosing Cristiano Ronaldo for man of the year, who is a leading player in Real Madrid, a soccer league of Spain, as a captain representing Portugal.

From NHK on 1/10/17.

Word Note: Many titles/occupations are mentioned here. Firstly, 代表 is used after some “group/organization/country name” to demarcate a representative (代表者). キャプテン is, clearly, a title for “captain (of a team),” and 選手 is used after the name of athletes.

8. 青森山田高校あおもりやまだこうこうの黒田剛監督くろだごうかんとくは「去年3位に終わってから、リベンジしたいと頑張ってきた」と嬉うれしそうに話していました。

Couch Gō Kuroda of Aomoriyamada High School spoke happily saying, “Since ending in third place last year, we’ve worked hard to get our

revenge.”

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: 監督 is a title. Aside from meaning “coach,” it may also be used to mean director as in 映画監督. The occupation word for this is 監督者. For instance, 管理監督者 would mean “Management Superintendent.”

Word Note: ～者 is a suffix meaning “person,” but using it to refer to oneself is typically inappropriate. You should always rephrase it out in that case. Often times, ～人 is appropriate. Or, you could just not use a suffix after the occupation word in question.

9. 私はマンションの管理(人)をしています。

I manage apartments.

10. 安倍総理大臣あべそうりだいじんはサウジアラムコの東証とうしょうへの上場じょうじょうを直接依頼ちよくせついらした。

Prime Minister Abe directly requested for Saudi Aramco’s to be listed in the Tokyo Stock Exchange.

From NHK on 1/6/17.

Word Note: 総理大臣 is both a title and occupation.

11. 清田きよたCEOは首都しゅとりヤドに到着後とうちゃくご、ようやく待ち望んだ朗報ろうほうを受け取りました。

CEO Kiyota at last received the good news he had been waiting for after arriving at Riyadh the capital.

From NHK on 1/6/17.

Word Note: CEO is translated into Japanese as 最高経営責任者さいこうけいえいせきにんしゃ. Although this word is also used, it is far more practical and common to see CEO used instead.

12. 清田CEOは、最大さいだいのキーマンと目もくするムハンマド副皇太子ふくこうたいしと30分間、サウジアラムコの会長かいちょうを兼務けんむするファリハ・エネルギー産業鉱物資源相さんぎょうこうぶつしげんしょうと1いち時間弱じかんじゃく、それぞれ会談かいだんし、東証の魅力みりょくをアピールしました。CEO Kiyota respectively met with the Deputy Crown Prince Mohammed, who is also deemed the most key influential person, for thirty minutes as well as Al-Falih, the minister of the Ministry of Energy, Industry and Mineral Resources as well as the chairman Saudi Aramco, for a little less than an hour to appeal to the glamour of the Tokyo Stock Exchange.

From NHK on 1/6/17.

Word Note: 副～ is a prefix attached to titles/occupations meaning “vice-/deputy...”

Word Note: 皇太子 means “Crown Prince” and is both a title and an occupation.

Word Note: 会長 is a title and may mean “the president (of a society)” or “chairman (of the board of directors).”

Word Note: ～相しょう is a suffix meaning “minister” that appears at the end of the official name of a ministry.

13. サウジアラビアの重要閣僚じゅうようかくりょうは、日本の大手石油元売おおてせきゆもとうり会社がいしゃの首脳しゅのうにも電話をかけ、法案撤回ほうあんてっかいへの日本の協力を要請ようせいしました。

Key cabinet members of the Saudi Arabian cabinet even gave calls to the head leaders of major Japanese oil refiner-distributors seeking Japan’s support to overturn the law.

From NHK on 1/6/17.

Word Note: 閣僚 means “cabinet members” and is inherently plural.

Together they form the cabinet (内閣閣僚ないかくかくりょう). A member (構成員) of the cabinet is referred to as a 国務大臣こくむだいじん. In direct reference to being a cabinet member, you would use 閣僚委員かくりょういいん. 閣僚 is only an occupation, and in order to make it a title, you would need to use 閣僚委員.

Word Note: 首脳 is an occupation and may refer to a head of state or head leader(s) of an organization/company. To use it in reference to someone, you might see it used in a sentence like below.

14. 世界には一国いっこくの政府首脳を務つとめる女性が意外いがいとたくさんいます。

There are surprisingly a lot of women who are heads of state in the world.

15. ムハンマド副皇太子は、中国で習近平しゅうきんぺい国家主席こっかしゅせきと会談かいだん、ロシアではプーチン大統領と会談するなど、精力的せいりよくてきに世界を飛び回っています。

Deputy Crown Prince Mohammed energetically flew around the world meeting with President Xi Jinping of China, President Putin of Russia, etc.

From NHK on 1/6/17.

Word Note: The word for “president” in reference to China is 国家主席.

Other words for president yet to be mentioned in this lesson include 頭取 for president of a bank, 理事長 meaning “director,” and 総裁, which is the president of a major organization such as the Bank of Japan, hospitals, etc.

16. 落成式らくせいしきでは阿部秀保市長あべひでおしちょうが「6年生が卒業する前に、新しい校舎こうしゃで学んでもらおうと完成かんせいを目指し、努力してきました。この校舎は復興ふっこうのシンボルです」とあいさつしました。

City Mayor Hideo Abe greeted (attendees) at the completion ceremony saying, “We have worked hard aiming to complete this new schoolhouse for our sixth graders to learn in before graduating (primary school). This school building is a symbol of restoration.”

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: 市長, meaning “city mayor,” is both a title and an occupation.

17. 宮野森小学校みやのもりしょうがっこうの相澤日出夫校長あいざわひでおこうちょうは「すばらしい校舎が完成し、感謝しています。地域ちいきの復興に向けて、いい学びの場ばにしていきたい」と話していました。

Principal Hideo Aizawa of Miyanomori Elementary School spoke saying, "We are greatly thankful that this wonderful schoolhouse has been completed. We look forward to having this be a great learning place as we head towards restoring the region."

From NHK on 1/9/17.

Word Note: 校長, meaning "principal (of a school)," is both a title and an occupation.

18. 私は20年教師きょうしをしています。

I've been a teacher for twenty years.

Word Note: 教師 is the occupation of "teaching." Teachers are referred to as 先生. However, one must never refer to oneself as such.

19. オーキド博士はかせからポケモンを貰もらえるって聞いたけど、本当？

I heard that you can get a Pokemon from Professor Oak, but is that true?

Word Note: 博士 in professional words like Doctorate Degree (博士号) it is pronounced as はくし, but in general use, it is usually pronounced as はかせ.

Final Notes

When an occupation is used as a title in conjunction with someone's name, a 呼称 is not necessary. Whenever you are calling someone by his or her occupation, a 呼称 is often necessary. For instance, a store clerk is a 店員, but you'll need to refer to him/her as 店員さん. In the same token, your doctor is an 医者, but you refer to him/her as お医者さん.

Not all occupations can or ought to be used as titles. This means "occupation +さん" is not a fix all solution, but ~さん・様 will still likely be needed. Your lawyer is a 弁護士べんごし. However, you won't call him/her in person as 弁護士さん. You may refer to him/her as such in writing, but in person, you'd refer to him/her by surname +さん.

Some occupations sound quite wordy and technical if used in the spoken language. In such cases, different phrases may be used altogether. For instance, 警察官けいさつかん means "police officer." You may see people refer to police officers as 警察官さん(たち), but in conversation, you'll hear the word お巡まわりさん to prevent the awkwardness of using such a wordy title.

先輩 vs. 後輩

Lastly, to conclude this lesson, we will study the well-known words 先輩 and 後輩, which have gained worldwide attention due to their overuse in anime and manga. Most people outside Japan, however, don't really understand how they're used.

If I were your boss, I wouldn't be your 先輩. I would be your 上司. Even then, you would need to call me by the appropriate title. You don't call your teacher 先輩 either. Even if your 先生 happened to be younger than you, you would not call him/him your 後輩.

先輩 means "senior" as in being ahead in rank. In school everyone in grades above you is your 先輩. In reverse, you are their 後輩. Everyone in the school, though, is a 学生. 先輩 and 後輩 can be used like 呼称 and as stand-alone words. This is also the case for words like 先生. Teacher and student are complete opposites, and the teacher has a position that should be respected. Thus, you should use neither 先輩 or 後輩 in speaking to him/her.

Whether or not you can refer to athletes or what not as your 先輩 or 後輩 is dictated by the social circumstances at hand. Are you part of the team? Are you an extremely obsessed female fan that adores a member and affectionately refers to him as 先輩? There is a lot to keep in mind, but it is safe to say that if you find a usage in the wild that fits your situation, it is probably safe to use it likewise, assuming that you don't solely read odd manga series.

第124課: Honorifics I: Nouns

Honorific speech 敬語 is very intricate and its usage is mandatory in many situations. There are three broad categories of honorific speech. Of these, the top two categories will be relatively new to you.

As has been the case with polite speech seen listed as the third category, using formal speech toward those whom you ought to be casual with holds the opposite effect than otherwise intended. Therefore, as you learn how to form honorific expressions, it will be just as important to learn when to use said expressions.

尊敬語	そんけいご	Respectful	<i>Speaking to/of a person whom one wishes to respect.</i> It is not used in reference to oneself. It is associated with second and third person.
謙譲語・謙譲語	けんじょうご・けんそんご	Humble	<i>speaking to someone on what you or your in-group are to do.</i> It is associated with first person.
丁寧語	ていねいご	Polite	

Culture Note: You should also be aware that using 敬語 to someone that one is usually cordial and casual with will cause division and a sense of separation.

Honorific Nouns

Nouns are made honorific by the prefix 御～ which has three possible readings.

お～

御～ is read as お～ when attached to native words as well as a number of 漢語 (Sino-Japanese words).

Motivations for using お～ with 漢語 is being a 和製語 (word created in Japan). It's nearly impossible to know whether an 音読み phrase was made in Japan without being told. However, a great hint is that the majority of these words relate to things of the modern era.

Yet another means of knowing whether お～ is used with a 漢語 is if its sense as a 漢語 has been lost in the general public and has essentially become Japanese (due to the lack or loss of a native equivalent).

Noun	Honorific	和語・漢語	Meaning
名前	お名前	和語	Name
世話	お世話	和語	Assistance
世辞	お世辞	和語	Flattery
釣り	お釣り	和語	Change
手紙	お手紙	和語	Letter
塩	お塩	和語	Salt
魚	お魚	和語	Fish
目	お目	和語	Eyes
腹	お腹	和語	Stomach
上	お上	和語	Buttress; government
自宅	お住い	和語	Residence

Some words are somewhat difficult to read. For instance, お腹 is read as おなか and お上 is read as おかみ. As you can see, all words are listed. So, what about 世話? This is 当て字, meaning せわ is native and the spelling blurs this fact.

1. お - is always incompatible with 'long words' several morae long, and it is also not used with words that start with o

2. A rarer but more honorific form of お～ is おん～. Examples include 御自ら and 御母上.

Example Sentences

1. 彼女にはいろいろなことをしていただいてお世話せわになっております。
I owe her a lot for everything.

2. お叱しかりのお言葉を有り難く頂戴いたします。
I would appreciate it if I receive your scolding.

3. お先さきにどうぞ。

Please go in front.

4. 亡くなられた**お方**の小さい御子達おこたちの相手に女の姪めいたちを連れて来て貰
もらいたいと云うのだった。

She was told that [they] would like her to bring along her nieces as
companions to the small children of the deceased lady.

From 姨捨おばすて by 堀尾辰ほりおたつ.

Word Note: Though お方 now refers politely to a gentleman/gentlewoman,
in the past it was used to refer to a noble woman or daughter, as is the case
in this setting.

5. 「罪が深いんですから、いくら難有いお経だって浮ばれる事は御座いませんよ」

Since his sin is so grave, you cannot rest his soul no matter how great of a
sutra you evoke.

From 吾輩は猫である by 夏目漱石.

Word Note: お経 is an interesting exception. 経 is a Sino-Japanese word of
Chinese origin and does not take ご, which we are about to get to. This must
mean that the word is treated as if it is a native word, just like other old
loans such as 馬.

Spelling Note: Because the novel from which this example comes from is so
old, spelling conventions are not quite the same. ありがたい, when it is
written in 漢字 today, is typically spelled as 有り難い. As you can see, the 漢字
are flipped.

Non-Polite Examples

Although a phrase may have an honorific suffix in it, it doesn't mean that it
is respectful. One example is お里が知れる, which means "to reveal one's
upbringing". This refers to Japanese dialects and is felt to be a rude
expression. A much more polite way is なまり・方言・アクセントで出身が分かる.

As another example of words with お that are not honorific, consider the
word お化け. This is an alternative way of saying 化け物. Both refer to
Japanese-style ghosts/monsters. お化け can also refer to something just really
abnormal. There are a lot of important お化け that you should know about.
Important ones include 轆轤首ろくろくび, 天狗てんぐ, and から傘かさお化ばけ.

お + 外来語

What if you wanted to make a loanword like ワイン or コンピューター? You add
nothing. However, there are several exceptions. In relation to drinks, おビー
ル is questionable, but some people, particularly women, do use it. It is also
appropriate in the business arena. There is no problem with using お酒, お茶,
or お冷 because they are 'Japanese' words. Likewise, although you can say
お洋服, you cannot say おスーツ or おコート.

おタバコ is not that common unless you're in a service industry. Similar words that are odd unless you're in a secretarial position include お車 and お薬 despite being native words. おズボン would also be seen in the trades or by women who frequently add お to more words than men typically do such as おジュース. おソース is on the same lines as おしょう油.

A decent amount of people also say things like おトイレ. It is strange to a lot of people, though. Interestingly, お手洗い is proper Japanese.

お + 漢語

As mentioned above, there quite a few words that are from Chinese or based on Chinese morphemes that take お. Consider the following examples.

お電話	Phone	お時間	Time	お砂糖	Sugar	お宅	Home	お礼状	Thank you note
お肉	Meat	お邪魔	Disturbance	お写真	Photo	お天気	Weather	お菓子	Sweets
お愛想*	Affability	お風呂	Bath	お会計*	Bill	お勘定*	Bill	お返事**	Response

Ironically, お宅 does also mean "nerd". In honorifics, though, it seriously refers to someone else's home.

*: All of these words happen to be used to mean "bill", but there is disagreement on how they should be used. おあいそ is largely felt to be rude in Tokyo, but it is frequently used in West Japan. The reason why some say it's rude is because it should be what a business should say to a customer. Meaning, it is they who may have not shown affability to you as they should have. Thus, a customer referring to this is rude.

お会計 is the word of choice for younger generation. It is the word most likely to be on your receipt at any given place. However, there are those who think only the business side should use it because it is referring to actual accounting. お勘定 is rather neutral in being used by the customer, but the percentage of young people who use it is dropping.

**:

This word can also be ご返事, which is deemed to be the original form and always proper. However, over 60% of people no longer use it. So, it is fair to say that there is no practical difference between the two. Be aware of sticklers.

ご～ is used only with 音読み compounds that are often considered formal and typically have a native Japanese word equivalent.

Noun	Honorific	Meaning
主人	ご主人	Master*
病気	ご病気	Sickness
心配	ご心配	Worry
旅行	ご旅行	Trip
連絡	ご連絡	Contact
両親	ご両親	Parents
遠慮	ご遠慮	Discretion
注意	ご注意	Caution
親類	ご親類	Relatives
相談	ご相談	Consulting
近所	ご近所	Vicinity
親切	ご親切	Kindness
苗字	ご苗字	Last name

Usage Notes:

1. The adverb ゆっくり may also be used with ご～.
2. 主人 means "master" but "(someone's) husband when ご～ is attached.
3. There are times when adding ご results in Double Keigo (二重敬語). For instance, in ご芳名 (your good name), ご令息 (son), ご逝去 (death), the nouns themselves are already honorific. But, because they have for whatever reason been reanalyzed as being not honorific enough, ご is always attached to them.

Examples

6. 大変たいへんご面倒めんどろをおかけしてすみませんでした。
I'm very sorry to have put you into any trouble.
7. 先生に茶道さどうのご教授きょうじゅを賜たまわりたいのですが。
Would you be so kind as to give me instruction on tea ceremonies?
8. ご訂正ていせいを頂戴いたしまして、どうもありがとうございます。
Thank you very much for giving me corrections.
9. どうぞご遠慮えんりょなく。
Feel free.

み～

み～ is used with nouns particular to religion or grand importance. Although rarely seen, it is even possible to use おみ～ and おんみ～.

Comes From		New Meaning
Treasure	大御宝	Imperial subjects
Child	御子	God's son
Name	御名	Holy Name
Palanquin	御輿・神輿 (みこし)	Portable Shrine
Liquor	御神酒 (おみき)	Sacred Wine
World	御世	Imperial Reign
Heart	御心	Lord's will
Rock of spirit	御影石	Granite

Word Note: The last example is a little complicated. 御影 happens to mean "spirit(s) of the dead". This word also happens to be a place name where granite is manufactured. Thus, the word 御影石 came from this geographical connection. This is an important example to note, though, because this word is not honorific in any way despite the fact it clearly has the honorific prefix み- in it.

HONORIFIC NOUNS WITHOUT 御

There are other means to show respectful and humble speech in nouns. For respectful nouns, 貴～ is apart of many respectful Sino-Japanese words. However, most, with exception to 貴社 "your honorable company" are rarely used. Death especially has several respectful variants.

Several humble nouns begin with 粗(そ), 拙(せつ), and 弊(へい). All three characters have negative/humble connotations. 愚(ぐ)～ is a humble prefix added to the 音読み of characters used for family. For representing respectfulness in terms of family, the suffix ～上(うえ) is used. Or, you may use 賢(けん)～.

	Noun	HON.	H or R?
Person	人	者	H
Person	人	方	R
Refreshments	おやつ	粗菓	H
My thoughts	私意	拙意	H
Word	言葉	詔	R
Older brother	兄	愚兄	H
Older brother	兄	賢兄	R
Company	会社	貴社	R
Company	会社	弊社	H
Tea	茶	粗茶	H
Place	所	御所	R

Husband	夫	宿六	H
Liquor	酒	粗酒	H
Daughter	娘	愚女	H
Father	父	父上	R/H
Goods	品	粗品	H
Manuscript	原稿	玉稿	R
Production; work	著作	拙作	H

INTERPRETING THE CHART: R = Respectful & H = Humble

Usage Notes:

1. 御所 refers to the "old imperial palace".
2. 詔 refers to an "imperial decree".
3. Whenever a word refers to royalty, that said variant is not used in reference to regular people.
4. 粗品 may also mean "little gift". This would still be 書き言葉的.
5. 粗 means "crude/course/inferior" and these meanings are implied in the humble words whether the thing(s) in question are as such.
6. Sometimes using the right word can be tricky. For instance, whenever people take entrance exams for college (入学試験) and companies (入社試験), people these days are starting to want to use 御校 and 御社 respectively instead of 貴校 or 貴社. The problem with this is with 御 being read as おん, it may sound quite unnatural in the spoken language if it were not for abnormal situation in which one is in front of many people you don't know. Although 貴校 and 貴社 may get used in letters between groups in an almost equal mentality, the most important thing in 敬語 is still to be conscious overall of ways to speak politely. Thus, it is quite OK to use those words.

HONORIFIC VARIANTS FOR DEATH

崩御	(ほうぎょ)	The honorable death of royalty.
卒去	(そっきょ)	Death of king or queen or a high ranking court official.
逝去	(せいきょ)	A more honorific word for the passing of an individual.
薨去	(こうきょ)	Death of an imperial member or high court.
薨御	(こうぎょ)	The death of a crowned prince or minister.

Word Note: It is unlikely that you will see some of these words, but there is always that chance. "To die" is generally a euphemism for several other verbs such as 死亡する (to de cease), 死去する (to part), and 亡くなる (to pass away)".

HONORIFIC PHRASES WITH HONORIFIC PREFIXES & SUFFIXES

There are also many set phrases that include the prefixes お～ and ご～ and the honorific endings ～さん and ～さま.

お月 {さま・さん}	Moon
お日 {さま・さん}	Sun
お世話さま	Trouble
お邪魔さま	Trouble
お疲れさま	Tired One
お気の毒さま	I'm very sorry
ご面倒さま	Could I trouble you
ご苦労さま	Much obliged for hardship

FORMAL SINO-JAPANESE WORDS

Some nouns are naturally formal because they are Sino-Japanese. These examples are by no means it, and you have seen many already. You will also see more in coming lessons through example sentences.

Tomorrow	明日 (みょうにち)	This year	今年、本年 (こんねん、ほんねん)
Breakfast	朝食 (ちょうしょく)	Day after tomorrow	明後日 (みょうごにち)
Next year	明年 (みょうねん)	Day before yesterday	一昨日 (いっさくじつ)
Last night	昨夜 (さくや)	Today	本日 (ほんじつ)
The other day	先日 (せんじつ)	Around...	約 (やく)

Word Note: Some of the words are typically heard as well. But, when it comes down to deciding what variant of a word you should use when speaking respectfully, you would choose these words.

Meals

Breakfast, lunch, and dinner, in fact, have 4 sets of expressions based on politeness with each set using a different verb for "to eat".

	Breakfast	Lunch	Dinner	To Eat
Casual	朝飯 (あさめし)	昼飯 (ひるめし)	[晩・夕]飯 ([ばん・ゆう]めし)	食 (く)う
Plain	朝飯 (あさはん)	昼飯 (ひるはん)	夕飯 (ゆうはん)	食 (た)べる

Plain/ Polite	朝御飯 (あさごはん)	昼御飯 (ひるごはん)	[晩・夕]御飯 ([ばん・ゆう]ごはん)	食べる
Formal	朝食 (ちようしょく)	昼食 (ちゅうしょく)	夕食 (ゆうしょく)	取る

Word Note: 夜ごはん is becoming more acceptable as more people are now eating dinner later in the evening.

Exercises

1. When do you use お-?
2. When do you use ご-?
3. How do you use adjectives in honorific speech?
4. What are the two types of honorific speech?
5. Make a sentence in honorific speech with the copula.
6. Make a sentence in honorific speech with an adjective.
7. Make a sentence in honorific speech with a noun.
8. Show how a noun may change meaning when used with an honorific prefix.
9. Explain the usage of honorifics in your own words.

第125課: Honorifics II: Adjectives & the Copula

Pay close attention to what is deemed old-fashioned and what is not.

Adjectives

The "honorific" use of adjectives is normally seen in the pattern お+Adjective +です. This is often felt to just be really polite speech rather than honorific speech, but it suffices for the most part.

お・ご～ Note: The omission of the honorific prefixes is primarily determined by whether you are showing respect/humility or using 丁寧語. As you could imagine, the latter case is for when they should be omitted.

Examples

In the examples below, you will see various other patterns that hint at what has traditionally been the usage for adjectives. More will be said about them later in this lesson. So, for now, treat options as synonyms.

1. お忙しいですか。(普通)

Are you busy?

2. インドへ行けるのは嬉し {ゅうございます・い限ります・い所存でございます}。
(謙譲語)

I would be happy to go to India.

Sentence Note: This example shows how you can make an adjective more humble. 所存 means intention, and it is a good formal choice. We will get to what exactly ゆうございます is later in this lesson.

3a. 皆様本日はお忙しいところご参加頂いただきありがとうございます。(謙譲語)

3b. 皆様本日はお忙しいところご臨席りんせきを賜たまわりありがとうございます。(上位者などに対する尊敬語)

3c. 皆様本日はお忙しいところご出席下さりありがとうございます。(尊敬語)

Thank you for attending.

4a. 開けてもよろしいですか。

4b. 開けてもよろしいでしょうか。(△/More polite)

Is it alright if I open up (the window)?

自然さ Note: よろしいでしょう to many speakers is incorrect 敬語 because it is a doubling of two patterns at once to make it such. However, to some, the politeness of よろしい seems insufficient, thereby making this a reasonable solution.

Exception Note: The honorific form of よい is よろしい・宜しい。

5a. 皆さん、お静かに願います。(とても丁寧)

5b. 皆様、ご静粛せいしゅくをお願い申し上げます。(Very respectful)

Everyone, please be quiet.

6a. ご立派でいらっしゃいます。

6b. ご立派であらせられます。(Old-fashioned; very respectful)

You are great.

Traditional Adjective Honorific Conjugations: Adj. + ~ございます

The traditional means of conjugating an adjective into honorific speech, which is now deemed old-fashioned and potentially grandiose, involves dropping い and adding うございます. Whenever the adjective ends in しい・じい, then you drop い and add ゆございます. You've already seen this grammar in the phrase ありがとうございます.

If it ends in...	Drop	Add	Then Add
—いい	—いい	Small ゆ + う	ございます
—あい	—あい	—おう	ございます
—おい	—おい	—おう	ございます
—うい	—うい	—うう	ございます

Examples

大きい	大きゅうございます	Big	嬉しい	嬉しゅうございます	Happy
早い	早うございます	Early	よろしい	よろしゅうございます	Good
新しい	新しゅうございます	New	白い	白ございます	White
難しい	難しゅうございます	Difficult	古い	古うございます	Old
赤い	赤うございます	Red	悪い	悪うございます	Bad

7. 部屋は夏でも涼しゅうございます。(古風)
The room is cool even in the summer.

8. お早うございます。
Good morning.
Literally: You're early.

9. 旅行は長なごうございます。(古風)
The trip is long.

10. お友達と別れるのは本当に悲しゅうございます。(古風)
Separating from one's friends is really sad.

11. このお茶は薄うすうございます。(古風)
The tea is flat.

12. 地震や余震よしんは恐おそろしゅうございますね。(古風)
Earthquakes and aftershocks are scary, aren't they?

13. 空は青うございます。(古風)
The sky is blue.

14. 「はあ、一人三円で参ります。少しお高うございますが、翌る日寝てしまいますから。」
"Yes, I'll come for three yen a person. It is a little high, but it is because I sleep the next day".
From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

History Note: There was a time in Japan's history when the yen was far more valuable than it is today just as the dollar and penny once were in America.

15. 日本は大きくございません。(品格ひんかくのある丁寧さ; ちょっと古風)
Japan is not large.

Pattern Note: Avoiding the contractions is a way to make honorific adjectives sound less old-fashioned and yet at the same time be more polite. Remember that sentences like this are examples of 丁寧語, not 尊敬語.

16. 「それで、好ござんすとも」と御米は答えた。
"Then, that's fine", Oyome replied.
From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Contraction Note: よござんす is a shortening of よろしゅうございます and was a common 江戸言葉 in light honorifics a century ago. Always be on the lookout for odd stuff in literature.

〜く {思っで・存ぞんじて} おります

Many older speakers cannot get used to adding です or a copula of any sort after a 形容詞. The coming of this pattern, like with many generational changes, can be explained by contractions. In this case, the common practice of the new typing age and East Japanese dialect habits became standard. However, as you learn more about how to make your speech ever more honorific, one way to overcome this issue of grammaticality is by changing the adjective to an adverb and using {思っで・存じて} おります.

17. 有り難がたく存じております。

I am very grateful.

Literally: I think very gratefully.

18. 嬉うれしく思っでおります。

I am very happy.

Literally: I'm thinking happily.

The Copula

The copula doesn't have a true 謙讓語 form. When you wish to show more politeness with the copula, you use the form でございます. However, this is classified as 丁寧語. It is politer than です・ます調, and it can be used to refer to third person intentions along with sentences regarding oneself. In fact, でございます as a stand alone verb is classified as 尊敬語 or 丁寧語. As far as the copula is concerned, its 尊敬語 is でいらっしゃいます. Referring to their plain forms for convenience, you'll learn that いらっしゃる and ござる happen to be honorific verbs. So, it's no surprise that they would be used this way with the copula.

19. 社長、こちらは藤原常務でいらっしゃいます。

President, this is Director Fujiwara.

20. 皇帝から頼まれたものでございます。

This is something that was entrusted to me from the Emperor.

21. そうではございません。

It's not so.

22. 私はこの子の父でございます。

I am the father of this child.

23. はい、鈴木でございます。

Yes, this is Suzuki.

第126課: Honorifics III: Light Honorifics: レル・ラレル敬語

All of the usages of these endings are etymologically related to each other in Japanese. However, to keep things easier in our minds, we will need to treat them separately. This is because the grammar/particle usage for each usage is quite different. These endings, ～られる・れる, along with appropriate phrasing to go along, help create 軽い敬語.

Knowing when it is appropriate to only be lightly honorific is a question that natives struggle at times. It is safe to say, though, that when you are with someone you should be respectful to yet have no established connection with each other to warrant the same speech you would use to your boss, 軽い敬語 becomes very useful.

Ambiguity Note: There are times when the passive usage and the honorific usage of these endings becomes blurred. Because of this, the usage of 軽い敬語 is less common in comparison to other speech styles.

軽い敬語

Before we look at how this grammar is used, let's recap on how to construct it.

Verb Class	Example Verb	未然形	＋られる・れる
上一段	見る	見-	見られる
下一段	食べる	食べ-	食べられる
五段	読む	読ま-	読まれる
サ変	する	さ-	される
カ変	来る	来(こ) -	来られる

The use of レル・ラレル敬語 is becoming more frowned upon as being too vague and unfitting for more and more situations. Many speakers believe that if you are to be respectful, then you should just use 敬語. However, many younger people overuse レル・ラレル敬語 and is a potential cause for 二重敬語 when these young people are trained to use more honorific means of expression as they combine what they have known with what they're being told. Of course, doubling 敬語 can come about by just being overly cautious of how respectful you're being, but this is another motivation.

This is not to take away from the fact that レル・ラレル敬語 is frequently used because it is. Just note that this is just the lowest tier of 敬語 and that you will need to use more honorific patterns as is needed. For instance, if we were to assume that talking to your 課長 and 社長 is different, レル・ラレル敬語 would be proper for the former but not for the latter. In interviews there is a tendency to avoid レル・ラレル敬語, but there are plenty of reporters that use it. In the end, there is a lot of speaker variation. Just keep these things in mind as you use this speech pattern.

Examples

1. その本はもう読まれましたか。
Have you already read the book?
2. どちらで日本語を習われましたっけ。
Where again did you learn Japanese?
3. 奈良に行かれたことがありますか。
Have you ever been to Nara?
4. 柳田さんは今朝、仙台を発たれました。
Yanagida-san left Sendai this morning.
5. 今朝の産経新聞を読まれましたか。
Have you read this morning's Sankei Newspaper?
6. お酒を飲めますか。
Do you drink?
7. どちらに住んでおられますか。
Where do you live?
8. この記事をどう思われますか。
What do you think about the article?
9. 先生が来られました。
The teacher has come.
10. 何時に出発されますか。
At what time will you depart?
11. 鈴木副課長は朝何時に起きられましたか。
What time in the morning did Chief Suzuki wake up?
12. 先生も行けますか。(○・?・X)
Will you go too, Sensei?

Sentence Note: For those who believe レル・ラレル敬語 should be used towards a figure like 先生, this sentence is wrong. As we will soon discuss in more detail, the sentence could also mean whether Sensei can go as well. Practically speaking, however, many people in school would say this to their Sensei. So, it's not inherently grammatically incorrect.

13. 先程社長が {言われました X・仰いました ○} ように、韓国へ進出することとなりました。

Just as the president has said just a moment ago, we will be expanding into Korea.

Sentence Note: In this sentence, it truly is deemed by the majority of speakers that レル・ラレル敬語 would be wrong because 社長 is not a title that goes with it.

14. よくゴルフを {されます・なさいます} か。

Do you often golf?

Word Note: Historically なさる and 下さる didn't even exist. They are in fact from the combination of 為す+れる and 下す+れる respectively. Interestingly enough, なされる is starting to make a comeback in Double Honorifics in Modern Japanese.

Ambiguity

As mentioned in the introduction, there are times when it is hard to tell what is meant. In the first sentence, one could argue that if traditional particle alignment (が instead of を for the object of a potential verb) were used that the second interpretation would not be likely. In reality, little distinction is made between using が or を to mark the object of a potential verb. So, the second interpretation is totally plausible.

15. 資料を見られましたか。

Did you see the material?

Could you see the material?

Was the material seen? (迷惑受身)

In this example, there is not as much ambiguity as the previous. One could say that the use of 行かれる for the potential form of 行く instead of 行ける is unlikely and old-fashioned. However, because the use of the traditional potential form would be more formal, this causes both interpretations below to be plausible. If the purpose of 敬語 is to be both respectful and clear, then there will be instances in which you should not leave room for misinterpretation. Thus, in these cases you should rephrase with a statement that is clearly only 敬語.

16. 課長は明日行かれますか。 ? → 課長は明日いらっしゃいますか。

Can the chief go tomorrow?

Will the chief go tomorrow?

17. こちらのカボチャ、食べられますか。 → こちらのカボチャ、召し上がりますか。

Will you eat this pumpkin?

Can you eat this pumpkin?

If you were to want to add potential to an honorific phrase, it is best to do add a polite element once you have used a regular 敬語 expression.

18. お酒はどの程度召し上がれますか。

How much alcohol can you drink?

第127課: Honorifics IV: Regular Verbs

Most Japanese think they're all equal. Nevertheless, the language still places heavy emphasis on choosing the correct register to address others. 敬語 makes oneself look more educated and better when used appropriately. Always **consider the listener's position versus that of your own**.

Everyone has trouble with 敬語 including Japanese people. Many honorific phrases are old-fashioned, but that shouldn't downplay the importance of 敬語. Interesting phenomena today include "Xになります" instead of "Xでございます". The first is traditionally incorrect. However, it is so common now that it is here to stay.

So, what kind of expressions are in 敬語? As you should know by now, 敬語 is usually split up into three kinds: 尊敬語 (respectful speech), 謙讓語・謙遜語 (humble speech), and 丁寧語 (polite speech). However, there are other phrases based off words and phrases found in 敬語 that serve the opposite purpose of being rude. This can be very complicated, but we will look at some examples as to how that can be the case.

Type	Object of Respect	Type of respect?	Subject of Action	例文
尊敬語	相手	Yes	相手	部長がお話し下さい。
謙讓語	自分	No	自分	私がお話しします。
丁寧語	聞き手	Yes	X	こちらにペンがございます。
尊大語	自分	Yes*	自分	俺様が言ってやろう！
輕蔑語	相手	No	相手	早くしやがれ！

*: To yourself, which is why it's boastful.

Terminology Note:

1. 丁寧語 used intransitively is specifically called 丁寧語.
2. 尊敬語 is used to give/pay respect to one's out-group or to superiors in one's in-group.
3. 謙讓語 is used to lower oneself or one's in-group.
4. 尊大語 takes items meant for showing respect to others to direct respect to oneself in a boastful manner.
5. 輕蔑語けいべつご does not necessarily share vocabulary with the above kinds of speech, but it is the opposite of 尊敬語. The purpose of the speech style is to look down upon or contempt. It may also be referred to as 卑罵ひば語ご or 罵詈雑言ばりご.

You must consider diction changes that we've studied up to this point. For example, instead of あの^人, use あの^方. Attitude is also very important. Your words can be elegantly chosen, but if your posture and attitude are coarse, you do nothing but show a crude side of yourself.

Although there is a lot of information, this lesson only scratches the surface. The best way to learn honorifics is seeing and using it in real life. What you learn here, though, will give you the skills necessary to facilitate it. We will now study the intricacy of verbs in honorifics.

Verbs Regular in Honorifics

Both respectful and humble forms have four general levels of politeness.

Respectful Levels of Politeness	Humble Levels of Politeness
R1 お(連用形)です	H1 お(連用形)します
R2 (連用形)なさいます	H2 お(連用形)いたします
R3 お(連用形)になります	H3 お(連用形)もうしあげます
R4 お(連用形)下さいます (implies favor)	H4 お(連用形)いただきます (implies favor)

Patterns' Note: These charts are not exhaustive. Others including the following.

Pattern	尊敬語・謙讓語?	Usage
お・ご...の	尊敬語	Refined feminine speech
～なさる	尊敬語	Attaches to the 連用形; very honorific but normally seen in the command form ～なさい because people tend to incorrectly mix it with R3.
～れる・られる	尊敬語	This is light 敬語. These are the same endings as for the passive.
お...になられる	誤用	This is a misuse.
お...なさる	誤用	Mostly deemed as a misuse.
お・ご... (を) たまわる	謙讓語	Humble pattern for receiving.
お・ご... (を) 差し上げる	謙讓語	Humble pattern for giving.

Prefix Note: ご～ is used instead of お～ in Sino-Japanese expressions.

Exception Note: 為さる・なさる is the respectful form of する and 致す・いたす is the humble form of する.

Usage Note: Think of the situations where the example sentences could be practically heard used. Who is speaking? To whom is the speaker addressing? This is all important in deciding which level of politeness is expected of you. Should a waiter have to use R3/H3, or because the guests' statuses are unknown, should he/she use R1/H1?

Base Note: Again, the 連用形 of verbs is either just る taken off for 一段 verbs or the base that ends in い for 五段 verbs.

届ける (一段) = To deliver 呼ぶ (五段) = To Call

R1 お届けです	お呼びです
R2 届けなさいます	呼びなさいます
R3 お届けになります	お呼びになります
H1 お届けします	お呼びします
H2 お届けいたします	お呼びいたします
H3 お届け申し上げます	お呼び申し上げます

Speaker Variant Note: Not all speakers feel お…なさる is wrong. Historically, it has been correct and survives in phrases like お帰りなさい and お休みなさい. Examples using this pattern show that it is still actually used. Oddly enough, ご…なさる is fine for whenever ご is OK.

Examples

1. 何をお探しですか。(尊敬語)
What are you looking for?
2. お忘れですか。(尊敬語)
Have you forgotten?
3. お持ち帰りですか。(尊敬語)
Is this to-go?
4. 田中博士とお話ししましたか。(尊敬語)
Have you talked with Professor Tanaka?
5. このところよくお会いしますね。(謙譲語)
Our paths seem to cross often lately, no?
6. お出かけですか。(尊敬語)
Are you going out?
7. 謹んでお詫び致します。(謙譲語)
I humbly apologize.

8. 心からお詫び申し上げます。(謙譲語)
Please accept my heartfelt apology.
9. 後ほど連絡をいたします。(謙譲語)
I will contact you later.
10. 弊社をご案内申し上げます。(謙譲語)
I shall give you a tour of the company.
11. 私はあなたをお守りします。(謙譲語)
I will protect you.
12. 速達でお願いします。(謙譲語)
By special delivery, please.
13. よろしくお願いします。(謙譲語)
Please treat me well.
14. 岸田部長はご出張なさるそうです。(尊敬語)
I hear that Chief Kishida is going to go on a business trip.
15. タベ課長からこちらの本をお借りしたよ。(謙譲語)
I borrowed this book from the section manager last night.

Usage Note: When speaking to friends/colleagues, it is possible to use respectful speech in reference to a superior while the overall speech level is polite/plain, but not doing so isn't necessarily considered rude. You may also humble yourself when referring to a superior even when the overall conversation is in polite/plain speech.

R4 VS H4

R4 お...下さる H4 お...いただく
お届け下さいます お届けいただきます
お呼び下さいます お呼びいただきます

R4 is expressed from the **favor-giver** side and H4 is expressed from the **favor-receiving** side. The person doing the favor in R4 is marked by が or は but is marked by に (by) or から (from) in H4. In H4, this person is from whom something is received. When に is already used in the same sentence, から is often used rather than に. Remember that に can only mark whom one is receiving, not what. After all, honorifics is improper outside the realm of people. For R4, に marks who the object/favor is being *directed*. In either case, if there is a direct object を, is used.

16. 私は頭取 {に・から} ご招待いただきました。(謙譲語)
I was invited by the bank president.
17. 伊藤さんが(私達に) お話し下さいました。(尊敬語)
Mr. Ito told us a story.

Double 敬語 Alert

Remember that ～（ら）れる can be used to make sentences more polite than simple polite sentences but less polite than true honorific sentences. Using it with honorific patterns is called "Double 敬語" and is not correct. Despite this, you might hear it.

18. テニスを {なさられますか △・なさいますか ○・されますか ○}。
Will you play/do you play tennis?

Exception Note: する's respectful form is なさる.

Warning Note: There are other entire phrases to avoid in 敬語. Asking if your superior can do something is forbidden! Asking directly whether your superior wants to do something or is thinking something is also bad. Consider the following.

- 19a. 部長は、韓国語はお分かりになりましたか。X (すごく失礼な言い方)
19b. 部長は、韓国語をお話になりますか。○ (礼儀正しい言い方)
Chief, can you understand Korean? → Chief, do you speak Korean?
20. お茶をお飲みになりたいですか。X → お茶をお飲みになりますか。
Do you want to drink tea? → Will you drink tea?

お...だ?

You can also see in **less respectful situations** です replaced by だ. This is reminiscent of the use of honorifics in a mix of polite/plain speech that was a hallmark of wife speech. Nowadays, examples like the first are simply set expressions but those like the second are still very much signature of more refined feminine speech. Even towards colleagues, many women still use honorifics in otherwise plain speech to show their own refinement.

21. あなた、夏休みはどちらへいらしたの。(女性語)
Where did you go for the summer?
22. 今朝はずいぶん早く（に）お出ましたね。(女性語・女房語)
My, you've come quite early this morning.
23. (だれだれさんが) お帰りだよ。(決まり文句)
Such and such is going home!

Sentence Note: This last sentence sounds like it would be said by people who run establishments with close customer relations. Places like 居酒屋 or scenes from plays come to mind.

24. お帰り！ (Casual)
Welcome home.

Word Notes:

1. いらす is a contracted form of the respectful いらっしゃる, which is the respectful form of 行く in this case.
2. お出まし is an honorific word for 出席. Note that the honorific word itself is not feminine.

One's Boss: Humble Speech?

It is important that you just don't run with the title of this section. To some, including Japanese people, it is very hard to not always speak of your boss respectfully, but when you're **addressing someone in one's out-group**, you refer to people in your in-group, including your boss, with humble speech. This includes 呼び捨て, the dropping of titles. Again, this is in reference to your **in-group**.

Situation A: 岩間さん is an employee at A社. The person on the other line when he answers the phone is 高田さん of B社. 高田さん acts about whether A社長, 岩間さん's boss is available or not. The following response is what 岩間さん should say if his boss is currently out and unavailable.

25. 申し訳ございませんが、Aさんはただいま外出しております。
I'm terrible sorry, but A is currently out.

Using respectful speech is a common mistake by newbies in the Japanese workplace. At least it's not as bad as not using 敬語 entirely.

Question: Is there any situation where you would refer to your boss to an out-group person with respectful speech?

Answer: Yes. Say you were in a huge company and rarely or never have a chance to work with your boss, it becomes even more natural and understandable to use respectful speech as your boss is no doubt very 偉い to regular workers like yourself. However, the person answering the phone for a message like above is probably in constant contact with the boss, so this would not work.

ある

ある is a little tricky in 敬語. If you have any older textbooks that are older than the 1960s, you will notice a lot of old forms listed. If you happen to read slightly old-fashioned literature, you'll also see them. This section will show you these forms for completeness, but you must understand what is used today. In the chart below, forms not listed as 古風 are still used. As for 尊敬語, the most common and important form is ございます. おあります may be used sometimes in making questions, but it's starting to become old-fashioned as well.

丁寧語

謙讓語 (古風)

尊敬語

尊敬語 (古風)

ございます おありでございます

ございます おありでいらっしゃいます
おありです おありになります

26a. マッチがおありですか。(古風)

26b. マッチをお持ちですか。(丁寧語)

Do you have a match?

27. 申し訳ございません。(丁寧語)

I'm terribly sorry.

Literally: I have no excuse.

28a. お釣はおありになりますか。(古風)

28b. お釣りはございますか。(現代の言い方)

Do you have some change?

29a. 拙宅にはお炬燵がございません。(やや古風)

29b. うちには(お)こたがございません。(現代の女性語)

29c. うちにはこたつがございません。(現代の言い方)

I don't have a kotatsu in my house.

Variant Note: お炬燵 has become out of use for many speakers. Opinions differ on its correctness, and what should be used instead depends partly on gender and partly on norms for everyone, which is represented in the notes above.

30a. お姉様がおありでいらっしゃいますか。(やや古風; もはや使われていない)

30b. お姉様はいらっしゃいますか。

Do you have an elder sister?

31. ご質問はございませんか。

Do you have any questions?

～させていただきます

Scene I: You are asked by your boss to go out to a very fine dinner. You have to decline, but you don't want to be rude. You would say something like:

32. せっかくでございますが、ご遠慮させていただきます。

It would be an honor, but I'm afraid I have to decline.

～させていただきます shows a feeling of **humble diffidence** to convey one's arbitrary action or intention while being *considerate of the speaker and his or her status*. As such, you should use this pattern rather than other humble patterns with certain verbs when you should recognize authority. ～ていただく implies receiving a favor. Its question forms are ～させていただきますか and ～させていただきますでしょうか. When you want to ask someone to do something like this, you don't use the causative.

33.

学生：今日はすこし頭が痛いので、早めに家へ帰らせていただけないでしょうか。

先生：それはいけませんね。お大事に。

Student: Since I have a headache today, may I go home early?

Teacher: That's no good. Take care.

34.

学生：先生、来週の金曜日は文部科学省の試験を受けに行かなければならないので、学校を休ませていただけないでしょうか。

先生：ああ、いいですよ。頑張ってくださいね。

Student: Teacher, I have to take a MEXT exam Friday of next week, so may I skip school (that day)?

Teacher: Ah, that's ok. Good luck.

Abbreviation Note: MEXT stands for the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology.

35.

学生：私にもコピーをさせていただけないでしょうか。

先生：いいですよ。でも明日までに返してください。

Student: May I make a copy of it?

Teacher: Yes, but you need to return it by tomorrow.

36.

Aさん：すみませんが、お写真を取らせていただけないでしょうか。

Bさん：あ、いいですよ。

A: Excuse me, but may I take your picture.

B: Ah, that's OK.

37. 藤山先生を紹介していただけないか。

Could you introduce me to Fujiyama Sensei?

When ～させていただけないでしょうか is not 100% Appropriate

When you use this expression, it makes the listener feel as if he or she has to say yes. Therefore, it is often the case that it is not appropriate to use this towards someone like a teacher or president. In such case, using ～ても構いませんか is the best choice.

38.

学生：申し訳ございませんが、宿題を忘れてきたので、明日提出しても構いませんか。

先生：仕方ありませんねえ。じゃ、明日忘れないでくださいね。

Student: I'm terribly sorry, but I forgot to bring my homework, so may I turn it in tomorrow?

Teacher: I guess there's no other way. Well, please don't forget it tomorrow.

39.

学生：すみません、これは日本語で言うのは難しいので、英語で言っても構わないですか。

先生：いいですけど、何でしょう。

Student: Sorry, I can't say this in Japanese, so may I say it in English?

Teacher: That's OK, but what is it?

Scene II: Your friend is speaking to you. Yet, you're irked at him. He asks if you want to go somewhere. However, you're not really interested in your friend and you say without emotion, "せっかくですが、遠慮させていただきます"。You were extremely sarcastic and rude. This pattern is sadly effective in asking for divorce.

Scene III: As a social norm, you should always get permission before you do something, particularly in advance. However, there are those instances where you have to dig yourself out of a hole. In this case, you can use ～させていただきます。

40. いらっしゃらなかったなので、代わりに転送させていただきました。

Since you weren't here, I took the privilege of forwarding it.

You should have gotten permission in advance, but in this case couldn't for some reason. In such case, using the following phrase may cause the listener to reluctantly consent.

さ入れ Note: Some speakers add さ even when it is a 五段 verb to the expression because it sounds more polite despite the fact that the resultant expression is **technically incorrect**.

41. 急がさせていただきます。(X)

Please let me hurry.

Historical Note: This phrase is clearly used to be more indirect about the speaker doing something. This, though, used to not be representative of Tokyo speech honorifics. In fact, this pattern comes from the 関西地方. Yes, this is 関西弁 that seeped into 標準語 which has since become standard.

Many More Examples of Honorifics

These sentences range from rather simple expressions, some of which you've already seen before, to far more complex sentences. Take note in how conjugations, particles, and other things work in honorifics.

42. 社長が呼びです。
The company president is calling you.

44. 田中さんとよくお会いになりますか。
Do you often meet with Mr. Tanaka?

46. 遠慮なくお邪魔させていただきます。
Allow me to come without hesitation.

48. 決めさせていただきます。
I will respectfully decide.

50. 昨日、私の英語の先生は推薦状を書いて下さいました。
Yesterday, my English teacher wrote a letter of recommendation for me.

53. すぐにお送りします。
I will send it right away.

54. 休業させていただきます。
We are taking off for holiday.

誤用 Note: This is a common misuse of honorifics. It should say 休業いたします or even just 本日休業 because it sounds as if they are asking permission from their customers. On the other hand, who can blame them for being extremely humble.

58. お車はどちらでございますか。
Which is your car?

60. 少々お待ち下さい。
Please wait one moment.

43. 心中お察しいたします。
My sympathies are with you.

45. 私達は伊藤さんにお話いただきました。
We were told a story by Mr. Ito.

47. 加藤さんはいらっしゃいますか。
Is Mr. Kato here?

49. 彼はそちらの件をお断りなさいました。
He rejected it.

51. お手数おかけしますが。
I hate to be a burden.

52. 食堂は三階にございます。
The cafeteria is on the third floor.

55a. いいえ、着なくてもよろしゅうございます。

55b. いいえ、着る必要はございません。
No, it's alright to not wear it.

56. 窓を閉めましてよろしゅうございますか？
Is it alright for me to shut the window?

57. 色々お世話になりました。
Thank you for all the wonderful things that you have done.

59. この度は大変お世話になりありがとうございました。
Thank you very much for all of your hard work.

61. このたびは音楽会の入場券をわざわざお送り下さって誠に恐縮です。
It was especially kind of you to have given me the concert ticket.

The Particle にて: The Original Form of で

で is actually the contraction of にて. にて has the same functions as で and is seen in formal situations.

62. 神戸にて開催かいさいされます。

It will be held in Kobe.

63. 今日の遠足えんそくはこちらにて解散かいさんします。

Today's field trip will be dismissed here.

64. 昨日は、風邪にて欠席けっせきしました。

I was absent yesterday due to a cold.

第128課: Honorifics V: Irregular Verbs I

Whereas for most conjugations する and 来る are the only verbs that are irregular, there are many exceptional verbs in honorific speech. Drastic change in conjugation for honorifics makes it more honorific in nature. So, if anything can be drastically changed, it is more preferable.

The Exceptions

Too little information is typically given for irregular honorific verbs. There are definitely a lot of them, and not even all "irregular" honorific verbs are to be mentioned in this section. That's because many are restricted to the written language, and the biggest priority that you should have is know how to use honorifics effectively and correctly in the spoken language.

Chart Note: The chart below illustrates the most important irregularities in respect to 尊敬語 and 謙譲語. When one form is normal, it will be marked with (N) in the chart below. There is no ordering to the chart. Variants often differ in nuance, so the chart is followed by many notes. The most important verbs to remember are in bold.

動詞	尊敬語	謙譲語・謙遜語
行く	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる	参る・伺う・参上する・上がる
来る	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる・見える・お見えになる	参る
いる	いらっしゃる・お出でになる	おる
見る	ご覧になる	拝見する
読む	お読みになる (N)	拝読する
言う	仰る	申す
食べる	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
飲む	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
受ける	お受けになる (N)	拝受する
助ける	ご支援なさる・お助けになる (N)	お手伝いさせていただく
決める	ご決定なさる・お決めになる (N)	決めさせていただく (N)

する	なさる	致す
知る	ご存知だ	存じる・存じ上げる・承知する
知らない	ご存知ない	存じない
知らせる	お知らせになる (N)	お耳に入れる
見せる	お示しになる・お見せになる (N)	お目にかける・ご覧に入れる
訪問する	お出でになる・訪問なさる	伺う・参上する
聞く	お聞きになる (N)	伺う・承る・拝聴する
会う	お会いになる (N)	お目にかかる・お会いする (N)
買う	お求めになる・ご利用になる	お買いする (N)
あげる	おあげになる (N)	差し上げる
くれる	下さる	NOT APPLICABLE
思う・考 える	お考えになる (N) お思いになる (N)	存じる
もらう	おもらいになる (N)	頂く・頂戴する
尋ねる	お尋ねになる (N)	伺う・参上する
着る	お召しになる・ご着用なさる	着させていただく (N)
教える	お教えになる (N)	ご案内する
承知する	ご承知なさる・ご理解なさる	かしこまる
寝る	お休みになる	寝させていただく (N)
許す	ご容赦なさる・お許しになる (N)	許させていただく (N)
死ぬ	お亡くなりになる	死なさせていただく (N)

Usage Notes:

1. As for 行く, if the speaker is going to the place of the addressee, 伺う is used instead of 参る. Also, 参上する and 上がる can be used in both contexts but are not as common.
2. 拝見する is only used if the item belongs to the addressee.
3. ご容赦なさる means "to pardon".
4. ご尽力なさる = "to be instrumental in".
5. One could say that phrases like お亡くなりになる are just regular honorific forms of euphemisms.
6. 訪ねる can also be お邪魔する in humble speech.
7. お上がりになる is seen a lot in お上がりです and お上がりなさい.

8. 申し上げる & 申す are not 100% the same. Although the first is even more humble, it is showing respect to someone in which an action is being extended to.

1a. わたくしはスミスと申し上げます。X

1b. わたくしはスミスと申します。○

I am Smith.

9. 亡くなる relates to 無くなる, 失くす, and 亡くす. Here we have a classic battle between script and nuance.

無くなる is a more literary spelling for the intransitive verb なくなる, which comes from the 連用形 of the adjective 無い・ない and the verb なる. It can be used to show that something has become no longer in existence, or something is used up, something is lost.

2. 時間がなくなった。

Time has run up.

Spelling Note: When なくなる is used for ないようになる (to become not...), it is viewed as being separate and is not written in Kanji.

亡くなる comes from the same source as above but refers to the passing away of an individual in a **respectful**/euphemistic fashion.

3. いつお亡くなりになりましたか。(Honorific; superfluous to some because of the doubling of なる)

When did [he] die?

無くす = 失(く)す = (喪す). It is the transitive form of above and has the following definitions.

1. To lose something that you've had up till now.

2. To get rid of a bad situation.

3. When used in the sense of 亡くす (see below), it can be spelled as 喪す.

However, due to the government's attempts to lower spelling options, it is no longer prevalent.

4. 財布をなくしてしまう。

To accidentally lose one's wallet.

5. 不正をなくす。

To get rid of injustice.

亡くす is being died on by someone in your loved ones, and losing that individual. This comes from 亡く + す(る) as expected of the same source as 無くす, which can be broken down likewise.

6. 幼時に父を亡くす。

To lose one's father in early childhood.

Now, we have 失う・喪う. It has a lot of commonalities with the transitive なくす. Thus, there is heavy interchangeability between the two.

1. To lose something that had been in your possession or on you(r person).
2. To lose the chance at getting something.
3. To be gone from having been taken/stolen from (you).
4. To end up not knowing the path to take.
5. To lose (a loved one). This is where the spelling 喪う comes into play.
7. {バランス・視力・昇進の機会} を失う。
To lose {balance/eyesight/the chance of promotion}.
8. 交通事故で7人の命が {失・喪} われました。
Seven lives were lost in the traffic accident.
9. 鍵が {無くなる・なくなる} 。
For the key to be lost/disappear/be gone.
10. 鍵を {なくす・無くす・失(く)す・失う} 。
To lose a key.

Nuance Note: 鍵を失う sounds more like the key has been in your possession or on your person for a significant period of time.

Contractions with ～ます

Though it may seem counter-intuitive for there to be contractions in honorifics, it turns out that there are with ～ます when attached to the 連用形 of a handful of 五段 verbs that end in る.

いらっしゃる→いらっ	仰る→仰います	下さる→	ござる→ござ	なさる→なさ
しゃいます	下さいます		います	います

Examples

11. クッキーを召し上がりませんか。
Will you have a cookie?
12. ありがとうございます。じゃあ、ひとつだけいただきます。
Thank you very much. Well then, I'll just have one.
13. 「野山先生でいらっしゃいますか」「はい、そうですが」「益田と申しますが、ちょっと伺いたいことがあるんですが」
"Are you Noyama Sensei?" "Yes, I am" "I'm Masuda. May I ask you something?"
14. 「この写真をご覧になりますか」「ええ、ぜひ拝見したいです」
"Will you see the photo?" "Yes, I definitely want to see it".

Sound Change Note: A similar sound change occurs with the imperatives of these verbs. れ → い. So, for example, 仰る → 仰れ → 仰い. The original imperative is quite old-fashioned for these verbs.

おいでになる VS いらっしゃる

おいでになる is the honorific version of 行く, いる, and 来る. It is common to see おいで as a command for 行く and 来る. This is a contraction of おいでなさい. おいで in some contexts behaves like いる.

15. お子様はおいででしょうか。
Do you have children?

16. ちょっと寄っておいで。
Drop by for a bit.

17. 何名おいでですか。
How many people are there?

18. ご主人は酔っておいでです。
Your husband is drunk.

19. 我慢しておいでなさい。
Have patience.

Unlike おいでになる, いらっしゃる, the contraction of いらせられる, may be used to make adjectives honorific! The pattern for this is "お～ Adjective 連用形 + ていらっしゃる". Lastly, いらっしゃる is in でいらっしゃる, the honorific copula.

20. お若くていらっしゃいます。
You are young.

21. そちら（の方）は彼の友人でいらっしゃいます。
He is his friend.

22. どちら様でいらっしゃいますか。
Who is this?

Differences

おいでになる may be seen as おいで and おいでなさい to call someone over or to tell someone to go. いらっしゃい, on the other hand, means "welcome!". いらっしゃる is used to make the progressive. When おいでになる is used similarly, it shows some sort of state and is normally seen as おいで in this case.

Honorific Progressive

So, ～ている is how you make the progressive. In humble speech, you use ～ておる, and in honorific speech you use ～ていらっしゃる. If you want to be

extremely honorific, you combine this with the honorific form of a verb. So, you have two big changes to the verb. Only one is necessary to make something honorific. Therefore, these extremely long variants are often not used as much.

23. この雑誌を読んでいらっしゃいますか。
Are you reading this magazine?

24. 何をお作りになっいらっしゃいますか。
What are you making?

25. 何もしていません。
I am not doing anything.

The Problems with Making a Command with 敬語

In Classical Japanese, it was very common and completely proper to make a command like 書かせたまえ because Double 敬語 was used. Sadly, however, this reasoning and direct command to a superior in the first place have become bad in Modern Japanese.

With all the ways to tell someone in Japanese aside from the 命令形 further complicated by the need to be as polite and indirect as possible to superiors, Japanese has developed many ways to say single commands with various degrees of politeness and uses.

It is impossible to list all possible euphemisms of some expressions, but just with the verb 来る, 23 phrases related to its command form 来い can be cited. The following chart is a chart modified from 敬語マニュアル (1996) by 浅田秀子. This is not all powerful, and it doesn't take long to think of counterexamples, but that I will leave you the reader to ponder on.

#	「来い」の表現	対象 (Object)	文体 (Writing Style)	尊敬度 (Level of Respect)	新密度 (Level of intimacy)
1	来い	Various		0%	100%
2	来るの・来るんだ	子供・目下	会話	5%	95%
3	来ること	目下	文章	10%	90%
4	来なさい	目下・子供	会話	15%	85%
5	来るように	目下		20%	80%
6	来てくれ	同輩・目下	会話	25%	75%
7	来てちょうだい	目下・子供	会話	30%	70%
8	来てほしい	目下	会話	35%	65%

9	来て	同輩・目下	会話	40%	60%
10	来てください	他人	会話	45%	55%
11	おいでなさい	目下	会話	50%	50%
12	おいで	目下・子供	会話	55%	45%
13	いらっしゃい	目下・子供	会話	60%	40%
14	いらっしゃいませ	同輩・他人	会話	65%	35%
15	おいでください	同輩・他人		70%	30%
16	いらしてください	同輩・他人		75%	25%
17	おいでを乞う	目上・他人	文章	80%	20%
18	おいでいただき たい	目上・他人		85%	15%
19	おいで願いたい	目上・他人	文章	90%	10%
20	お運びいただき たい	目上	文章	93%	7%
21	御足労いただき たい	目上	文章	96%	4%
22	御来臨を賜りたい	VIP	文章	98%	2%
23	御来駕賜りたい	VIP	文章	100%	~0%

Respectfulness is not necessarily the same thing as politeness, and it's definitely hard to define all of these expressions in one chart. So, please keep all of what you know about Japanese in mind. Just to think, this chart doesn't even have 来させ給え!

Other Conjugations

The volitional, conditional, provisional, potential, and the "must" patterns must be used with the exceptional verbs if they exist.

26. ご意見をいただけると助かります。(Potential)
We would appreciate your comments.

26. よろしかったら明日伺います。(～たら Conditional)
I will be over tomorrow if you like.

27. 彼のご意見を伺ったところ、彼はその件に対してあまり快く思っていないようです。

Having asked his opinion, he seemed to not be pleased about the case.

28. 伝言を伺いましょうか。 (Volitional)

Shall I take a message?

29. 是非伺いたく存じます。 (With ～たい)

I would like to come.

30. 長らくお待たせいたしました。 (Causative)

I am sorry to have kept you waiting so long.

31. ご質問がございましたら、今承ります。 (～たら Conditional)

I will take questions now if you have them.

32. 早くこちらへいらっしゃい。 (Imperative)

Come here quickly.

Many More Examples

These sentences range from rather simple expressions, some of which you've already seen before, to far more complex sentences. Take note in how conjugations, particles, and other things work in honorifics.

33. 玉稿を賜る。(古風)

To be granted your honorable manuscript.

34. お手紙を拝受いたしました。

I received your letter.

35. よくおいでくださいました。

Thank you for taking the time to come.

36. お刺し身をいただきます。

I will eat sashimi.

38. お部屋をご覧になりますか。

Would you look in the room?

39. ご迷惑をおかけして、本当に申し訳なく存じます。

I appreciate all your trouble.

40. 長らくご無沙汰して申し訳ございません。

I am terribly sorry for my long absence.

41. あの方を存じ上げません。

I don't know that person.

42. 明日お目にかかります。

I'll see you tomorrow.

42. 初めまして、十和田と申します。

Nice to meet you. My name is Towada.

43. 自分は専門家だなどと生意気なことは申しません。

I don't profess to be an expert.

44. 手品をお目にかけます。

I'll show you a trick.

45. 彼が心配していらっしゃることをもう存じております。

I already know that he's worrying.

46. ご入用でしたら差し上げます。

You may have it for the asking.

47. こちらの本を差し上げましょう。

I shall give you this book.

48. 日本にいついらっしゃいましたか。

When did you come to Japan?

49. 弟が参っております。

62. 心中お察しいたします。

My sympathies are with you.

63. 喜んで参ります。

I'll be happy to come.

64. 明日そちらへ持って参ります。

I'll bring it to you tomorrow.

65. 栄光に存じます。

It is an honor.

66a. 以降お見知り置きを

66b. 以後お見知り置きください。

I look forward to getting to know you.

66. 冥利に尽きます。

I am quite lucky.

67. 工場をご案内申し上げます。

I will give you a tour of the factory.

68. 私たちは伊藤さんにお話しいただきました。

We were told a story by Mr. Ito.

69. そんなに仰らないでください。私はただ当たり前のことをしたまででございます。

Please don't say such. I merely did what was natural.

70. 月曜日にどちらへいらっしゃいますか。

Where are you going Monday?

71. 結構なお品を賜り、ありがとうございます。

We are thankful for receiving from you these excellent items.

72. 陛下がお言葉を賜る。

To receive His Majesty's words.

73. 思し召してご容赦下さい。

Please forgive me for thinking such.

74. そちらをお断りなさいました。

(He) rejected it.

75. お手数おかけしますが。

I hate to be a burden.

76. 京都から参りました。

瀧野と女中との対話の抜粋

This excerpt is from a conversation between Takino-san and a 女中. 女中 is now a politically incorrect word for maid/female servant. However, the use of 敬語 by 女中 is quite intriguing in literature. This piece is a typical example of male characters speaking in casual speech while the female combines feminine spoken language aspects to her 敬語.

90.

「瀧野さん今晚、金彌にお約束なすってるの？」

"Takino-san, do you have a engagement with Kanaya tonight?"

「うん」

"Yes"

と、彼はとっさにうなづいた。

He promptly acknowledged.

「そうならそうと、早く仰って下さればいいのに」

"It would be nice if you would say that you did early".

Variant Note: なすっている is still a commonly used variant of なさっている, but it is typically viewed as dialectical and or not exactly proper. However, many people, especially in the older population, use this variant as it is common throughout East Japan.

読み物: Letter in 敬語

91.

わたしは若葉学園の卒業生です。都合によって本名が名乗れないのは残念ですが、愛校心は人一倍強うございます。今は大阪で家庭の者となっていますが、母校のことは一日も忘れたことはありません。

I am a graduate of Wakaba Academy. By convenience, I regret not being able to have my real name known, but my school spirit is twice that of most people. I am now a housewife in Osaka, but I haven't forgotten a day of my old school.

92.

このような手紙を出すのをずいぶん迷いましたが、愛校心のため思い切って書くことにいたしました。

I wavered at sending such a letter for a while, but due to school spirit, I daringly decided to write it.

93.

先日のことでございます。わたくしは三重県の鳥羽に主人といっしょに子供をつれて参り、あるホテルに泊まりました。そのホテルは鳥羽湾を見渡す景色のいい所でございます。わたくしが朝、飽かずに海のほうを眺めておりますと、ふと、下の道を通る男女づれが眼に止まりました。そして思わず、あっ、と叫んだことでございます。

It was the other day. I went together with my husband and children to Toba in Mie Prefecture, and we stayed at a certain hotel. The hotel is a scenic place to survey Toba Bay. When I was untiringly looking towards the ocean, suddenly, my eyes stopped on a man and woman company passing through the street below. And, without even thinking I let out an "ah".

94.

ここから書くのは忍びないことですが、今も申した通り、愛校心のために勇を鼓して書くことにします。その男の方は若葉学園の大島理事長さんです。それから、同伴の女性はなんと学生課の秋山千鶴子さんではありませんか。秋山さんは、わたくしの在学中、よくその顔を見ておりますし、それに秋山さんに呼びつけられて叱言を喰ったことがありますので、よく存じあげています。

From here I can't bring myself to write, but as I've said now, I will write due to school spirit and take it to heart. That man is Wakaba Academy's Board Chairman Ohshima. And, the female companion was none other than Chizuko Akiyama of the student affairs office. I saw her face a lot when I was at school. Also, I have been called on and scolded on by Ms. Akiyama. So, I know well.

95.

わたくしは、そのとき自分の眼を疑いました。まさか大島理事長と秋山さんが、こんな所を仲よくアベックで散歩しているとは思いませんでした。でも、眼を凝らして見ると、まさにお二人に間違いありません。朝のことでしたが、お二人は手をつなぎ合って、まるで若い恋人同士のようにでした。

I doubted my own eyes at that time. I didn't think that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama were walking nicely together as a couple in a place like this. When I tried to fixate my eyes on them, there was no doubt that it was the exact two. Although it was the morning, the two were holding hands and looking just like two young lovers.

96.

わたくしは大島理事長が秋山さんと結婚したことも聞かないし、また大島理事長が奥さんを亡くされたことも承っておりません。わたくしはぼんやりとお二人のうしろ姿を見送っておりました。

I haven't heard that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama have married, and I haven't heard that his wife has passed. I absent-mindedly saw the two off from behind.

97.

それでも、わたくしはお二人がそういうお仲になっているとは信じられず、あるいは学生の引率でこられて、その間の軽い気持の散歩だと信じたかったのです。けれど、ホテルのフロントにきいてみて、お二人の名前もまったく違うし、もちろん、学生の引率でもないことを知って、眼の前が暗くなりました。

Even so, I couldn't believe that the two were together, and I wanted to believe that perhaps it was a walk with light emotion with them coming as student escorts. But, when I checked at the front desk, the two's names were completely different, and I knew that they were obviously not student escorts, and the front of my eyes darkened.

This passage is an excerpt from 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張, one of the best novelists in Modern Japanese literature. This section was in quotations, so other things you would expect with a letter were omitted. Although some of the wording may be somewhat old-fashioned, this passage is a great demonstration of how 敬語 is typically used.

読み物 2

Though older literature may have older 敬語, such 敬語 is typically viewed as the "purest" form of it, if such thing even exists in a realistic sense. Regardless, there are many things that you can learn about 敬語 usage in reading texts and listening to dialogues. The following is the first page of the famous story 雪国 by 川端康成.

Not all of this passage is in 敬語, but it's important to have preceding context if possible. The spelling of the original text has been altered to be more of use to you. Blocks of text will be given Japanese and then English by the original paragraph spacing of the text. Translating this passage in particular into English has caused many controversies, but the translations provided try to adhere to the original meaning of the text as close as possible while still sounding natural in English.

98.

国境の長いトンネルを抜けると雪国であった。夜の底が白くなった。信号所に止まった。

Once (they) came out of the long border tunnel, there was the Land of Snow. The depths of the night had turned white. The train stopped at the signal station.

99.

向う側の座席から娘が立って来て、島村のガラス窓を落とした。雪の冷気が流れこんだ。娘は窓いっぱいに乗り出して、遠くへ叫ぶように、
「駅長さあん、駅長さあん」

A young lady stood up and came over from the seat on the other side and opened the glass window in front of Shimamura. The cold snowy air rushed in. The girl leaned all out of the window, and as if she were yelling afar, she shouted "Conductor, conductor".

100.

明かりをさげてゆっくり雪を踏んで来た男は、襟巻で鼻の上まで包み、耳に帽子の毛皮を垂れていた。

A man who had slowly walked there in the snow covered himself to the top of his nose with a scarf and had a cap pelt drooping on his ears.

101.

もうそんな寒さかと島村は外を眺めると、鉄道の官舎らしいバラックが山裾に寒々と散らばっているだけで、雪の色はそこまで行かぬうちに闇に吞まれていた。

When Shimamura gazed outside, thinking it had already gotten that cold, railroad residence-looking barracks were just desolately dispersed at the foot of the mountains, and before the snow hues could reach that far, the barracks were swallowed by darkness.

102. 駅長さん、私です、御機嫌よろしゅうございます。」

“Conductor, it’s me. How do you do?”.

103. ああ、葉子さんじゃないか。お帰りかい。また寒くなったよ。」

“Ah, why isn’t it Youko? Welcome home, it’s gotten cold again”.

104. 弟が今度こちらに勤めさせていただいておりますのですってね。お世話さまですわ。」

“I heard that my younger brother has been allowed to work here next time. Thank you for your care”.

105. 「こんなところ、今に寂しくて参るだろうよ。若いのに可哀想だな。」

“He’ll probably be lonely and troubled before long now. He’s pitiful yet so young.

106. 「ほんの子供ですから、駅長さんから教えてやっていただいて、よろしく願いますわ。」

“Since he’s merely a kid, I ask that you teach him well, Conductor”.

葉子’s language is indicative of 敬語 speech in the early half of the 20th century. The rule that polite endings should not have 連体形 didn't really exist then, and even today, this rule is still ignored. As you can also see from this passage, traditional feminine speech is maintained even in 敬語. This is now not really the case anymore for obvious post-modern attitude changes towards the role of women.

紹介

107. 葉山先生をご紹介します。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、

ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。

最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。

この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくださいます。

昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしくお願いいたします。

1. Who is being introduced?

2. When did Hayama visit Nagoya University?

3. Where did Hayama graduate from for graduate school?

4. Where did Hayama teach Japanese for a long time?

5. What song is she going to be singing in English?

6. Underline the honorific speech. Change the person being introduced to your friend, and then change the honorific speech to polite speech.

リー先生

108.リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思ったのですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。毎日遅くまで研究室にいるので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.
2. Change the underlined parts to an appropriate form.
3. What does Lee think about America?
4. What does Lee not like to do often?
5. Why is it that "we" can visit Lee whenever?

Keys

紹介: Key

1. Hayama Sensei is being introduced.
2. Hayama visited Nagoya University five years ago.
3. Hayama graduated from Washington University for graduate school.
4. Hayama taught Japanese in Canada for a long time.
5. She is to sing "Shouting Star".
6. 葉山先生をご紹介いたします。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくださいます。
昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしくお願いいたします。

友達の_____を紹介します。_____は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強した後、ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていましたが、五年前に名古屋大学に来ました。最近はとても忙しくて、テレビを見る時間もないと言っています。この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくれます。昨日も家で練習したそうです。じゃあ、_____、よろしくお願いします。

リー先生: Key

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.

リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思ったのですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。毎日遅くまで研究室にいるので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

2. リー先生は、韓国語を教えていらっしゃいます。韓国からいらっしゃったばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいとお思いになったのですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと仰っています。

スポーツはあまりなさらないそうですが、音楽がお好きだそうです。
毎日遅くまで研究室にいらっしゃるので、いつ行ってもお会いできます。

3. Lee thinks that it is easier to live in America than Korea.

4. Lee doesn't play sports often.

5. Lee is always in his office.

第129課: What & When

In this lesson, we will take a second yet closer look at the words for “what” and “when.” This time, we will look at how to express these words outside of polite speech, in which case some variation will have to be taken into consideration.

What

When looking up “what” in plain speech, most people will find that the expression is *なんだ*. As you can see, *なに* becomes *なん*. This is because /ni/ becomes /n/ to make pronunciation easier. This causes some problems, but for now, let's see how *なんだ* is used.

1. 何なんだ？

What (do you want/is it)?

Sentence Note: Ex. 1 would most likely be said by a male speaker. All by itself, *なんだ* shows irritation at someone.

2. 何なんだよ！

What the heck!

Sentence Note: Ex. 2 also shows irritation, which is amplified with the use of the particle *よ*. With that being the case, this isn't a literal question.

Of course, we already know that *なん* is the form you use in polite speech. This is simply because *です* also starts with /d/.

3. 趣味しゅみは何なんですか。

What are your hobbies?

4. お仕事しごとは何なんですか。

What is your job?

5. 神かみの王国おうこくとは何なんですか。

What is “God's kingdom”?

Grammar Note: The use of *とは* is meant to seek a definition of what precedes it.

When not used in isolation, なんだ isn't limited to irritated responses. Rather, the question tends to be philosophical. They also tend to be more commonly stated this way in the written language, but you can imagine sentences like Ex. 4 being spoken in slightly dramatic soliloquies.

6. 人間にんげんとは何なんだ。
What is *mankind*?

Another neat phrase that utilizes なん instead of なに is なんぞや. This utilizes pretty old grammar, which means most people typically only use it when they're purposely trying to sound old-fashioned, but it can also be seen in things like textbooks to draw attention to a topic. For instance, if you see a heading that says "What is biochemical engineering?" you might see this used.

7. 我われとは何なんぞや。
What am I?

Word Note: Keep in mind that 我 is the original word meaning "I" in Japanese and is still occasionally used in purposely old-fashioned expressions such as in Ex. 7.

In isolation, 何 is how "what" is usually expressed in casual expressions. Kids and female speakers tend to drag out the /a/, resulting in な～に, but this isn't common in male speech. なんなの, however, tends to show up as well. This adds more emphasis to getting an explanation for "what" something is.

Of course, as a regular noun that can take on any case particles, you use なに. At the end of a sentence, it is rarely followed by the particle か. When it is, the question sounds as if it is a part of narration or the title of some discussion in some form of presentation/writing.

8. お土産みやげは何なにがいいですか。
What would be good for souvenirs?

9. あれって何なに？
What is that?

10. 津波つなみとは何なにか。
What is a tsunami?

With some particles, なに may emphatically alternatively become なんに with certain particles, particularly も. However, it's also important to note that the combination にでも causes なに to become なん most of the time (as seen in Ex. 12).

11. いや、な（ん）にもない。
Oh, no, it's nothing.

12. 何なんにでも成なれるよ。
You can become anything.

In compounds, なん and なに are used in fundamentally different situations. なん is used with counter phrases to mean “how many...” なに is used to mean “what kind...” There is one exception in particular that must be noted, which is 何曜日 (what day of the week?). Although its traditional reading is なによび, it is most frequently pronounced as なんよび. This is because most speakers find this reading easier to pronounce. Now, let's return to the main difference between these two readings with the following examples.

13. 全部ぜんぶで何色なんしょくありますか。
In total, how many colors are there?

14. デンマークの国旗こっきは、22色使ししょくつかわれている。
As for the national flag of Denmark, two colors are used.

15. 何色なにいろのペンキを買ったらいいですか。
What color paint should I buy?

16. 何色なにいろに見えますか。
What color does it look like?

17. 日本にほんには全部ぜんぶで何県なんけんありますか。
In total, how many prefectures are there in Japan?

Phrase Note: Most people will answer this question by giving the number of prefectures that are actual 県, not those that are 都道府.

18. 竹島たけしまは何県なにけんにありますか。
What prefecture is Takeshima in?

19. 何部なにぶに所属しよぞくしてるの？
What club/department do you belong to?

20. 何部なんぶくらい作つくればいいですか。
About how many copies should I make?

21. 彼かれは何人なにじんですか。
What nationality is he?

22. 兄弟きょうだいは何人なんにんいますか。
How many siblings do you have?

なにで vs なんで

One rather difficult challenge presented by “what” that confuses students is the difference between なにで and なんで. The use of the particle で here is used to show means/method/composition. In this sense, なにで is almost always the reading used.

23. 口紅くちべにの色いろはなにで決まる？
What determines the color of lipstick?

24. このジュースってなにで作ったの？
What did you make this juice with?

25. 爪つめは何なにで出来できているの？
What are nails made of?

26. 入試にゅうしに出でる漢字かんじは、なにで勉強べんきょうすればいいですか。
What should I use to study with for the Kanji that appear in the entrance exam?

27. 構文こうぶんは何なにで勉強べんきょうすればいいんでしょうか。
What should I use to study with for sentence structure?

Pronunciation Note: なにで may alternatively be replaced with なんで. However, most speakers avoid this as なんで typically means "why?" Although なんで seldom replaces なにで, it does occasionally happen in contexts regarding transportation.

28.

坂井さかい：「定村さだむらさん、いつ横浜支社よこはまししゃに行いきますか。」

定村さだむら：「水曜日すいようびに行いきます。」

坂井さかい：「{なにで・なんで} 行いきますか。」

定村さだむら：「飛行機ひこうきで行きます。」

Sakai: Mr. Sadamura, when will you be going to the Yokohama office?

Sadamura: I'm going on Wednesday.

Sakai: [By what means/how] will you be going?

Sadamura: I'm going by plane.

As for other means to say "how," there is a caveat to using なにで over the usual どうやって or some other expression. As stated above, it simply asks by what means someone travels. The answer shouldn't describe manner.

29. なにで来きたの？
How'd you get here?

30. どうやって来きたの？
How did you come?

Sentence Note. In Ex. 30, the question is open-ended enough for the listener to respond with something like "by camouflaging myself," which would be an inappropriate response to Ex. 31.

31. なにを使つかって来きたの？
What did you use to come here?

Sentence Note: In Ex. 31, the question is out-of-place as a typical question one would ask in Japanese, but if you were to ask this to someone, you would inevitably get a smart-alecky reply on the lines of "by using my legs."

In the same vein of thought, even when a verb primarily used for movement is used in a different sense, なにで・なんで can be seen, again, with なにで being most preferred.

32. さて、何で行きますか。
Alright, what will we go with?

When

The three expressions that you will need to pay most attention to not confuse are いつ (when?), 何時 (what time?), and 何時間 (how many hours?).

33. いつ寝ねますか。
When do you go to sleep?

34. 何時間寝なんじかんねますか。
How many hours do you sleep?

35. 何時なんじに寝ねますか。
What time do you go to sleep?

36. 会議かいぎはいつ終わりますか。
When does the meeting end?

37. 今日きょうは何時なんじに帰かえるの？
What time will you return home today?

38. 人類じんるいが火星かせいに行きょうけるようになるのはいつだろうか。
When will mankind become able to go to Mars, I wonder?

39. いつの間まにか眠ねむり込こんでいた。
I had fallen asleep before I knew it.

Phrase Note: いつの間にか is a set phrase meaning “before one knows it.”

Aside from these three basic expressions, there are also the phrases いつ頃 (about when?) and いつなんどき (at any moment). As you can see, the latter comes from an emphatic version of いつ, which isn't really used in literal questions. However, you may notice that it peculiarly has なんどき in it, which does happen to be an old-fashioned variation of 何時. This is rarely used outside the phrase いつなんどき, but if you do see it elsewhere, the context will be very specialized.

40. いつ頃完成ごろかんせいしますか。
About when will it be completed/you will complete it?

41. 今いま、何なんどきですか。はい、ラーメンどきよ！
What time is it? It's ramen time!

Sentence Note: This was a line to an old ramen commercial on TV. As you

can see, when **なんどき** is used to ask “what time is it” as in what’s supposed to be going on. This, in normal conversation, would be conveyed by **どの時**.

42. **いつなんどき**必要ひつようになるかも知れない。
I also have no clue when it’ll become needed.

43. (何時) 何時事故じこに遭あわないとも限かぎらない。
It is not necessarily the case that you will never get into an accident.

Spelling Note: When written in 漢字, **いつなんどき** usually becomes **いつ何時**, but it may also be written as **何時何時**.

Grammar Note: **～とも限らない** is a verbal expression that follows adjectives/verbs to indicate “it is not necessarily that...”

44. 水分補給すいぶんほきゅうはいつなんどきでも忘わすれないでください。
Don’t ever forget to be hydrated.

第130課: **Who & Where:** 誰, どなた, どちら, どいつ, & どこ

In this lesson, the words we will look at are **誰**, **どなた**, **どちら**, and **どいつ**. After we learn about the words for “who,” we will go over the two words for “where,” **どこ** and **どちら**.

Who's Who?

誰

The basic word for “who,” **誰**, may be used in casual, plain, and polite speech. It is for all intended purposes, the generic word for asking “who” someone is.

1. それは誰だれがやったの？
Who did that?

2. これを誰だれに渡わたせばいいの？
Who should I pass this to?

3. 誰だれに聞きけばいいでしょうか。
Who should I ask?

4. これって誰だれのものですか。
Whose is this?

5. 君きみ、誰だれ？
Who are you?

Sentence Note: This sentence would likely be spoken by a guy in an extremely informal, abrupt fashion, most likely to someone who he views to be inferior to himself.

6. 世界せかいで一番美いちばんうつくしいのは誰だれだい。

Who is the fairest of them all?

Sentence Note: The use of だい at the end of the sentence indicates a rather coarse, abrupt, masculine question. It is rather bombastic and isn't used so much anymore, but you will hear it frequently used in anime, music, etc.

どなた

どなた is the respectful version of 誰. Its purpose is to ask who someone is. However, it is normally not used at someone directly. For instance, you might ask your boss about who someone is by using どなた, but you wouldn't walk up to someone and say どなたですか. However, if you were to ask someone who happened to just appear to you and are perplexed as to who that person is, you could respond with Ex.7

7. (あなた、) どなた (ですか) ?

Who are you?

8. お花はなを下くださったのはどなたですか。

Who is it that gave the flowers?

9. 次つぎの方かたは、どなたですか。

Who is it that's next?

Sentence Note: In Ex. 9, the speaker is merely asking for whoever is next to point himself/herself out. It is almost undoubtedly the case that the speaker knows who the person next is, and it's also likely that the case that the person next is physically near the speaker.

10. すみませんが、責任者せきにんしゃの方かたはどなたですか。

Excuse me, but who is the person in charge?

11. どなたか、このお子こさんをご存知ぞんじの方かたはいらっしゃいませんか。

Anyone, is there someone who knows who this child is?

どちら

When used to mean "who," どちら is almost always used as どちら様. This is used to ask not just who someone is, but also who they are affiliated with. This is because it comes from a *kosoado* which literally means "where?"

Say if you were to receive a phone call from someone you don't know. The natural response in Japanese to this is どちら様ですか. Perhaps you're at work and there is a visitor waiting to see your boss. As a secretary who is in a hurry to tell his/her boss who has come by, you may ask Ex. 12.

12. どちら様さまでいらっしゃいますか。

May I ask who you are?

As you can see, this variation is more respectful. At times, though, it's not always appropriate to ask "who are you?" to a client or someone you should be giving the utmost respect/courtesy. In such a situation, you may wish to use something like in Ex. 13a or 13b.

13a. 失礼しつれいですが、お名前なまえを頂戴ちょうだいできますか。

Excuse me, but could I have your name?

13b. 失礼しつれいですが、お名前なまえを伺うかがえますでしょうか。

Excuse me, but could I ask your name?

どちら様, nevertheless, plays an important role in "who" questions in respectful speech. This is because of how it is nuanced towards asking for affiliation and not just one's personal name.

14. あちらのお方がたはどちら様さまでしょうか。

Who is that person over there (from)?

15. 恐おそれ入いますが、本日ほんじつのご来店らいてんはどちら様さまのご紹介
しょうかいですか。

Pardon me, but who was it that introduced you to come to our store today?

16. どちら様までご連絡差れんらくさし上あげればよろしいでしょうか。

Who should I get in contact with?

17. 「すみません。電話中でんわちゅうですので折おり返かえします。」 「あ、わかった」 「どちら様さまで？ 念ねんのために電話番号でんわばんごうをお願いがいします。」

"I apologize, but I will need to call you back because I'm on the phone." "Oh, ok." "To whom am I speaking? Just in case, may I have your phone number?"

18. 「恐おそれ入いますが、お名前なまえとご連絡先れんらくさきをお聞ききしてもよろしいでしょうか。」

"Pardon me, but may I ask your name and contact information?"

どなた様

どなた様ですか is also a thing. As you can see from the examples below, it's used as the respectful form of 誰 in very honorific yet indirect circumstances.

19. どなた様さまか存ぞんじませんが、先程さきほどご親切しんせつに道案内みちあん
ないをしていただいた方かたにお礼れいを申もうし上あげたいのですが。

I don't know who it was, but I would like to show my appreciation to the person I had kindly show me the way a moment ago.

20. どなた様にお送りいたしますか。

Who should I send it to?

21. どなた様をお訪ねしたらよろしいですか。

Who should I visit?

22. どなた様でもお申し込みいただけます。
Anyone can apply.

23. どなた様もご利用OK!
It's OK for anyone to use!

Sentence Note: Ex. 23 is indicative of an advertisement.

In Humble Speech

When it's necessary that you humbly ask who in one's company someone wishes to speak to in a business situation, you may use どちらの者.

24. どちらの者ものにご用ようでしょうか。
Who do you have business with?

In reality, you might wish to ask the following question, but there are certainly situations in which asking whom one has business with is appropriate. In Ex. 24, you also implicitly ask about the department of the company the person you are speaking to has business with.

25. どのようなご用件ようけんでしょうか。
What sort of business do you have (with us)?

When asking someone who you need to call, you could just use 誰. どの者 may also be used, but some speakers find this to be stiff. Because this is a humble setting, there is no grammatical need to use anything more than 誰.

26. {誰だれ・どの者もの} をお呼よび致いたしましょうか。
Who shall I call for you?

Rude Language: どいつ

Although outdated outside of certain set expressions, another word for "who" is どいつ. If you think this sounds like ドイツ (Germany), you'd be right. Japanese people also love making puns with it because of this!

27. 噂うわさの女おんなはどいつだ。
Who's the rumored woman?

28. どいつでもいいんじゃない!
Just anyone's not alright!

29. どいつもこいつもドイツ人じんだ!
Every last one of them is a German!

Grammar Note: This word creates a *kosoado* series, as is indicated by こいつ.

Where

The basic word for "where" is どこ. Aside from just meaning "where," it can also mean "what part?" or ask about to "what extent" something has gone. You can see how these nuances relate to each other in the examples below.

30. トイレはどこですか。

Where is the bathroom?

31. 三上みかみさんはどこですか。

Where is Mr. Mikami?

32. どこに住すんでるの？

Where do you live?

33. どこが悪わるいの？

What (part) is wrong about (that/it)?

34. どこも痛いたくありません。

It doesn't hurt anywhere.

35. どここの職場しょくばでも人間関係にんげんかんけいがうまくいかない。

No matter the work place, my relations with people don't go well.

36. どこまで進すすんでいるか教おしえてくれない？

Could you tell me how far you've progressed?

37. iPhoneのどこがいいですか。

What part of the iPhone is good?

どちら

As mentioned, どちら literally refers to "where." This is seen in respectful language.

38. どちらへお泊とまりでしょうか。

Where will you be staying?

39. どちらへ行いかれますか。

Where are you going?

40. どちらへおかけですか。

Where will you sit?

41. ご出身しゅっしんはどちらですか。

May I ask where you were born?

42. ご住所じゅうしょはどちらですか。

May I ask for your address?

43. エスカレーターはどちらですか。

Where is the escalator?

44. 制服ってどちらで買えるんですか。

Where can you buy uniforms?

45. 「王さんのお国くにはどちらですか。」 「台湾たいわんです。」

“Mr. Wang, what is your country of origin?” “Taiwan.”

Reading Note: 王 is a Chinese surname. When read the Japanese way, people will read and refer to someone with this surname as オウ. If using a Mandarin rendition, people will refer to that person as ワン. If using the Cantonese rendition, people will refer to that person as ウォン.

第131課: Why: なぜ, どうして, & なんで

The words for “why” in Japanese are relatively easy to understand, but in Japanese culture, “why” questions are frequently avoided so as not to be too direct, pushy, or rude. Sometimes, asking why can be offensive or uncalled for. Nevertheless, asking why is also sometimes unavoidable. As such, we will spend time looking at the words for “why” so that you can both ask and be asked why.

なぜ

The basic word for “why?” in Japanese is なぜ. In 漢字, this is spelled as 何故. For the most part, なぜ is logically/objectively based. This makes it appropriate for all speech styles, although tone will drastically change how people perceive it.

To use these words grammatically, there are a few places where なぜ can be placed. When at the front of the sentence, the topic of the question is marked by は. The sentence itself ends in some form of のか. の is usually contracted to ん in the spoken language, but in the written language this is generally not the case.

1. なぜ地球ちきゅうは丸まるいのですか。

Why is the Earth round?

2. なぜ方言ほうげんや訛なまりなどが生うまれたのですか。また、なぜ東京とうきょうの方言ほうげんは標準語ひょうじゅんごなのですか。

Why do dialects, accents, and the like come into existence? Also, why is the dialect of Tokyo the standard dialect?

3. 空そらはなぜ青あおいの？

Why is the sky blue?

Grammar Note: As Ex. 3 demonstrates, the topic and なぜ can be flipped with no changes made to particle usage in the sentence.

4. なぜワシントン州しゅうに引っ越こすんですか。

Why did you move to the State of Washington?

Grammar Note: Ex. 4 would be spoken, not written. The question innocently asks why the person in question moved to the State of Washington. The question does not imply interrogation or pressure for the person to spill some sort of truth.

A college classmate lover began dating another woman, and she couldn't fathom that she herself was dumped and why the person chosen was some other person and not herself.

5. ちなみになぜこの商品しょうひんを気きに入いって頂いただいたのですか？
By the way, why did you take interest in this product?

6. お金かねが貯まる人ひとはなぜ時間じかんの使つかい方がたがうまいのか。
Why is it that people whose money is being saved up good at using time?

Nuance Note: Ex. 6 sounds as if it is a header to some document/post. It is not the plain speech のか that you hear in coarse conversations. That usage is to be seen shortly in this lesson.

7. 同おなじアマゾン内ないで、同おなじ商品しょうひんなのに価格かかくが違ちがうのはなぜですか。
In Amazon itself, why is it that something may be the same product but have a different price?

8. なぜ、この言葉ことばを聞きくと不快ふかいに思おもってしまうのでしょうか？
“Why,” do you not feel uncomfortable when you hear this word?

Nuance Note: As with any word in Japanese, “why” can also be the word of conversation.

9. なぜなら、答こたえは、自分じぶんのすぐ「隣となり」にあったからです。
That is because the answer is right *beside* oneself.

Grammar Note: When used with the particle なら, なぜ is used to explain reasoning. You can see it as literally meaning “if you ask why...”

In Ex. 10 and Ex. 11, なぜ is used in embedded questions. It is typically the word of choice in this situation due its objective nature.

10. 彼女かのじょは、大学だいがくの同級生どうきゅうせいである恋人こいびとが、別べつの女おんなと交際こうさいをはじめて、自分じぶんは捨すてられた、なぜ選えられたのが他方たほうであり自分じぶんでないのかがどう考かんがえても分わからなかった。

A college classmate's lover began dating another woman, and she couldn't fathom that she herself was dumped and why the person chosen was some other person and not herself.

11. 皆みながなぜ、いきなり集団しゅうだんヒステリーのように泣なき出出したのか、不思議ふしぎでたまらなかった。
It was a wonder to me why everyone started suddenly crying out in mass hysteria.

We as humans intuitively infer the tone of a question based on its content. Below, each example is confrontational. This is when なぜ will go from sounding objective and calm to sounding confrontational and out of anger.

12. 「なぜ遅刻ちこくをしたの？」

“Why were you late?”

13. 「なぜ気付きづかなかったの？」

“Why didn’t you notice?”

14. 「なぜ忘わすれてきたんだ？」

“Why did you come and forget it?”

なにゆえ

As you may have noticed, the characters of 何故 imply that it should normally be read as なにゆえ. It just so happens that this is also a valid reading, but it is an archaism. Its place in Modern Japanese is relegated to jokingly sounding old-fashioned like in Ex. 15 or in neo-classical contexts.

15. なにゆえここに君きみがいるのか。

Why is it that you are here?

どうして

どうして is likely the word for “why” you have incidentally heard over and over. This is because it is far more frequently emotionally based. It also happens to be somewhat more casual than なぜ as an effect.

This word is composed of どう meaning “how/in what way?” and して, the gerund of する. Thus, it intrinsically means “how.” This is demonstrated in the following examples.

16. 毎朝まいあさはどうして時間じかんを潰つぶそうかと考かんがえていた。

Every morning I pondered how I would pass the time.

Grammar Note: When used with the volitional form + the particle か, the meaning of “how” becomes especially obvious.

17. どうして僕ぼくが試験しけんを受うかったって知しってますか？

Do you know how I passed the exam?

Sentence Note: When the sentence ends in “do you know...?” it makes more sense to interpret どうして as “how” rather than “why” because even if you were to rephrase the English translation to use “why” instead, the question still intrinsically revolves around method. This means that even なぜ to some extent may even ask “how” like in Ex. 18.

18. なぜ扇風機せんぷうきは働はたらくのか。

How fans works/how do fans work/why (do) fans work(?)

Sentence Note: Even in English, there is some fluctuation that can be seen between “why” and “how.” The Japanese phrasing could be used in introducing a question of discussion or even as the title of something.

In related phrases, the literal breakdown of どうして meaning “how” becomes even more apparent; especially in どうしても, which either means “no matter what cost” or “no matter what,” the latter being used in a negative connotation.

19. どうしても君きみを失うしなたくない。
I don’t want to lose you no matter what.

20. どうしても納得なっとくできません。
I can’t accept this by any means.

Unlike all other words for “why,” どうして has evolved other usages. Occasionally, you will find it used in complex adverbial phrases with a meaning of “contrary to (expectations).”

21. なかなかどうしてうまくいかないものだ。
Things aren’t going well as expected.

Phrase Note: なかなかどうして is a set phrase which is synonymous with 思おもったより.

22. ちょっと心配しんぱいだったのですが、どうしてなかなかしっかりしてるよ。
I was a little worried, but (it’s) holding quite sturdy contrary to expectations.

Grammar Note: As you can see, for this meaning to make sense, the sentence itself must not be formed as a question but as a declarative statement. Furthermore, for どうして to be used for this meaning, it needs to be followed by some line that brings up a past expectation.

Another grammar pattern that works on the sense of “how” is どうして…られよう (か) . This utilizes the potential form with the ending よう, which you may remember as originally also being used to indicate “surely” like in だろう・でしょう. This means we get an expression on the lines of “how could... possibly...?” It is inherently rhetorical and emphatic.

23. そんな姿すがたを見みてどうして黙だまっていられようか。
How could one stay silent after having seen that appearance?

24. どうして忘わすれられよう。どうして忘わすれていられようか。
How could I forget? How I could I ever forget?

25. こんな世よの中なかでどうして笑わらっていられようか。
How could one ever remain laughing in such a world as this?

26. どうして人ひとの死しを喜よろこんでいられようか。
How could one ever be rejoiceful in the death of another person?

It may come as no surprise that at one point, どうして could also be used as an interjection similar to “oh my!” like in Ex. 27. This, however, is not so common nowadays, but it still readily understood due to its occasional use in writing.

27. どうして、大層たいそうな悪役あくやくぶりだな。
Oh my, what the villain-type you are.

Now, you be may thinking, is どうして used to mean “how”? No, not quite... In the same way the concept of “why” and “how” are intertwined, so is the case with どうして. As a stand-alone sentence, all you need is どうして or the addition of ですか if used in semi-casual polite speech. However, when more is added to the sentence, some form of のか is grammatically necessary.

Remember that unlike なぜ, どうして tends to be emotionally and/or subjectively based. Although it is far more common in conversation due to its semi-casual nature, its overuse will draw upon more emotion than you intend.

28. どうしてですか。
Why (is that)?

29. どうしてまた遅おそくなっただんですか。
Why were you late again?

30. どうして自分じぶんを男おとこだと思おもうんですか。
Why do you see yourself as male?

31. 昨日きのう、どうして来こなかったの？
How come you didn't come yesterday?

Sentence Note: As Ex. 31 demonstrates, it is sometimes more natural to translate どうして as “how come?” This makes the intertwined dichotomy of how-why even more apparent.

32. どうして泣なくの。どうして泣なき止やまない。
Why do you cry? Why do you not stop...?

Sentence Note: The lack of のか, interestingly enough, creates a sense of despair. It also makes it clear that the sentence is part of the speaker's inner monologue. The speaker is distraught. One can imagine the next thought of the speaker being tied to whatever troubles are besieging the person.

33. どうしてあくびが出でるの？
Why are you yawning?

なんで

なんで is composed of 何 meaning “what” and the particle で, which can be seen as marking the instrumental case in this phrase. The instrumental case marks means/method. This means that なんで is akin to “how come?”

なんで is more casual than anything else. It doesn't particularly have any sense of objectivity or subjectivity. This is why it is used heavily in casual conversation. However, just as with the other words for "why," it too can be used in tense situations or in questions based in intimidation. Nevertheless, think of how teenagers say "why" and equate it to how people would generally use なんで. By doing so, and by reviewing the examples below, you should get a good picture of how なんで is used.

Grammatically speaking, a sentence with なんで ends with some form of のか. Without it, the question will sound brisk and abrupt. Of course, in a stand-alone sentence, it can be said by itself or followed by ですか in semi-casual speech.

34. 特とくに、人生経験じんせいけいけん、成功体験せいこうたいけんの少すくない子こどもたちに向むかって、なんで？なぜ？どうして？の間といかけは百害ひゃくがいあって一利いちりなしです。

Especially towards child, who have little life experience and experience succeeding, questioning them with "why, why, why?" brings a hundred harms and not a single gain.

35. なんでテストで100ひゃく点てん取とったんだ？
How come you got a 100 on your test?

Sentence Note: Ex. 35 is an example of how being asked about something good can sound intimidating when seemingly interrogating someone.

36. なんでちゃんとやらないの？
Why won't you do it properly?

37. すごいじゃないか！なんでそんなによかったんだ？
Wow, that's awesome! How come it was so good like that?

38. すごいですね！なんでそんなに好調こうちょうなんですか？
Wow, that's great! How come things are going so well?

39. なんでこれが起おきた？
How come this happened?

40. なんでそうなった？
How did it end up that way?

41. なんで？なんで？
How come? How come?

42. なんでだよ！
How come!?

43. ねーねー？なんで？
Hey, hey... how come?

44. なんでじゃねーんだよ？
Don't you "how come?" me; you hear me?

One grammatical situation that makes **なんで** very similar to **なぜ** but in a far more casual way is when it is used at the end of the sentence to mean “why is that/how come...?”

45. 人間にんげんが跳とべないのは何なんでですか。
Why is it that/how come humans can't jump up?

46. 同おなじ型かたの電車でんしゃでも、ドアどあの開閉速度かいへいそくどが異ことなるのは何なんでですか。
Why is that/how come the opening and closing speed of doors differ even when it's the same model train?

47. 女おんなと男おとこの結婚率けっこんりつが違ちがうのは何なんでですか。
Why is that/how come the marriage rates for men and women are different?

48. 店みせによって違ちがうのは何なんでですか。
Why is that/how come it's different based on the store?

49. 汗あせで白しろシャツの脇わきが黄色きいろくなるのは何なんでなの？
Why is that/how come the sides of white T-shirts become yellow from sweat?

50. 形かたちが違ちがうのは何なんでですか。
Why is that/how come the shape is different?

理由

Another phrase that brings on a translation of “why” is the word for reason, 理由. In English, we say “the reason why...” In Japanese, the word “why” just isn't grammatically needed. The sense of this naturally comes about from 理由 being combined with other phrases.

51. 退職たいしょく（した）理由りゆうを聞きかせてください。
Please let me hear why you left your (previous) job.

52. あなたが人ひとを殺ころした理由りゆうを教おしえてください。
Please tell me why you killed a/the person.

第128課: Honorifics V: Irregular Verbs I

Whereas for most conjugations **する** and **来る** are the only verbs that are irregular, there are many exceptional verbs in honorific speech. Drastic change in conjugation for honorifics makes it more honorific in nature. So, if anything can be drastically changed, it is more preferable.

The Exceptions

Too little information is typically given for irregular honorific verbs. There are definitely a lot of them, and not even all "irregular" honorific verbs are to be mentioned in this section. That's because many are restricted to the written language, and the biggest priority that you should have is know how to use honorifics effectively and correctly in the spoken language.

Chart Note: The chart below illustrates the most important irregularities in respect to 尊敬語 and 謙譲語. When one form is normal, it will be marked with (N) in the chart below. There is no ordering to the chart. Variants often differ in nuance, so the chart is followed by many notes. The most important verbs to remember are in bold.

動詞	尊敬語	謙譲語・謙遜語
行く	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる	参る・伺う・参上する・上がる
来る	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる・見える・お見えになる	参る
いる	いらっしゃる・お出でになる	おる
見る	ご覧になる	拝見する
読む	お読みになる (N)	拝読する
言う	仰る	申す
食べる	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
飲む	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
受ける	お受けになる (N)	拝受する
助ける	ご支援なさる・お助けになる (N)	お手伝いさせていただく
決める	ご決定なさる・お決めになる (N)	決めさせていただく (N)
する	なさる	致す
知る	ご存知だ	存じる・存じ上げる・承知する
知らない	ご存知ない	存じない
知らせる	お知らせになる (N)	お耳に入れる
見せる	お示しになる・お見せになる (N)	お目にかける・ご覧に入れる
訪問する	お出でになる・訪問なさる	伺う・参上する
聞く	お聞きになる (N)	伺う・承る・拝聴する
会う	お会いになる (N)	お目にかかる・お会いする (N)
買う	お求めになる・ご利用になる	お買いする (N)
あげる	おあげになる (N)	差し上げる
くれる	下さる	NOT APPLICABLE
思う・考える	お考えになる (N) お思いになる (N)	存じる
もらう	おもらいになる (N)	頂く・頂戴する
尋ねる	お尋ねになる (N)	伺う・参上する
着る	お召しになる・ご着用なさる	着させていただく (N)
教える	お教えになる (N)	ご案内する

承知する	ご承知なさる・ご理解なさる	かしこまる
寝る	お休みになる	寝させていただく (N)
許す	ご容赦なさる・お許しになる (N)	許させていただく (N)
死ぬ	お亡くなりになる	死なさせていただく (N)

Usage Notes:

1. As for 行く, if the speaker is going to the place of the addressee, 伺う is used instead of 参る. Also, 参上する and 上がる can be used in both contexts but are not as common.
 2. 拝見する is only used if the item belongs to the addressee.
 3. ご容赦なさる means "to pardon".
 4. ご尽力なさる = "to be instrumental in".
 5. One could say that phrases like お亡くなりになる are just regular honorific forms of euphemisms.
 6. 訪ねる can also be お邪魔する in humble speech.
 7. お上がりになる is seen a lot in お上がりです and お上がりなさい.
 8. 申し上げる & 申す are not 100% the same. Although the first is even more humble, it is showing respect to someone in which an action is being extended to.
 - 1a. わたくしはスミスと申し上げます。X
 - 1b. わたくしはスミスと申します。○
I am Smith.
 9. 亡くなる relates to 無くなる, 失くす, and 亡くす. Here we have a classic battle between script and nuance.

無くなる is a more literary spelling for the intransitive verb なくなる, which comes from the 連用形 of the adjective 無い・ない and the verb なる. It can be used to show that something has become no longer in existence, or something is used up, something is lost.

 2. 時間がなくなった。
Time has run up.
- Spelling Note:** When なくなる is used for ないようになる (to become not...), it is viewed as being separate and is not written in Kanji.
- 亡くなる comes from the same source as above but refers to the passing away of an individual in a respectful/euphemistic fashion.

3. いつお亡くなりになりましたか。 (**Honorific**; superfluous to some because of the doubling of なる)

When did [he] die?

無くす = 失 (く) す = (喪す). It is the transitive form of above and has the following definitions.

1. To lose something that you've had up till now.
2. To get rid of a bad situation.
3. When used in the sense of 亡くす (see below), it can be spelled as 喪す. However, due to the government's attempts to lower spelling options, it is no longer prevalent.

4. 財布をなくしてしまう。
To accidentally lose one's wallet.

5. 不正をなくす。
To get rid of injustice.

亡くす is being died on by someone in your loved ones, and losing that individual. This comes from 亡く + す (る) as expected of the same source as 無くす, which can be broken down likewise.

6. 幼時に父を亡くす。
To lose one's father in early childhood.

Now, we have 失う・喪う. It has a lot of commonalities with the transitive なくす. Thus, there is heavy interchangeability between the two.

1. To lose something that had been in your possession or on you(r person).
2. To lose the chance at getting something.
3. To be gone from having been taken/stolen from (you).
4. To end up not knowing the path to take.
5. To lose (a loved one). This is where the spelling 喪う comes into play.

7. {バランス・視力・昇進の機会} を失う。
To lose {balance/eyesight/the chance of promotion}.

8. 交通事故で7人の命が {失・喪} われました。
Seven lives were lost in the traffic accident.

9. 鍵が {無くなる・なくなる} 。
For the key to be lost/disappear/be gone.

10. 鍵を {なくす・無くす・失 (く) す・失う} 。
To lose a key.

Nuance Note: 鍵を失う sounds more like the key has been in your possession or on your person for a significant period of time.

Though it may seem counter-intuitive for there to be contractions in honorifics, it turns out that there are with ～ます when attached to the 連用形 of a handful of 五段 verbs that end in る.

いらっしゃる→いらっ	仰る→仰います	下さる→	ござる→ござ	なさる→なさ
しゃいます	下さいます		います	います

Examples

11. クッキーを召し上がりませんか。

Will you have a cookie?

12. ありがとうございます。じゃあ、ひとつだけいただきます。

Thank you very much. Well then, I'll just have one.

13. 「野山先生でいらっしゃいますか」「はい、そうですが」「益田と申しますが、ちょっと伺いたいことがあるんですが」

"Are you Noyama Sensei?" "Yes, I am" "I'm Masuda. May I ask you something?"

14. 「この写真をご覧になりますか」「ええ、ぜひ拝見したいです」

"Will you see the photo?" "Yes, I definitely want to see it".

Sound Change Note: A similar sound change occurs with the imperatives of these verbs. れ → い. So, for example, 仰る → 仰れ → 仰い. The original imperative is quite old-fashioned for these verbs.

おいでになる VS いらっしゃる

おいでになる is the honorific version of 行く, いる, and 来る. It is common to see おいで as a command for 行く and 来る. This is a contraction of おいでなさい. おいで in some contexts behaves like いる.

15. お子様はおいででしょうか。

Do you have children?

16. ちょっと寄っておいで。

Drop by for a bit.

17. 何名おいでですか。

How many people are there?

18. ご主人は酔っておいでです。

Your husband is drunk.

19. 我慢しておいでなさい。

Have patience.

Unlike おいでになる, いらっしゃる, the contraction of いらせられる, may be used to make adjectives honorific! The pattern for this is "お～ Adjective 連用形 + ていらっしゃる". Lastly, いらっしゃる is in でいらっしゃる, the honorific copula.

20. お若くていらっしゃいます。

You are young.

21. そちら（の方）は彼の友人でいらっしゃいます。

He is his friend.

22. どちら様でいらっしゃいますか。

Who is this?

Differences

おいでになる may be seen as おいで and おいでなさい to call someone over or to tell someone to go. いらっしゃい, on the other hand, means "welcome!". いらっしゃる is used to make the progressive. When おいでになる is used similarly, it shows some sort of state and is normally seen as おいで in this case.

Honorific Progressive

So, ～ている is how you make the progressive. In humble speech, you use ～ておる, and in honorific speech you use ～ていらっしゃる. If you want to be extremely honorific, you combine this with the honorific form of a verb. So, you have two big changes to the verb. Only one is necessary to make something honorific. Therefore, these extremely long variants are often not used as much.

23. この雑誌を読んでいらっしゃいますか。

Are you reading this magazine?

24. 何をお作りになっいらっしゃいますか。

What are you making?

25. 何もしておりません。

I am not doing anything.

The Problems with Making a Command with 敬語

In Classical Japanese, it was very common and completely proper to make a command like 書かせたまえ because Double 敬語 was used. Sadly, however, this reasoning and direct command to a superior in the first place have become bad in Modern Japanese.

With all the ways to tell someone in Japanese aside from the 命令形 further complicated by the need to be as polite and indirect as possible to superiors, Japanese has developed many ways to say single commands with various degrees of politeness and uses.

It is impossible to list all possible euphemisms of some expressions, but just with the verb 来る, 23 phrases related to its command form 来い can be cited. The following chart is a chart modified from 敬語マニュアル (1996) by 浅田秀子.

This is not all powerful, and it doesn't take long to think of counterexamples, but that I will leave you the reader to ponder on.

#	「来い」の表現	対象 (Object)	文体 (Writing Style)	尊敬度 (Level of Respect)	新密度 (Level of intimacy)
1	来い	Various		0%	100%
2	来るの・来るんだ	子供・目下	会話	5%	95%
3	来ること	目下	文章	10%	90%
4	来なさい	目下・子供	会話	15%	85%
5	来るように	目下		20%	80%
6	来てくれ	同輩・目下	会話	25%	75%
7	来てちょうだい	目下・子供	会話	30%	70%
8	来てほしい	目下	会話	35%	65%
9	来て	同輩・目下	会話	40%	60%
10	来てください	他人	会話	45%	55%
11	おいでなさい	目下	会話	50%	50%
12	おいで	目下・子供	会話	55%	45%
13	いらっしゃい	目下・子供	会話	60%	40%
14	いらっしゃいませ	同輩・他人	会話	65%	35%
15	おいでください	同輩・他人		70%	30%
16	いらしてください	同輩・他人		75%	25%
17	おいでを乞う	目上・他人	文章	80%	20%
18	おいでいただきたい	目上・他人		85%	15%
19	おいで願いたい	目上・他人	文章	90%	10%
20	お運びいただきたい	目上	文章	93%	7%
21	御足労いただきたい	目上	文章	96%	4%
22	御来臨を賜りたい	VIP	文章	98%	2%

Respectfulness is not necessarily the same thing as politeness, and it's definitely hard to define all of these expressions in one chart. So, please keep all of what you know about Japanese in mind. Just to think, this chart doesn't even have 来させ給え!

Other Conjugations

The volitional, conditional, provisional, potential, and the "must" patterns must be used with the exceptional verbs if they exist.

26. ご意見をいただけると助かります。(Potential)

We would appreciate your comments.

26. よろしかったら明日伺います。(～たら Conditional)

I will be over tomorrow if you like.

27. 彼のご意見を伺ったところ、彼はその件に対してあまり快く思っていないようです。

Having asked his opinion, he seemed to not be pleased about the case.

28. 伝言を伺いましょうか。(Volitional)

Shall I take a message?

29. 是非伺いたく存じます。(With ～たい)

I would like to come.

30. 長らくお待たせいたしました。(Causative)

I am sorry to have kept you waiting so long.

31. ご質問がございましたら、今承ります。(～たら Conditional)

I will take questions now if you have them.

32. 早くこちらへいらっしゃい。(Imperative)

Come here quickly.

Many More Examples

These sentences range from rather simple expressions, some of which you've already seen before, to far more complex sentences. Take note in how conjugations, particles, and other things work in honorifics.

33. 玉稿を賜る。(古風)

To be granted your honorable manuscript.

34. お手紙を拝受いたしました。

I received your letter.

35. よくおいでくださいました。

Thank you for taking the time to come.

36. お刺し身をいただきます。

I will eat sashimi.

38. お部屋をご覧になりますか。

Would you look in the room?

39. ご迷惑をおかけして、本当に申し訳なく存じます。

I appreciate all your trouble.

40. 長らくご無沙汰して申し訳ございません。

I am terribly sorry for my long absence.

41. あの方を存じ上げません。

I don't know that person.

42. 明日お目にかかります。

I'll see you tomorrow.

42. 初めまして、十和田と申します。

Nice to meet you. My name is Towada.

43. 自分は専門家だなどと生意気なことは申しません。

I don't profess to be an expert.

44. 手品をお目にかけます。

I'll show you a trick.

45. 彼が心配していらっしゃることをもう存じております。

I already know that he's worrying.

46. ご入用でしたら差し上げます。

You may have it for the asking.

47. こちらの本を差し上げましょう。

I shall give you this book.

48. 日本にいついらっしゃいましたか。

When did you come to Japan?

49. 弟が参っております。

62. 心中お察しいたします。

My sympathies are with you.

63. 喜んで参ります。

I'll be happy to come.

64. 明日そちらへ持って参ります。

I'll bring it to you tomorrow.

65. 栄光に存じます。

It is an honor.

66a. 以降お見知り置きを

66b. 以後お見知り置きください。

I look forward to getting to know you.

66. 冥利に尽きます。

I am quite lucky.

67. 工場をご案内申し上げます。

I will give you a tour of the factory.

68. 私たちは伊藤さんにお話しいただきました。

We were told a story by Mr. Ito.

69. そんなに仰らないでください。私はただ当たり前のことをしたまででございます。

Please don't say such. I merely did what was natural.

70. 月曜日にどちらへいらっしゃいますか。

Where are you going Monday?

71. 結構なお品を賜り、ありがとうございます。

We are thankful for receiving from you these excellent items.

72. 陛下がお言葉を賜る。

To receive His Majesty's words.

73. 思し召してご容赦下さい。

Please forgive me for thinking such.

74. そちらをお断りなさいました。

(He) rejected it.

75. お手数おかけしますが。

I hate to be a burden.

76. 京都から参りました。

瀧野と女中との対話の抜粋

This excerpt is from a conversation between Takino-san and a 女中. 女中 is now a politically incorrect word for maid/female servant. However, the use of 敬語 by 女中 is quite intriguing in literature. This piece is a typical example of male characters speaking in casual speech while the female combines feminine spoken language aspects to her 敬語.

90.

「瀧野さん今晚、金彌にお約束なすってるの？」

"Takino-san, do you have a engagement with Kanaya tonight?"

「うん」

"Yes"

と、彼はとっさにうなづいた。

He promptly acknowledged.

「そうならそうと、早く仰って下さればいいのに」

"It would be nice if you would say that you did early".

Variant Note: なすっている is still a commonly used variant of なさっている, but it is typically viewed as dialectical and or not exactly proper. However, many people, especially in the older population, use this variant as it is common throughout East Japan.

読み物: Letter in 敬語

91.

わたしは若葉学園の卒業生です。都合によって本名が名乗れないのは残念ですが、愛校心は人一倍強うございます。今は大阪で家庭の者となっていますが、母校のことは一日も忘れたことはありません。

I am a graduate of Wakaba Academy. By convenience, I regret not being able to have my real name known, but my school spirit is twice that of most people. I am now a housewife in Osaka, but I haven't forgotten a day of my old school.

92.

このような手紙を出すのをずいぶん迷いましたが、愛校心のため思い切って書くことにいたしました。

I wavered at sending such a letter for a while, but due to school spirit, I daringly decided to write it.

93.

先日のことでございます。わたくしは三重県の鳥羽に主人といっしょに子供をつれて参り、あるホテルに泊まりました。そのホテルは鳥羽湾を見渡す景色のいい所でございます。わたくしが朝、飽かずに海のほうを眺めておりますと、ふと、下の道を通る男女づれが眼に止まりました。そして思わず、あっ、と叫んだことでございます。

It was the other day. I went together with my husband and children to Toba in Mie Prefecture, and we stayed at a certain hotel. The hotel is a scenic place to survey Toba Bay. When I was untiringly looking towards the ocean, suddenly, my eyes stopped on a man and woman company passing through the street below. And, without even thinking I let out an "ah".

94.

ここから書くのは忍びないことですが、今も申した通り、愛校心のために勇を鼓して書くことにします。その男の方は若葉学園の大島理事長さんです。それから、同伴の女性はなんと学生課の秋山千鶴子さんではありませんか。秋山さんは、わたくしの在学中、よくその顔を見ておりますし、それに秋山さんに呼びつけられて叱言を喰ったことがありますので、よく存じあげています。

From here I can't bring myself to write, but as I've said now, I will write due to school spirit and take it to heart. That man is Wakaba Academy's Board Chairman Ohshima. And, the female companion was none other than Chizuko Akiyama of the student affairs office. I saw her face a lot when I was at school. Also, I have been called on and scolded on by Ms. Akiyama. So, I know well.

95.

わたくしは、そのとき自分の眼を疑いました。まさか大島理事長と秋山さんが、こんな所を仲よくアベックで散歩しているとは思いませんでした。でも、眼を凝らして見ると、まさにお二人に間違いありません。朝のことでしたが、お二人は手をつなぎ合って、まるで若い恋人同士のようでした。

I doubted my own eyes at that time. I didn't think that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama were walking nicely together as a couple in a place like this. When I tried to fixate my eyes on them, there was no doubt that it was the exact two. Although it was the morning, the two were holding hands and looking just like two young lovers.

96.

わたくしは大島理事長が秋山さんと結婚したことも聞かないし、また大島理事長が奥さんを亡くされたことも承っておりません。わたくしはぼんやりとお二人のうしろ姿を見送っておりました。

I haven't heard that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama have married, and I haven't heard that his wife has passed. I absent-mindedly saw the two off from behind.

97.

それでも、わたくしはお二人がそういうお仲になっているとは信じられず、あるいは学生の引率でこられて、その間の軽い気持の散歩だと信じたかったのです。けれど、ホテルのフロントにきいてみて、お二人の名前もまったく違うし、もちろん、学生の引率でもないことを知って、眼の前が暗くなりました。

Even so, I couldn't believe that the two were together, and I wanted to believe that perhaps it was a walk with light emotion with them coming as student escorts. But, when I checked at the front desk, the two's names were completely different, and I knew that they were obviously not student escorts, and the front of my eyes darkened.

This passage is an excerpt from 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張, one of the best novelists in Modern Japanese literature. This section was in quotations, so other things you would expect with a letter were omitted. Although some of the wording may be somewhat old-fashioned, this passage is a great demonstration of how 敬語 is typically used.

読み物 2

Though older literature may have older 敬語, such 敬語 is typically viewed as the "purest" form of it, if such thing even exists in a realistic sense. Regardless, there are many things that you can learn about 敬語 usage in reading texts and listening to dialogues. The following is the first page of the famous story 雪国 by 川端康成.

Not all of this passage is in 敬語, but it's important to have preceding context if possible. The spelling of the original text has been altered to be more of use to you. Blocks of text will be given Japanese and then English by the original paragraph spacing of the text. Translating this passage in particular into English has caused many controversies, but the translations provided try to adhere to the original meaning of the text as close as possible while still sounding natural in English.

98.

国境の長いトンネルを抜けると雪国であった。夜の底が白くなった。信号所に止まった。

Once (they) came out of the long border tunnel, there was the Land of Snow. The depths of the night had turned white. The train stopped at the signal station.

99.

向う側の座席から娘が立って来て、島村のガラス窓を落とした。雪の冷気が流れこんだ。娘は窓いっぱいに乗り出して、遠くへ叫ぶように、
「駅長さあん、駅長さあん」

A young lady stood up and came over from the seat on the other side and opened the glass window in front of Shimamura. The cold snowy air rushed in. The girl leaned all out of the window, and as if she were yelling afar, she shouted "Conductor, conductor".

100.

明かりをさげてゆっくり雪を踏んで来た男は、襟巻で鼻の上まで包み、耳に帽子の毛皮を垂れていた。

A man who had slowly walked there in the snow covered himself to the top of his nose with a scarf and had a cap pelt drooping on his ears.

101.

もうそんな寒さかと島村は外を眺めると、鉄道の官舎らしいバラックが山裾に寒々と散らばっているだけで、雪の色はそこまで行かぬうちに闇に吞まれていた。

When Shimamura gazed outside, thinking it had already gotten that cold, railroad residence-looking barracks were just desolately dispersed at the foot of the mountains, and before the snow hues could reach that far, the barracks were swallowed by darkness.

102. 駅長さん、私です、御機嫌よろしゅうございます。」

“Conductor, it’s me. How do you do?”.

103. ああ、葉子さんじゃないか。お帰りかい。また寒くなったよ。」

“Ah, why isn’t it Youko? Welcome home, it’s gotten cold again”.

104. 弟が今度こちらに勤めさせていただいておりますのですってね。お世話さまですわ。」

“I heard that my younger brother has been allowed to work here next time. Thank you for your care”.

105. 「こんなところ、今に寂しくて参るだろうよ。若いのに可哀想だな。」

“He’ll probably be lonely and troubled before long now. He’s pitiful yet so young.

106. 「ほんの子供ですから、駅長さんから教えてやっていただいて、よろしく願ひいたしますわ。」

“Since he’s merely a kid, I ask that you teach him well, Conductor”.

葉子’s language is indicative of 敬語 speech in the early half of the 20th century. The rule that polite endings should not have 連体形 didn't really exist then, and even today, this rule is still ignored. As you can also see from this passage, traditional feminine speech is maintained even in 敬語. This is now not really the case anymore for obvious post-modern attitude changes towards the role of women.

紹介

107. 葉山先生をご紹介します。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、

ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。

最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。

この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくださいます。

昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしく願ひいたします。

1. Who is being introduced?

2. When did Hayama visit Nagoya University?

3. Where did Hayama graduate from for graduate school?

4. Where did Hayama teach Japanese for a long time?

5. What song is she going to be singing in English?

6. Underline the honorific speech. Change the person being introduced to your friend, and then change the honorific speech to polite speech.

リー先生

108.リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思ったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。毎日遅くまで研究室にいるので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.
2. Change the underlined parts to an appropriate form.
3. What does Lee think about America?
4. What does Lee not like to do often?
5. Why is it that "we" can visit Lee whenever?

Keys

紹介: Key

1. Hayama Sensei is being introduced.
2. Hayama visited Nagoya University five years ago.
3. Hayama graduated from Washington University for graduate school.
4. Hayama taught Japanese in Canada for a long time.
5. She is to sing "Shouting Star".
6. 葉山先生をご紹介いたします。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、
ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。
最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。
この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくださいます。
昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしくお願いいたします。

友達の_____を紹介します。_____は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強した後、ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていましたが、五年前に名古屋大学に来ました。最近はとても忙しくて、テレビを見る時間もないと言っています。この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくれます。昨日も家で練習したそうです。じゃあ、_____
あ、_____
あ、_____
あ、_____、よろしくお願いします。

リー先生: Key

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.

リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思ったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。毎日遅くまで研究室にいるので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

2. リー先生は、韓国語を教えていらっしゃいます。韓国からいらっしゃったばかりのころは、
韓国の方がいいとお思いになったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと仰っています。

スポーツはあまりなさらないそうですが、音楽がお好きだそうです。
毎日遅くまで研究室にいらっしゃるので、いつ行ってもお会いできます。

3. Lee thinks that it is easier to live in America than Korea.

4. Lee doesn't play sports often.

5. Lee is always in his office.

第78課: 語尾 II: わ, な, と, の, さ, ぞ, ぜ, & え

語尾ごび, as we have learned, are interjectory particles that show all sorts of **emotions**.

The Final Particle わ

わ is more **colloquial**--used in casual speech--than よ with gender restrictions based on tone. If **high**, it is associated with standard **feminine speech**. If low, it is associated with 関西弁かんさいべん in which both men and women use it frequently. It may also list things with exclamation; this isn't necessarily feminine.

1. 本当に困こまったわ。
I'm really troubled.

2. まあ、素敵すてきだわ。
Well, that's great.

3. 行くわよ。
I'm going!

Usage Note: ~わよ is **very feminine**. Extremely feminine and extremely masculine expressions are in somewhat of a decline in favor of more gender neutral ones. They are also not going to be used in polite speech.

4. バンが壊こわれるわ、乗り上げるわ、散々さんざんな一日だった。
The van broke, I got stranded, and I've had a day!

Particle Note: The sentence above is a great example of the usage of particles as filler words after clauses mentioned in the last section.

5. あとの事は何れ東京へ出たら、逢った上で話を付けらあ。
I'll talk about that once I've gone and met (with him).
From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Contraction Note: ~らあ is a contraction of ~るわ and is equivalent to ~るなあ in this context.

Historical Note: わ is an evolved form of は.

The Final Particle な

1. な is for the most part the masculine version of ね. However, females have begun to use it as well, particularly those that are seen as being stronger than the average woman. This should not be used in polite situations.

6. 俺おれな、今度こんどな、勝つんだ。

I, uh, this time, will win.

7. あのな、こっちではな、酒はいけないんだ。(説教的な言い方)

Um, you mustn't drink sake here, you know.

8. 懐かしいなあ。

How nostalgic.

9. いやだな。

What a pain!

10. 君が来ないと、つまらないなあ。

If you don't come, it'll be boring.

11. 誰だれか来たな。

Someone came, didn't they?

12. 罪人はお前だな。

The sinner is you, isn't it!

2. Placed after the 終止形しゅうしけい (the end form) of a verb to show a strong negative command.

13. そんなことをするな。

Don't do such a thing!

14. 行くな！

Don't go!

15. すんな！

Don't do it!

Contraction Note: ～るな is often contracted to ～んな. Even if a verb doesn't end in the sound, ん is often inserted before な. So, things 話すんな are becoming more common. Again, don't use these contractions in polite situations.

3. Used as a contraction of ～なさい,. Don't confuse this with Usage 2!

16. 行きな！

Go!

17. やってみな！

Try it!

18. ちょっとこっちに来な。

Come here for a moment.

The Final Particle と

There are three very different usages of the final particle と.

1. In a question with a high intonation, it presents a demanding question. This is used in casual or vulgar speech.
2. In っと it is used to declare something with a light tone. It is used in plain speech.
3. とさは used with polite endings in story-telling.

Examples

19. 何だと!? (Vulgar/casual)

WHAT!?

20. いやだと？

You say no!?

21. 知らねーっと。(Vulgar; slang)

I don't know.

22. 二人で幸しあわせに暮らしましたとさ。

And they lived happily ever after.

23. やめたいだと？

You want to quit!?

Grammar Note: だと is allowed here because it is acting as a final particle.

The Final Particle の

The final particle の is becoming more unisex in appeal, but guys should be careful with their tone of voice. As said earlier, it can show a decisiveness/confirmation, reasoning with a low pitch, and question with a high pitch. Patterns that are particularly feminine include (な) のよ, のね, and の！.

24. やりたくないの！ (Feminine)

I don't want to do it!

25. 休みなのよ。(Feminine)

It's a break!

26. 宿題(を)忘れたの？

You forgot your homework?

27. ああ、そうだったの。(A little feminine)
Ah, is that so?

28. やはりだめだったのね。(Feminine)
It was bad as expected, wasn't it?

29. 明日来ないの。
You're not coming tomorrow?

30. 仕事があったんじゃないの？
Didn't you have work?

31. 強い男は泣かないの。
Strong guys don't cry.

32. おお、まことか、よく来たの。(Old person)
Oh, it's you Makoto; good of you to come.

Speech Style Note: The last sentence sounds like it came from an old person. よく来たな is a more masculine yet more common way to say it. よく来たね is more gender neutral. As you can see, it's different from the other sentences above.

The Final Particle さ

さ is a signature feature of Tokyo speech and is the Japanese equivalent to the overuse of "like" in English. Don't use this in polite speech. This is very casual, and the usage is rather random based on region and age. The people most likely to use it are young people in and around the capital area (首都圏しゅとけん) .

33. 東京は本当にきれいさ。
Tokyo is like really pretty.

34. 明日はさ、土曜だからさ、休みなんだ。
Tomorrow is, um, cause it's Saturday, we're going to be on break.

35. 何さ、あんなやつめ！
What the, that guy!

Grammar Note: さ is typically not placed after だ as the first example demonstrates. However, many speakers don't follow this.

The Particle ぞ

ぞ is very casual and at times harsh. ぞ, which is associated with masculine speech, creates a casual yet strong assertive emphasis. It may also be used to make a rhetorical question. Its role as being strongly masculine is in decline, but it is still used frequently, just not with as much of the gender baggage. You should not use this in polite speech.

36. 何か変へんだぞ。

Something's strange.

37. 今しないと、失敗しっぱいするぞ。

If you don't do it now, you'll fail!

38. とにかく家へ帰るぞ。

Anyway, I'm going home.

39. 勉強しなかったから、テストに合格ごうかくしなかったんだぞ。

It's because you didn't study that you didn't pass your test!

40a. あれは何者なにものぞ。 (Very old-fashioned)

40b. あいつは何者だ? (More natural)

Who is that?

Phrasing Note: Using ぞ in making a rhetorical question is rather archaic.

The Final Particle ぜ

ぜ rudely and or forcefully pushes an idea. Due to this, it is only appropriate in casual conversation and should never be used with your superiors (in a typical situation). Only if you and your superior(s) are drunk should you ever use it; that is unless you're quitting.

ぜ has historically been extremely masculine, but it is now not completely out of the norm for female speakers to use it among themselves. This, though, may make them look unfeminine. Strong female bodybuilders can use ぜ just like a rough playing boy child in a schoolyard.

It is because of these reasons why experience in hearing them used is the best way to truly know the full realm of their usage.

41. 雪だぜ。

It's snow!

42. 行くぜ!

Let's go!

Origin Note: ぜ is the contraction of ぞえ.

The Final Particle え

Although no longer common, え is used to either to call for someone or push an idea for questioning something. It's often in the pattern ぞえ. You might hear something with this in it in some old-fashioned drama.

43. 行くぞえ。

Let's go!

44. お上かみさんえ (Old-fashioned)

Missus!

Spelling Note: ぞえ and ぞえ are both common spellings, and the pattern is still common among many speakers. It's just that using the particle in any other situation is very uncommon.

第134課: **Best That: ~方 Patterns & ~に越したことはない**

For some reason, students are compelled to use the word 方 excessively.

Best/Better That

方がいい means “best to...” and with verbs, you should use the past tense, and with adjectives or the negative, you should use the non-past tense. However, this can still be used with the non-past of verbs, and いい can be replaced with phrases like 賢明だ (wise).

~方がいい is used in the written and spoken language. It is often used in daily conversation, but it is often used by Japanese learners when giving suggestions/advice, which may lead some Japanese to smirk.

Non-past +方がいい is primarily used with one's in-group as it is used a lot in situations where you are giving direct advice on what is best to do. Past+方がいい is felt to be more euphemistic and is often used towards one's out-group. However, some people have personal preferences for one or the other.

1. 今すぐ行った方がいいです。
It'd be best to go right now.
2. 寝た方がいい。
It's best to sleep.
3. よく考えた方がいい。
You'd better think that over.
4. 泳ぐ前に、日焼ひやけ止どめを塗ぬった方がいいよ。
It's best to put on sunblock before swimming.
5. 卵たまごは食べない方がいい。(Contrasting and or highlighting)
It's best to not eat eggs.
6. {ほとんどの} わずかな店みせしか開いていないから、今食品を買った方がいい。
Since there are only but a few stores that are open, it's best to buy food now.
7. 彼はそこへ行った方がよい。
It is best for him to go there.
8. 毎日運動した方がいい。
It's best to exercise every day.

Nuance Note: Even when there is not a second reference mentioned, this pattern implies a comparison between things. It may sound pushy depending on the context as it can be used to impose your will/thought. When you want to make a simple suggestion, you can use ～たらいい.

Again, other things than just いい may also appear in this fashion.

9. 当人に会って直接に話し合った方が効果こうかはあると思います。

I think that it is effective to meet with the said person and directly talk together (about it).

Non-Past + 方がいい

It is also worth noting that when you use the pattern "Non-past+方がいい", there could be several things that are good to do in the said situation, but you pick one as an example of being good.

10. 折りにふれて想起そうきするほうがいい。

Occasionally, it is good to call it to mind.

～がよい

～がよい can create a suggestion bordering on a command, and it uses older grammar by just directly following verbs without the need of a nominalizer like の.

11. そうするがよい。

You had better do it.

～方: How to...

Following the stem of a verb, ～方かた means "how to...". Sometimes this may not show up in translation. For instance, 読み方 may very well be able to be translated as "how to read," but it can also be sufficiently translated as "reading" depending on context.

12. 弟の笑い方が気に食わねー。(Slang)

I can't stand the way my little brother smiles.

13. 日本語の書き方をよく知っていますか。

Do you know how to write Japanese well?

14. 行き方が全く分からない。

I don't know the way to go at all.

15. どの読み方を使うべきかは分かりません。

I don't know which reading I'm supposed to use.

16. 本当に酷ひどい言い方だよ。

That's a hideous way to talk.

17. しかたがありません。(Set Phrase)

It can't be helped.

18. 簡単な覚え方を教えてくださいませんか。

Could you teach me an easy way to remember?

～に越したことはないが

～に越したことはない(が) means "can never...too much" and is used in giving common sense advice. The verb 越す has meanings all related to the idea of "surpassing". This phrase is used to show that nothing beats doing X. So, when young people use it in certain situations, it can make them sound arrogant.

If turned into ～に越したことはなかった, you end up showing regret. This is because you recognize what was the best thing to do, but you didn't do it. This directly follows verbs and adjectives, but for adjectival nouns, the copula is either as である or not there at all (which is most common).

19. 傘かさを持つに越したことはない。

It's always best to have an umbrella.

20. 貯金をするに越したことはなかったが、ちょっと生活を楽しむことができた。

Nothing would have beat saving, but I got to enjoy life a little.

21. 用心ようじんに越したことはないが、そんな服装を着るなんて派手はすぎるじゃない？

You can never be too careful, but isn't wearing an outfit like that too showy?

第135課: ～てしまう

～てしまう is an extremely important ending. It is often described as showing perfected actions or things done on accident, but what does this actually mean and is there more to it? This lesson will discuss the nuances that it has as well as important variants used in every speech of it.

～てしまう

Spelling and Other Meanings

The verb しまう either means "to end" or "to keep/put back". In 漢字, you might see it spelled as 仕舞う, 終う, or 了う. As you can imagine, the latter two spellings are perfect fits for its meaning of "to end". The only time when you should take this verb literally when after て is when there is an intentional pause. Then, you have to be careful about what other possible homophonous phrases fit--especially when listening.

Take for instance this classic demonstration in Japanese linguistics concerning this very thing.

1. 変態な本を読んで、しまった。

I read a perverted book, and (then) I put it up.

2. 変態な本を読んでしまった。

I accidentally read a perverted book.

The 3 Nuances of ～てしまう

So, what is ～てしまう? It sadly doesn't have one meaning. There are basically three ways it is used. Intonation plays a role in discerning whether しまう is supplementary or not. When supplementary, you get the pattern ～てしまう, which has one of the three meanings below.

1. To show a sense of regret/surprise when you did have volition in doing something, but it turned out to be bad to do. This can also be sarcastically and cleverly used in a positive attitude while still being natural. Sexual relations come to mind.

2. To show perfective/punctual achievement. This shows that an action has been completed. It should not be used with something like ～そうだ, which is a nonfactual speech modal.

3. To show unintentional action--"accidentally". Often used with adverbs like うっかり (absentmindedly) and ぐうぜんに (unexpectedly).

Clarification Notes:

1. Statives (verbs that show state not action) can be used with ～てしまう too. However, they are not perfective in any sense. When put together, the perfective is never expressed. Rather, it goes back to point 1.

2. It's important to view these usages as instances of the same thing interpreted differently in context because there are cases where more than one reading is possible. At times, all three can be meant together. In "うっかり花瓶を割ってしまった", the act of breaking the vase is perfective. It could have been accidentally broken. Plus, you could feel regret over having broken it.

Examples

1. スープは冷さめてしまっている。

My soup has gotten cold.

2. あの子供はのろのろと椅子いすから立ち上がった後、突然倒とつぜんたおれてしまったよ。

That kid over there suddenly collapsed after he rose up sluggishly from the chair.

3. 恋人こいびとたちは二人でサンバを踊おどらなくなってしまった。

The couple ended up not dancing the samba together.

4. 花瓶かびんを壊こわしてしまって、罰ばつを逃のがりたい。

I accidentally broke the vase, and I hope I don't get punished.

More literally: I accidentally broke the vase, and I want to escape punishment.

5. 窓を閉めなかったので、風邪を引いてしまいました。

I didn't close the window, and so I caught a cold.

6. 夏服なつふくを押入おしいれにしまった。

I put my summer clothes in the closet.

7. 明日までにレポートを書いてしまいます。

I'll finish writing the report by tomorrow.

8. お金を使ってしまった。

I regrettably used the money.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 宿題をしてしまいました。

2. I ate them all.

3. 僕の車が故障してしまった。

4. 眠ってしまった。

5. To keep information back.

～ちゃう & ～じゃう

～てしまう may be contracted to -ちゃう (playful) or -ちまう (vulgar/mature men). These forms are voiced as ～じゃう and ～じまう respectively when て is used with certain 五段 verbs.

食べてしまう → 食べ
ちゃう

見てしまう → 見ちゃう

呼んでしまう → 呼ん
じゃう

読んでしまう → 読ん
じゃう

死んでしまう → 死ん
じゃう

ばれてしまう → ばれ
ちゃう

着てしまう → 着ちゃう

切ってしまう → 切っ
ちゃう

してしまう → しちゃう

Grammar Note: The use of slang and polite speech is usually improper, but

there are times when these casual forms are used in familiar polite speech, but this would be most common by children and women than men.

Examples

9. 見る見るうちに老人ろうじんになっちゃった！

In the blink of an eye, I turned into an old person!

10. ガソリンが切れちゃった。最寄もよりの（ガソリン）スタンドまで引ひっ張ばっててもらえる？

I ran out of gas. Could you tow me to the nearest gas station?

11. その本を読んじゃいました。

I finished reading that book.

12. 犬が狂くるっちゃった。

The dog went crazy.

13. 中国語かと思っちゃった。

I mistook it for Chinese.

14. 財布さいふを忘れちゃったよ。

I forgot my wallet.

15. どうして空き地にし {てしま・ちゃ} わないのか。

Why won't they make it into an empty lot?

16. 不注意ふちゅういからカップを落おとしちゃった。

I accidentally spilled the cup due to carelessness.

17. とても熱かったから、口を火傷やけどしちゃった。

Because it was very hot, I accidentally scalded my mouth.

関西弁: ～て（し）もた

The 関西弁 version is so commonly seen in manga and anime that not mentioning it would do you a disservice. しまった and しもた share the same origin. ～た instead attached to the 終止形. This produced しまうた. The vowel sequence au simplified to a long o in Western dialects, and this was then shortened in this phrase and many others. The し is then dropped in even more colloquial speech.

18. 忘れて（し）もた！

I completely forgot!

19. 買って（し）もた。
I accidentally bought it.

関西弁の音便 (**Kansai Dialect Sound Change**): かって → こうて.

はめになる

This phrase is equivalent to "end up; wind up; (come down) to". はめ may be written in 漢字 as 羽目 or 破目. はめ in this case actually means "bind" as in an awkward situation.

20. 彼は言いなりになるはめになった。
He ended up giving in to him.
21. 僕は罰金ばっきを支払いはらうはめになった。
I ended up paying a fine.
22. ねずみは溺おぼれるはめになった。
The mouse ended up drowning.
23. 疑うはめになる。
To come to suspect.

Key

Practice

1. I (have) completed by homework.
2. 全部食べてしまった。
3. My car broke down.
4. I accidentally slept.
5. 情報をしまっておく。

第135課: ~てしまう

~てしまう is an extremely important ending. It is often described as showing perfected actions or things done on accident, but what does this actually mean and is there more to it? This lesson will discuss the nuances that it has as well as important variants used in every speech of it.

~てしまう

Spelling and Other Meanings

The verb しまう either means "to end" or "to keep/put back". In 漢字, you might see it spelled as 仕舞う, 終う, or 了う. As you can imagine, the latter two spellings are perfect fits for its meaning of "to end". The only time when you should take this verb literally when after て is when there is an intentional pause. Then, you have to be careful about what other possible homophonous phrases fit--especially when listening.

Take for instance this classic demonstration in Japanese linguistics concerning this very thing.

1. 変態な本を読んで、しまった。

I read a perverted book, and (then) I put it up.

2. 変態な本を読んでしまった。

I accidentally read a perverted book.

The 3 Nuances of ～てしまう

So, what is ～てしまう? It sadly doesn't have one meaning. There are basically three ways it is used. Intonation plays a role in discerning whether しまう is supplementary or not. When supplementary, you get the pattern ～てしまう, which has one of the three meanings below.

1. To show a sense of regret/surprise when you did have volition in doing something, but it turned out to be bad to do. This can also be sarcastically and cleverly used in a positive attitude while still being natural. Sexual relations come to mind.

2. To show perfective/punctual achievement. This shows that an action has been completed. It should not be used with something like ～そうだ, which is a nonfactual speech modal.

3. To show unintentional action--"accidentally". Often used with adverbs like うっかり (absentmindedly) and ぐうぜんに (unexpectedly).

Clarification Notes:

1. Statives (verbs that show state not action) can be used with ～てしまう too. However, they are not perfective in any sense. When put together, the perfective is never expressed. Rather, it goes back to point 1.

2. It's important to view these usages as instances of the same thing interpreted differently in context because there are cases where more than one reading is possible. At times, all three can be meant together. In "うっかり花瓶を割ってしまった", the act of breaking the vase is perfective. It could have been accidentally broken. Plus, you could feel regret over having broken it.

Examples

1. スープは冷さめてしまっている。

My soup has gotten cold.

2. あの子供はのろのろと椅子いすから立ち上がった後、突然倒とつぜんたおれてしまったよ。

That kid over there suddenly collapsed after he rose up sluggishly from the chair.

3. 恋人こいびとたちは二人でサンバを踊おどらなくなってしまった。

The couple ended up not dancing the samba together.

4. 花瓶かびんを壊こわしてしまって、罰ばつを逃のがれたい。

I accidentally broke the vase, and I hope I don't get punished.

More literally: I accidentally broke the vase, and I want to escape punishment.

5. 窓を閉めなかったので、風邪を引いてしまいました。

I didn't close the window, and so I caught a cold.

6. 夏服なつふくを押入おしいれにしまった。

I put my summer clothes in the closet.

7. 明日までにレポートを書いてしまいます。

I'll finish writing the report by tomorrow.

8. お金を使ってしまった。

I regrettably used the money.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 宿題をしてしまいました。

2. I ate them all.

3. 僕の車が故障してしまった。

4. 眠ってしまった。

5. To keep information back.

～ちゃう & ～じゃう

～てしまう may be contracted to -ちゃう (playful) or -ちまう (vulgar/mature men). These forms are voiced as ～じゃう and ～じまう respectively when て is used with certain 五段 verbs.

食べてしまう → 食べ
ちゃう

見てしまう → 見ちゃう

呼んでしまう → 呼ん
じゃう

読んでしまう → 読ん じゃう	死んでしまう → 死ん じゃう	ばれてしまう → ばれ ちゃう
着てしまう → 着ちゃう	切ってしまう → 切っ ちゃう	してしまう → しちゃう

Grammar Note: The use of slang and polite speech is usually improper, but there are times when these casual forms are used in familiar polite speech, but this would be most common by children and women than men.

Examples

9, 見る見るうちに老人ろうじんになっちゃった！

In the blink of an eye, I turned into an old person!

10. ガソリンが切れちゃった。最寄もよりの（ガソリン）スタンドまで引ひっ張ばって
てもらえる？

I ran out of gas. Could you tow me to the nearest gas station?

11. その本を読んじゃいました。

I finished reading that book.

12. 犬が狂くるっちゃった。

The dog went crazy.

13. 中国語かと思っちゃった。

I mistook it for Chinese.

14. 財布さいふを忘れちゃったよ。

I forgot my wallet.

15. どうして空き地にし {てしま・ちゃ} わないのか。

Why won't they make it into an empty lot?

16. 不注意ふちゅういからカップを落おとしちゃった。

I accidentally spilled the cup due to carelessness.

17. とても熱かったから、口を火傷やけどしちゃった。

Because it was very hot, I accidentally scalded my mouth.

関西弁: ～て（し）もた

The 関西弁 version is so commonly seen in manga and anime that not mentioning it would do you a disservice. しまった and しもた share the same origin. ～た instead attached to the 終止形. This produced しまうた. The vowel sequence au simplified to a long o in Western dialects, and this was then

shortened in this phrase and many others. The し is then dropped in even more colloquial speech.

18. 忘れて（し）もた！
I completely forgot!

19. 買うて（し）もた。
I accidentally bought it.

関西弁の音便 (Kansai Dialect Sound Change): かって → こうて.

はめになる

This phrase is equivalent to "end up; wind up; (come down) to". はめ may be written in 漢字 as 羽目 or 破目. はめ in this case actually means "bind" as in an awkward situation.

20. 彼は言いなりになるはめになった。
He ended up giving in to him.

21. 僕は罰金ばっきを支払いはらうはめになった。
I ended up paying a fine.

22. ねずみは溺おぼれるはめになった。
The mouse ended up drowning.

23. 疑うはめになる。
To come to suspect.

Key

Practice

1. I (have) completed by homework.
2. 全部食べてしまった。
3. My car broke down.
4. I accidentally slept.
5. 情報をしまっておく。

第136課: Advanced Preparation: ～ておく

～ておく is most known by Japanese learners as expressed advanced preparation, and it is typically simply translated as “in advance”. However, there are many syntactic and semantic differences between the Japanese pattern and the English equivalent. With that being the case, this lesson will provide you the information necessary to fully utilize ～ておく.

～ておく

The basic sentence structure for ～ておく is “Xが + (Y) + Verb of Volition A + ておく”. So, before knowing anything about what the pattern means, you already know that a lot of verbs are ungrammatical with it. Does someone have will over the action? If so, then without any additional information it should be OK.

Speech Style/Contraction Note: Before we get any farther, it's important to know that this pattern may be contracted to ～とく in colloquial speech.

There are two broad usages of ～ておく. This initial coverage may suffice for most students, but the rest of the lesson delves into issues with it and other phrases that are very similar and ～ておく's own limitations.

1. Before a situation occurs, X changes the current situation in a positive preparation for something. In the non-past tense, this means that verb A has yet to happen, and the speaker is saying that from now they will do so in advance of, again, a certain situation.

1. 韓国に駐在ちゅうざいといわれたよ。少しでも韓国語を習っておかないといけないね。

I was told that I'd be stationed in Korea. I guess I have to learn some Korean in advance.

2. こんなこともわかんないのか。これしきのこと、知っとかなきゃだめだぞ。(男性語; やや無礼ぶれい)

You don't even know this sort of thing? You have to know at least just this much!

3. 帰るまでには、思い出しておいてよね。(ちょっと女性っぽい)

Have it remembered by the time I return home, OK?

4. あれほど注意ちゅういしておいたほうがいいと思おう。

I think it's best to be careful to that extent.

5. あらかじめ連絡しておいた方がいいんじゃないでしょうか。

Perhaps it would be best to contact them beforehand?

漢字 Note: あらかじめ may also be written as 予め.

2. Trying to actively maintain the current condition. Verb A is still not realized, but in trying to continue to maintain a certain condition, Verb A is to be done.

6. 先日のご本を金曜日までお借りしておいてもよろしいですか。(敬語)

Is it alright if I borrow your book from the other day until Friday?

7. その道具どうぐは今要りませんから、そのまま入れておいてください。

That tool isn't needed now, so please leave it [in there] as is.

8. とりあえず、ここでやめておきます。

Anyways, I'll stop here.

9. もうこれ以上いじょうあんたをのさばらしておくことはできねーぞ。(Vulgar; 男性語)

I can no longer let you have your own way.

Grammar Note: のさばらす is a causative form of のさばる, which means "to have one's way".

10. 演奏えんそうが演奏だけに放ってはおけないでね。

You mustn't blow it off just because a performance is a performance.

Sentence Note: The sentence basically says that the performance was really horrible.

11. もとのままにしておく。

To leave it as it is originally.

12. 金庫きんこにしまっとけ！

Keep it in the safe!

13. 自分は自分のその女にたいする感情を厚意こういの程度でとめておけたろう。
(ちょっと古風)

I believe I've been able to keep my own emotions towards that woman to the degree of favor.

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤むしゃのこうじさねあつ.

In either case, one contemplates a situation to happen latter, and in order for that situation in time to be beneficial, one is going to perform Action A. So, X affirmatively does Verb A or Verb A being done is anticipated.

There also happens to be situations where the situation can't be called positive. In this, the speaker expresses a negative manner in light of maintaining the current situation being the best option. In this sense, emotions of abandonment/resignation may be mixed in.

14. ひとりにしといてやれ。何言っても、どうせ聞きはしないよ。(ちょっと砕けた)

I'll leave you to yourself. I won't listen to you no matter what you say.

15. 仕方ないよな、食べさせとこうよ。そのうち吠ほえはじめちゃうしさ。(砕けた)

I guess there's no other choice; I'll let you eat. You'll end up starting to bark before long.

The Verb 置く

The literal meaning of the verb 置く, from which ~ておく derives, is "to place". There are positive situations where it is used, and there are also instances where it negatively portrays negligence and abandonment.

16. 時計を友達机の上に置く。

To place a watch on one's friend's desk.

17. 3軒おいた隣が、幼稚園教諭ようちえんきょうゆのお宅たくです。
Three houses down is the home of the kindergarten teacher.

18. 私の学校は外国語がいこくごに重点じゅうてんを置いていません。
My school is not putting stress on foreign languages.

19. 夫と子どもをおいて家出する。
To run away from home leaving one's husband and children.

Orthography Note: ～ておく is normally not spelled as ～て置く unless 置く is used in a more literal sense.

～ておいた

～ておいた, even though the pattern is in the past tense, does not mean that the condition in which actions have been made in preparation for has occurred. You just state that you've done something in preparation. ～ておいた may also show that one has continued to maintain a past circumstance.

20. 明後日はコンサートですから、切符きっぷを買っておきました。
Since the concert is two days from now, I bought tickets in advance.

27. その毛布はまだ乾かわいてなかったから、そのまんま干ほしといたよ。
Since the blanket wasn't dry yet, I left it to dry.

28. サッチャン、起こしても眠そうだったから、寝かせておいたの。(ちょっと女性っぽい)
Since Satchan seemed sleepy even when she would wake up, I had her stay asleep.

29. 「できる」というから、させておいたのに、結局できなかったな。(男性語)
Although I let you do it since you said you could, you ultimately couldn't.

30. 様子を泣かせておいたら、泣き寝入りしちゃったみたいわ。(女性語)
It looks like Sachiko went to bed crying when I let her cry.

31. 持っていくものをケータイのそばに置いておきましたから、忘れないでね。(Wife)
I put what to bring next to your cellphone, so don't forget.

Phrase Note: Yes, 置いておく is completely fine and commonly used. After all, the two instances of 置く have separate purposes.

In either situation, ～ておいた strengthens the sense that preparations have been completed. Again, whether or not the past condition is continuing into the present depends on the situation. Whether the situation is positive or negative, the speaker is thinking of what's to come ahead, and in intentions of having it beneficial, A is done.

Verbs ～ておく Can & Can't Be With

～ておく, as mentioned earlier, is used with a wide range of verbs of volition whereas other speech modals cannot.

1. Full Volition: We will see why other options don't work in more detail later in this lesson.

32. 万一のことがあってはいけないから、ケータイは持って {○ おいた・X ある}。
As the worst case scenario won't do, I brought my cellphone.

33. すぐに来るかと思って、ここで待って {○ おいた・△ いる・X ある} んだ。
Since I thought [he'd] come immediately, I've waited here in advance.

2. In situations where a verb usually not volitional is deemed, ～ておく may be used.

34. 次の公演でデブの母さんをやるから、初日までには太っとかなきゃ。(Casual)
I gotta get fat by the premiere because I'm playing a fat mother in the next performance.

35. さっき聞いたこと、殺されたくなかったら、忘れておくんだな。(男性語)
What you heard just now, if you don't want to be killed, you'll forget it.

So, if you are using the verb to express what a person is trying to do in preparation for a positive outcome, then ～ておいて・おいた can be used. Now, though, we will investigate some problems with this.

36. NHKの記事で事件を {○知った・X 知っておいた}。
I knew about the matter in an NHK article.

37. 彼のことならよく {○ 知っています・△ 知っておきました}。
As for him, I know him well.

The reason why the verb 知る, which is a verb that you can expect a positive effect, and ～ておく can't connect is because it shows received knowledge, information, association, etc. passively through emotion or experience. In these situations, you can't take measures beforehand. However, when considering phrases like 恥はじを知れ and 経済情勢を知ろう, there are clearly instances where 知る would be OK with ～ておく. In these instances, one is to fully understand a matter.

38. 敵てきの情勢を知っておけ。
Know of your enemies' position beforehand.

39. 親の恩おんくらは知っておけば大丈夫。
If you know at least your parent's favor, you'll be OK.

A similar set of issues exist with 分かる + ておく. If 分かる is used to show a natural, non-volitional change of something unclear becoming clear, then ～ておく can't be used with it. However, when used in a volitional sense, the combination becomes OK.

40. 彼のことをよく分かっておく。
To understand him well in advance.

41. 彼氏の気持ちも分かっておいてよ。
Understand your boyfriend's emotions full well too.

The Two Faces of ～ておく・おいた

Depending on the nature of Verb A, this pattern has one of the following two faces.

1. With verbs that become duration verbs or non-internal limitation verbs, ～ておく shows changing a situation and affirmatively taking measures beforehand.

42. 手てを清潔せいけつにしておきなさい。
Keep your hands clean.

43. メールで連絡しておく。
To contact in advance with e-mail.

44. 食事の用意をしておきました。
I did the preparations for dinner in advance.

2. With verbs that become instantaneous verbs or internal limitation verbs, ～ておく either shows an affirmative urging/current condition change or a positive/negative current condition maintenance/neglect/dismissal/nonintervention.

45. あとのために、鋏はさみを使つかったら、元もとの所ところに戻もどしておいてくださいね。
For later, please put back the scissors where you got them after you're done using them.

46. ことがことだけに放ってはおけない。
Since a circumstance is a circumstance, one mustn't let loose.

47. だまっとけ！ (Rude)
Shut it!

Phrase Note: As you can see, ～とけ can be used to make (rude) commands as such.

As for the group of verbs that are duration/non-internal limitation verbs such as 連絡する, 用意する, 習う, and 食べる, in the case that they are already realized before the current point in time, they do not express up to the maintaining of the later conditions of having contacted, finishing preparations, being equipped with knowledge, and being full being expressed. So, even though you can use these verbs with the first usage of ～ておく, they do not work with the second.

48. そのまま習っておく。 X

On the flip side, verbs like 隠す and 壊す are instantaneous/internal limitation verbs, and action being done, whether good or bad, can maintain the result of those verbs, 隠した・壊した.

49. 犬たちが遊ぶといけないから、壊しておかないといけない。

Since the dogs can't play [with it], I have to destroy it in advance.

50. 犬たちが遊ぶといけないから、このまま壊しておくほうがいい。

Since the dogs can't play [with it], it's best to destroy and have it as is.

The Effectiveness of ～ておいた

Aておいた deals with something already realized at the base present time, and it expresses an A which is a matter that has already been taken care of. However, at the present time, whether A was effective or not—in reference to the beneficiary factor of ～ておく—is given no concern and is left uncertain. Hopefully this should not be news to your eyes at this point in this lesson.

52. コンピューターを消さないください。アニメを見るために、つけておいたんです。

Please don't turn off the computer. I turned it on in advance to watch anime.

53. コンピューターを消してしまったんですか。アニメを見るために、つけておいたんです。

Did you accidentally turn off the computer? I turned it on in advance to watch anime.

54. 後でアニメ、見るのでしょうか？ コンピューターつけておいたよ。

You're going to be watching anime later, aren't you? I turned on the computer in advance.

55. コンピューターをつけておいたのに、アニメを見なかったの？（ちょっと女性っぽい）

Although I had turned on the computer, you didn't watch anime?

56. 出かけますから、コンピューターを消しておきました。

As I'm leaving, I turned off the computer.

57. お弁当を作っておいたけど、食べたか。

I had fixed a bento in advance, but you ate it?

These sentences show instances where Verb A was beneficial and not beneficial in the end, but like the last example shows, there are indeed times where this is not certain. What if the speaker was a husband going on a business trip and a financial emergency came about and his wife so happened to need to retrieve something from the computer and expected it to be on but couldn't get it to turn on and use it? This may sound far-fetched,

but it's just one situation where this could be bad. Thus, from the sentence alone one can't 100% make the call whether Verb A was good or bad.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 呼んどく。
2. 調しらべておきます。
3. 連絡れんらくしないでおく。
4. よく覚おぼえておけ！
5. 神かみに信頼しんらいを置おく。
6. 靴くつは玄関げんかんに置いてください。
7. 水を貯たくわえておく。
8. 生かしておけない。
9. しまっておけない。
10. 貯めておけない。

11. Consider the differences between the following and effectively explain what each means in your own words.

片付けてある。
片付けておいた。
片付いている。
片付けている。

Keys

Practice

1. To call in advanced. (Casual language)
2. I will check in advance.
3. To leave without contacting (someone).
4. Remember well!
5. To place trust in God.
6. Please leave your shoes at the doorway.
7. To store water.
8. To not be able to be left alive (literally); mortal.
9. To not be able to be put away.
10. To not be able to be stored/{left/put} aside.

11.

片付けてある: The speaker sounds arrogant and tells the listener that it was he/she that did it. If the person were some pro at clearing off things, then it would definitely imply the speaker's self-confidence.

片付けておいた: The speaker is just saying that he/she cleared things up, and there is no additional information implied as to what the speaker may be thinking or additional purposes other than simply informing.

片付いている: Shows a nature change and doesn't say if someone did it.

片付けている: Shows that it was done by a person, and the listener would think of a particular person. When the speaker uses it, it does show that it was he/her that did it, but it does not have the effect of ～である as mentioned before.

第???課: ～ために II: Due to...

～ために, as hinted at in the introduction of the previous lesson, is not limited to expressing an objective. Another primary interpretation that may or may not coincide with an objective is expressing a cause. This lesson will help you understand exactly how to use and understand this "cause-marking" ～ために and how it contrasts and coincides with the "objective-marking" ～ために.

Marking a Cause

The cause-marking ～ために is used to express the cause of something in a reserved manner. It is equivalent to the English phrase "due to." It can be seen after nouns, adjectival nouns, adjectives, and verbs. For conjugatable parts of speech, it can be seen after both the non-past and past tenses.

Part of Speech	Non-Past Tense	Past Tense
Nouns	N + の + ため (に)	N + だった + ため (に)
Adjectival Nouns	Adj. N + な + ため (に)	Adj. N + だった + ため (に)
Adjectives	Adj. + ため (に)	Adj. + かった + ため (に)
Verbs	V + ため (に)	V + た + ため (に)

Semantic Restrictions

The cause-marking ～ために is only used in declarative sentences and the questions made from said sentences. The basic sentence pattern with the cause-marking ために is "A + ために + B." The A expresses cause if B is the result of A having occurred. Generally speaking, when the agent of A and B are the same, then ～ために expresses an objective, but when the agent of A and B differ, it expresses cause. This rule of thumb only works, though, with the non-past tense. When you see ～ため (に) after the past tense or the progressive form (～ている), or whenever both clauses lack a true active agent, then it is always the cause-marking interpretation.

Particle Note: The に in ～ために is frequently omitted, and when the statement is a positive one, it's most natural to omit it. When に isn't present, the statement is as neutral as can be. When に is present, the cause stands out more, but there is no emphasis as to whether the cause is good or bad.

Usage Note: This pattern is almost entirely used in the written language and/or in news(-like speech).

1. 現在げんざいは工事こうじの**ために**閉鎖中へいさちゅうです。
(Road) currently closed **due to** construction.

2. 最もっとも得票とくひょうの多おおい候補者こうほしゃでも当選とうせんに必要なひつような票数ひょうすうに届とどかなかった**ため**、再選挙さいせんきょが行おこなわれることになった。

Due to the fact that not even the candidate who won the most votes reached the necessary count to be elected, a repeat election is to be held.

3. 彼女かのじょは容姿端麗ようしたんれい {な・だった} **ため** {に X・ø ○}、数々かずかずの男子学生だんしがくせいの憧あこがれの的まとだった。

She was the object of adoration of numerous male students **due to** her attractive face and figure.

4. 彼女かのじょは容姿端麗ようしたんれい**なために**、数々かずかずの男子学生告白だんしがくせいこくはくされたりするのにうんざりしている。

She is fed up with having numerous male students confess their love for her **due to** her attractive face and figure.

5. **このため**、フジテレビは今後こんごの放送ほうそうを取とりやめることにした。
Because of this, Fuji Television has decided to call off further broadcast (of the program).

6. 業績ぎょうせきが右肩下みぎかたさがりの時期じきに入社にゅうしゃした**ためか**、組織変更そしきへんこうの繰り返かえしで人ひとの出入でいりが激はげしい。

Perhaps due to having entered the company at a time when performance was declining, turnover was relentless with repeated structure changes.

Grammar Note: ～ためか is equivalent to “perhaps due to.”

7. 姉あねが結婚けっこんする**ため**、父ちちはアルバイトして、お金かねを貯めている。
My father is working a part-time job and saving money **because** my older sister is marrying.

Sentence Note: It may also be the case that the father is saving the money so that his daughter may marry, but this would be something one must confirm whether this is true with the father.

8. 姉あねは結婚けっこんする**ために**、アルバイトして、お金かねを貯めている。
My older sister is working a part-time job saving money **in order to** marry.

Sentence Note: Because the agent is the same in all clauses of the sentence, **ために** is interpreted here as “in order to.” The same can be said for Ex. 9.

9. 研究者けんきゅうしゃも謎なぞを探さぐる**ため (に)** 実験じっけんに乗のり出だした。

Scientist have also set out to experimenting **(in order) to** probe the mystery.

10. 秋雨前線あきさめぜんせんが近ちかづいている**ため**、曇くもり空ぞらとなりました。

The weather has become cloudy **due to** an autumnal rain front approaching.

11. 結局けっきょく最終さいしゅうバスに乗のり遅おくれた**ため**、他ほかの友達ともだちと徒歩とほでキャンパスへ帰還きかん。

Returned to campus by foot with other friends **due to** ultimately missing the final bus.

Sentence Note: This sentence is representative of blog-style writing.

12. 周まわりの人ひとに見みせびらかしたい**ために**、ゲームがしたい**ために**機種きしゅを変かえる、君きみの両親りょうしんはそんな理由りゆうで何万なんまん（円えん）も出だせるわけが無ないでしょう？

Changing devices **because** you want to show off to people around or **because** you want to play a game... there's no way that your parents could dish out tens of thousands of yen for those sort of reasons, no?

13. 夕ゆうべはぐっすり寝ねていた**ため**、地震じしんに気きが付つきませんでした。

As I was fast asleep last night, I did not feel the earthquake.

14. 十分じゅうぶんな情報じょうほうがない**ため**、サーバーを検証けんしょうできません。

Cannot access server **due to** insufficient information.

15. 濃霧のうむ**のため**、車くるまという車くるまはみなライトをつけて走はしっている。

Due to dense fog, every single car is running with its headlights on.

16. 濃こい霧きりの**ため**、管制塔かんせいとうからの指示しじがあるまで、着陸ちゃくりくを見合みあわせています。

Due to dense fog, landing will be postponed until there are instructions from the control tower.

17. サービスが悪わるかった**ため（に）**、お客きゃくさんが減へった。

Customers have diminished **since** service was bad.

～ます + ～ため（に）

There are also instances in which you will find the cause-marking ～ため（に） after polite endings such as ～ます, ～ました, and ～ません in attempt to be more formal. This is also almost entirely used in the written language. Some speakers frown on this practice, preferring the plain speech forms; however, it is nonetheless important to know that both ～ますため and ～ませんため are used a lot.

Particle Note: The particle に is seldom seen after ため in this situation.

18. 現時点げんじてんでは、まだ完治かんちに至いたっており**ませんため**、今後こんごは通院つういんして治療ちりょうを続つづける予定よていです。

Because I have yet to fully recover at this time, I plan on continuing my treatment through outpatient visits going forward.

19. 返品へんぴん・交換こうかんは受うけ付つけておりませんため、予あらかじめご了承ください。

We do not accept returns and/or trades, **so** please take this into your consideration.

20. ドリンク代だいは含ふくまれておりませんため、現場げんばでお支払しはらいいただきます。

Drink fees are not included, and **so** you will pay on site.

21. パスワードの再登録さいとうろくが必要ひつようとなり**ますため**大変たいへんお手数てすうをお掛けし申もうし訳わけございませんが、何卒なにとぞご理解りかいとご協力きょうりょくをお願いがいたします。

As password re-registration is required, we ask for your understanding and cooperation. We apologize for the inconvenience this may cause you.

22. 尚なお、掲載けいさいまでには規約違反きやくいはんがないかの審査しんさをして**おりますため**、少すこしお時間じかんがかかることをご了承りょうしょうください。

Also, **because** we are inspecting as to whether they are no TOS violations before publication, please understand that it will take some time.

23. 先さきほど頂いたいただいた内容ないようで確認点かくにんてんが御座ございました**為**ため、ご連絡致れんらくいたしました。

I'm contacting **because** of there being something to confirm in the content we received from you earlier.

Spelling Note: Although **ため** hasn't been spelled as **為** elsewhere in this lesson, Ex. 23 particularly exemplifies the style of writing seen in business communications where other phrases that would otherwise not be written in 漢字 are to give off an overall formal feel.

Ambiguity Between Objective/Cause-Marking ～ため（に）

There are some situations in which the agent of A and B are the same. Sometimes this causes ambiguity as to whether ～ために expresses an objective or a cause.

①: When A is a noun, if the noun is one that describes an unrealized thing such as 成功 (success)・健康 (health)・幸福 (happiness), then it expresses an objective.

24. 日々ひびの健康けんこう**のためにも**、毎日十分まいにちじゅうぶんな睡眠すいみんを取とりましょう。

Get plenty of rest daily **for** your daily healthy **as well**.

②: If the noun expresses something that has happened/is happening such as 事故 (accident)・失敗 (failure)・あられ (hail), then it expresses cause.

25. 事故じこのため、電車でんしゃが遅おくらせております。
The train has been delayed **due to** an accident.

26. 雨あめのために試合しあいを延期えんきします。
We will postpone the game **due to** the rain.

27. ただいま信号待しんごうまちのため（に）、停車ていしゃしております。お急いそぎのところご迷惑めいわくをおかけします。
We've now stopped **to** wait for a traffic light. We apologize for this inconvenience as you're in a hurry.

Sentence Note: Although the use of “to” as the English translation may suggest that Ex. 27 demonstrates an objective, it is not the case that the vehicle stopped purposely to wait for a light. Although such a scenario is theoretically possible, it is also the case in English that “to” refers to cause. Changing the translation from “to” to “in order to,” for this reason, would be wrong.

③: For nouns—or even verbal expressions—in the middle that are neither positive nor negative things, only context can tell which interpretation is meant. Both interpretations can also be meant, which is also true for the English equivalent “for” and “to.”

28. 再検査さいけんさをするため（に）、先週せんしゅう、一日ついたち、会社かいしゃを休やすみました。
I took a day off last week **to** get re-examined/**for** a re-examination.

29. 母ははを迎むかえるために、張はり切きって掃除そうじをした。
I revved up and cleaned **to** welcome my mother.

30. それとも利益りえきのためにそうなったのかはわからない。
And it's not clear if it happened so **because of/for** profit.

31. 今年ことしの10じゅう月がつの誕生日たんじょうびで、母ははが還暦かんれきを迎むかえるため、家族かぞくみんなで3さん泊ぱくのお泊とまり旅行りょこうに行いってきました。
Our whole family went and came back from going on a three-night trip **for** my mother turning sixty on her birthday this year in October.

第???課: ～ように: **So That...**

In this lesson, we will look at yet another grammatical expression which utilizes the purpose-marking に. This phrase is ～ように, which is composed of the noun 様よう and the particle に. 様 is a Sino-Japanese noun, but unlike the noun 為ため we learned about in the previous two lessons, 様 is not ever used in true isolation as a standalone noun—at least not in Modern Standard Japanese.

Overall, ～ように is used to express an expectation or goal that one wishes to realize or hopes will realize if possible. This is similar to ～ために; however,

～ように oppositely implies no volition on the part of the agent of the clause that precedes it.

Orthography Note: The よう in ～ように is only seldom spelled as 様. When it is, it is usually in very formal writing.

Conjugation Recap

First, let's have a bit of conjugation review. Despite the ambition ～ように following the same grammar as any other nominal expression which follows a verb, because the expression itself is totally different in terms of part of speech from its English counterpart "so that," we will look at how to conjugate ～ように with each kind of verb. Note that unlike the simile ～ように, the ambition ～ように is only used with verbs.

/eru/-Ichidan Verb	見える + ように 見えない + ように	見えるように 見えないように	So that... can be seen So that... cannot be seen
/iru/-Ichidan Verb	見る + ように 見ない + ように	見るように 見ないように	So that... sees So that... doesn't see
/u/-Godan Verb	買う + ように 買わない + ように	買うように 買わないように	So that... buys So that... doesn't buy
/ku/-Godan Verb	行く + ように 行かない + ように	行くように 行かないように	So that... goes So that... doesn't go
/gu/-Godan Verb	騒ぐ + ように 騒がない + ように	騒ぐように 騒がないように	So that... makes a fuss So that... doesn't make a fuss
/su/-Godan Verb	話す + ように 話さない + ように	話すように 話さないように	So that... talks So that... doesn't talk
/tsu/-Godan Verb	立つ + ように 立たない + ように	立つように 立たないように	So that... stands So that... doesn't stand
/nu/-Godan Verb	死ぬ + ように 死なない + ように	死ぬように 死なないように	So that... dies So that... doesn't die
/bu/-Godan Verb	運ぶ + ように 運ばない + ように	運ぶように 運ばないように	So that... carries So that... doesn't carry
/mu/-Godan Verb	飲む + ように 飲まない + ように	飲むように 飲まないように	So that... drinks So that... doesn't drink
/ru/-Godan Verb	切る + ように 切らない + ように	切るように 切らないように	So that... cuts So that... doesn't cut

<i>Aru</i>	ある + ように	あるように	So that... there is
	ない + ように	ないように	So that... there isn't
<i>Suru</i> (Verb)	する + ように	するように	So that... does
	しない + ように	しないように	So that... doesn't do
<i>Kuru</i>	くる + ように	くるように	So that... comes
	こない + ように	こないように	So that... doesn't come

Part of Speech Note: Conjugation-wise, ～ように behaves like a nominal phrase, but the purpose-marking に is adverbial in nature. Thus, as a whole, ～ように can be viewed as an adverbial phrase. This contrasts with “so that,” which is treated as a conjunction in English. Even in Japanese, though, the resultant phrase can also be viewed as an adverbial conjunctive phrase.

The Usages of ～ように

Whereas ～ために must be used with verbs of volition to express realizing a stated objective/goal, ～ように must be used with verbs that don't express volition. In fact, although ～ように is largely used with intransitive verbs, it can be used with transitive verbs so long as those verbs don't imply willful control over the action by the agent.

Just as was the case with ～ために, the concept of “agent” is very important to understanding how to use ～ように properly. First, know that the base sentence pattern is “A + ～ように + B.” Both “A” and “B” are verbal expressions. Each verbal expression will have an agent. “A” will always be the expectation/goal, and “B” will either be an effort or an exertion of influence. The nature of “B” is determined by who the agent of “A” is and whether it is the same as the one in “B.”

～ように is not particularly complicated to understand, but these factors do add subtleties to its interpretation. For each usage discussed, we will learn about what the “agent” can be for both the “A” clause and the “B” clause, what kind of verbs “A” and “B” can be, and compare usages with each other if necessary.

Grammar Note: Do not confuse this with the volitional form. The volitional form is created with the auxiliary verb ～よう for only a subset of verbs in Japanese, and conjugating with it does not follow the same rules as ～ように.

Usage 1: (目標+努力)

The words 目標 (goal) and 努力 (effort) are very important words to know in understanding ～ように. For Usage 1 of “A + ～ように + B,” A is a goal that the speaker wishes to make possible by some effort expressed by B. This usage normally involves A being a verb in the potential form, negative form, or the potential-negative form. When not specifically used with a potential verb, the verb in question should be an intransitive verb of non-volition.

Translation Note: This usage is most often translated as “so that.”

1. 来年復活らいねんふっかつできるように頑張がんばりたいと思おもいます。
I want to do my best **so that** I can make a come-back next year.

2. 韓国かんこくへ行いけるように貯金ちょきんをしています。
I am saving money **so that** I can go to Korea.

3. (自分じぶんが) 自分じぶんであることをいつか誇ほこれるように、今日きょうも明日あすも胸むねを張はるんだ。
I shall be confident today and tomorrow **so that** I one day can be proud of being myself.

4. 良よい日本語教師にほんごきょうしになれるように、経験けいけんを積つんでいき
たいと思おもいます。
I'd like to gain experience **so that** I may become a good Japanese teacher.

5. 1 いち日にち {も・でも} 早はやく解決かいけつできるようにやっていきたい。
I'd like (for us) to move forward **so that** I/we can resolve this as soon as possible.

6. クビにならないよう (に) しっかり仕事しごとを覚おぼえるのが先さきだ。
Properly learning the job comes first **(so as) to** not getting fired.

Grammar Note: Although the person that would potentially fire the agent of B would not be that said individual, the agent of B is the experiencer of A, and A is still a goal that the agent of B would be trying to make sure of.

Particle Note: Ex. 6 is an example of the agent of A and B being “one,” which is a third-person pronoun and not a first-person pronoun like all the other examples in this section. When this is not used in first person, it is possible to omit the particle に. This omission is commonplace in very formal writing and oration. It is worth noting that when this usage is used in second-person, it brings about Usage 3.

7. よく見みえるように (体からだを) 高たかく持もち上あげてもらった。
I had myself lifted up **so that** I could see well.

Grammar Note: In this example, B involves an effort which has someone do something for the speaker, but the experiencer of A and the causer of B is still the same individual, and B is still an action that person does to achieve goal A.

8. 風邪かぜやインフルエンザなどにならないように、免疫力めんえきりょくをアップさせることを意識いしきして生活せいかつしていきたいと思おもいます。
I want to live while consciously thinking of increasing my immunity **so that** I don't get colds or the flu.

Grammar Note: In this sentence, the experiencer of A is the agent of B. Even though the viruses that would cause the speaker to become ill would be the technical agent of A, Japanese does not typically treat non-human things such as this as active agents. Thus, this creates a basis for concluding that if the agent of B is not present in A that A must be the same person as B but as the role of experiencer.

9. 擦すれ違ちがうように君きみに会あいたい。

I want to meet you **so that** we may pass by each other.

Grammar Note: In this sentence, the experiencer of A includes another individual, but because one of those experiencers is the agent of B, it is still representative of this grammar.

～ようにする

In the examples above, the agent/experiencer of A and B was limited to “I” and “one.” These examples also demonstrated how this grammar point doesn’t limit A to potential verbs. The one stipulation stated was that A would otherwise need to be a non-volitional intransitive verb. However, there are in fact instances when A is a transitive verb or volitional intransitive verb. When this is the case, though, B is limited to する by default, creating the grammatical pattern ～ようにする. This phrase is translated as “to try to...” as in putting effort into making some goal a habitual action.

The thought process behind this is that the volition that would otherwise be wholly expressed by the transitive verb of A is shifted to the verb in B, する. This is the case even when the verb in A also happens to be する.

Particle Note: Ex. 6 presented a case in which the particle に can be omitted after よう, but it is important that you not run with this. This is only true for second-person and third-person in formal writing and speaking and is not applicable to ～ようにする or anything involving ～ように with first person. Although ～ようにする can be used in second-person (in question form) and third-person, ～ようにする is a set phrase in which に is obligatory and should be treated as such.

10. 牛乳ぎゅうにゅうを飲のまないようにしています。

I am trying not to drink milk.

11. 少すこしずつ野菜やさいを摂とるようにしています。

I am trying to have vegetables little by little.

12. 銀行口座ぎんこうこうざはまめにチェックするようにしています。

As for my bank account, I am trying to check it diligently.

Usage 2: (目標+働きかけ)

The word 働はたらきかけ means “pressure/encouragement.” The concept of putting pressure on someone becomes very important when the agents of A and B don’t match. When this is the case, the subject will manifest oneself in B, and B will be an action that puts pressure, encourages, and/or expresses hope/anticipation that goal A is realized. The goal of A could be several things. It could be the agent of A becoming able to do something (with potential verbs), doing some action (with transitive verbs or volitional intransitive verbs), or the experiencer of A becoming a certain state (non-

volitional intransitive verbs). Regardless of what the goal of A is, B will always involve the subject of B either hoping or doing some action to get that goal realized.

Translation Note: Potential translations for this usage include “(so) that” and “so as to.”

Grammar Note: In many ways, Usage 2 is no different from Usage 1 except that the agents of A and B don’t match. Putting pressure on someone for A to be fulfilled is in and of itself an effort.

13. 英語えいごの文法ぶんぽうが分かるように、先生せんせいは絵えを使つかって説明せつめいしてくれました。

The teacher explained using pictures **so that** (they) could understand English grammar.

Sentence Note: The agent of B is “the teacher” and the agent/experiencer of A (understanding) is the implied “they.”

14. 妻つまが無事出産ぶじしゅっさんできるように、神様かみさまにお願いがいしています。

I’ve asked God **that** my wife may deliver safely.

15. スマートに会話かいわを始はじめることができるように、自己紹介じこしょうかいで使つかわれるフレーズをいくつか紹介しょうかいしてみました。

I tried introducing (to them) several phrases used in self-introductions so that (they) could begin to be able to converse skillfully.

16. 左翼思想さよくしそうの人々ひとびとは、再分配さいぶんぱいを強化きょうかするように税制ぜいせいを変かえようと主張しゅちょうしている。

Leftists are insistent about changing the tax system so as to reinforce redistribution.

17. 官庁かんちょうは、道路どうろの建設けんせつに力ちからを入いれ、資本家しほんかや企業きぎょうを保護ほごするように政策せいさくを転換てんかんした。

The authorities changed its policy so as to put effort into road construction and protect capitalists and corporations.

18. 地震等じしんなどの振動しんどうで転倒てんとうしないよう、固定こていする必要ひつようのあるものは必かならず固定こていする。

Always secure things that ought to be secured so that they do not fall down due to vibrations caused by earthquakes and such.

Grammar Note: This example, in contrast with Exs. 16 and 17, shows how に is only omissible when the sentence is interpreted as a directive to someone, which was also the case with Ex. 6. These examples all hint at Usage 3, which we are about to come to shortly.

19. 厚生労働省こうせいろうどうしょうは、インフルエンザと診断しんだんされてから少すくなくとも2ふつ日間かかんは極力きょくりよく1ひと入りにしないよう注意ちゅういするほか、マンションやアパートの場合ばあいには窓まどや玄関げんかんを施錠せじょうし、ベランダに面めんしていない部屋へやで寝ねかせるよう呼びよびかけている。

また、多おおくの人ひとが早はやめにワクチンを接種せしめできるように、13じゅうさん歳以上さいいじょうの人ひとは原則げんそく、1いっ回かいだけの接種せしめにしてほしいと呼びかけている。

The Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare is asking that, in addition to being careful not to leave someone diagnosed with influenza alone as much as possible for at least two days, they are also calling that for those in apartment buildings or condominium high-rises have (said individuals) rest in rooms which are not facing verandas. They are also calling for people 13 years or older to limit their vaccination to just once as a rule so that more people can be vaccinated ahead of time.

20. イエレン議長ぎちょうは、自由貿易じゅうぼうえきを損そこなうことがないよう、トランプ政権せいけんを牽制けんせいした。

Chairman Yellen checked the Trump Administration so that they don't mar free trade.

21. 災害発生時さいがいはっせいじ、勤つとめ先さきや外出中がいしゅつちゅうの家族かぞくの安否確認あんぴかくにんをとるために連絡先れんらくさをみんながわかるようにしていますか？

Do you have your contact information set up so that you know everyone in order to confirm the safety of family at work or out and about for when a natural disaster occurs?

22. 科学工場かがくこうじょうの火災かさいなので、職場しょくばの仲間なかまにはマスクをしたうえで外そとに出でないように注意ちゅういをした。

With it being a chemical factory fire, I warned my friends at the workplace not **to** go outside upon having put on masks.

23. 更さらに努力どりよくしてプレミアムフライデーを定着ていちゃくさせるよう頑張がんばっていきたい。

I want to do my best strive more to have Premium Friday take hold (in society).

Grammar Note: Although A is a causative verb, the agent of A and B is still the main speaker, making it an application of a “goal” being sought for by the effort expressed in B. The causative verb, however, does imply that the goal involves directing people to make it so, thus a grammatical motivation for why に can be omitted here.

24. 子供こどもが触さわらないように、危あぶない物ものは高たかいところに置おくようにしています。

I'm **trying** to place dangerous objects high up **so that** (the) children won't touch them.

Grammar Note: This example as well as Ex. 25 show that it is possible to have more than one ～ように in a sentence. As for the first instance in Ex. 24, its purpose is to indicate the goal of having children not touch dangerous objects which is achieved by the effort of placing them up high, which is an indirect pressure on said children not to get into such trouble. The purpose of ～ようにしている indicates that this is a pressure the speaker is actively exerting and trying to maintain.

25. 母ははに心配しんばいをかけない {よう・ため} に、毎日まいにち、早はやく家いえに帰かえるようにしている。

I am trying to return home quickly every day [**so as/in order**] not **to** worry my mother.

Grammar Note: The difference between ～ように and ～ために is that although both indicate fulfilling a certain goal, only ～ために implies complete confidence of that goal being made so. ～ように puts more emphasis on the hope that the goal will be matched, but hope is not a guarantee.

26. 学生がくせいがフェイクニュースに惑まどわされないようにしようと思おもって、調査ちょうさを始はじめました。

I began an investigation hoping **to** have students not be misled by fake news.

Grammar Note: This example exemplifies how “effort” and “pressure” are one of the same thing. Do note that the よう in しよう is the auxiliary verb for affirmative volition. Its purpose is to emphasize the will of the speaker to have it so that students aren’t misled.

27. 借金しゃっきんは無なくなならないように出来できているものだ。

Debt is made so that it doesn’t go away.

Grammar Note: 出来る, here, means “to be made,” which implicitly suggests an agent who had the goal of making said liability one that wouldn’t go away.

～ようになる

Ex. 27 implies that it is possible to use ～ように in contexts in which goal A has already been achieved. This is no truer than when it is used in ～ようになる, which is intrinsically the non-volitional, intransitive form of ～ようにする. ～ようになる can be after transitive verbs to express a meaning that is close to “to come to.”

28. 毎日まいにちお茶ちゃを飲のむようになった。

I’ve come to drink tea daily.

～ようになる may also be after potential verbs to mean “to become able to.”

29. やっと理解りかいできるようになった。

I’ve finally become able to comprehend it.

～ようになる may also be after intransitive verbs to mean “to be (made) so that.” In this situation, it isn’t so much so that A is a goal that is already realized, but it may very well be an anticipation that has been borne out.

30. その携帯電話けいたいでんわは、しばらく放置ほうちすると電源でんげんが切きれるようになっている。

That cellphone is made so that it turns off when you leave it idle for a while.

Grammar Note: Like Ex. 27, the agent that would have programmed the phone had しばらく放置すると電源が切れる as a goal, and that success is embodied in ～ようになっている. The use of ～ている suggests that this success is not instantaneous with the statement but has been so.

Usage 3: Euphemized Command

When ～ように is directed toward someone, it expresses a command that indicates the manner you want the listener (agent) to do in order to achieve goal A. When the verb before ～ように is a transitive verb or volitional intransitive verb, the following effort B doesn't have to be stated. However, when the verb is a non-volitional intransitive, the effort described by B cannot be omitted as the statement becomes a directive for the state expressed by the verb of A to come true (Ex. 32).

Grammar Note: This usage may also be interpreted as an application of the simile ～ように's use of illustrating an example. In the examples below, ～ように is translated as "so that," which plays emphasis on the interpretation of goal A being carried by effort B. However, "so that" can easily be paraphrased to "in a way that." Thus, Usage 3 demonstrates that there is in fact overlap between these two different ～ように.

31. せっかく寝付ねついた赤あかちゃんを起おこさないように、（静しずかにしてよ）。
(Be quiet **so that** you) don't wake up the baby who just went to sleep.

Translation Note: When "B" is omitted from this sentence, it can be translated as "Try not to wake up the baby who just went to sleep."

32. 壊こわさないように運はこんでください。
Please carry it [**so that** you don't break/**without** breaking] it.

33. 普段ふだんから、怪あやしい儲もうけ話ばなしなどの誘惑ゆうわくに乗のらないように行動こうどうするよう心こころがけましょう。
Let's keep in mind on a routine basis **to** conduct ourselves **so that** we are not yielded to temptation by shady get-rich-quick schemes.

Particle Note: Aside from the second よう having に omitted because of it marking a directive to others, another motivation for why に is omitted here is that it gets rid of grammatical awkwardness that would be felt with two too similar instances of ～ように.

The next three examples show how this usage can also be used when the verb preceding ～ように is in polite speech. Thus, both ～ますよう（に） and ～ませんよう（に） are possible. However, the use of the auxiliary ～ます is only acceptable when ～ように is used to create a command or to simply express a hope (Usage 5)

34. 今後こんごともよろしくご指導しどうくださいますように（お願ねがい申もうし上げます）。

I ask **for** your continued guidance going forward.

35. ご確認頂かくにんいただきますよう、お願ねがい致します。

I ask that you please confirm this.

36. 寒さむい日ひが続つづきますので、お風邪かせなど召めしませんよう、ご自愛じあいのほどお願ねがい申もうし上げます。

Because cold days continue, please take care of yourself so that you do not catch a cold.

Usage 4: ～ようにと

As an extension of the previous usage of creating euphemized commands regarding manner, ～ように can be optionally followed by the quotation-marking と and then followed by a request verb of some kind. This is largely restricted to transitive verbs or volitional intransitive verbs.

37. 友達ともだちに荷物にもつを運はこぶように（と）頼たのみました。

I asked my friend to carry [the/my] luggage.

38. 学生がくせいたちに授業じゅぎょうを欠席けっせきしないように（と）注意ちゅういしました。

I warned the students not **to** be absent from class.

39. 私わたしは彼かれに原稿げんこうを書かくように（と）依頼いらいしました。

I requested to him **that** he write draft/manuscript.

40. 彼かれはみんなに注意ちゅういして運転うんてんするように（と）促うながした。

I urged everyone **to** be careful driving.

41. 花が咲くように（と）思って）毎日水をやっている。

I water the flowers daily **so that** they may bloom.

Grammar Note: Ex. 41 is an example of this being used with a non-volitional verb. When that is the case, と is obligatorily followed by a verb of thought. This puts one's hope into a mental quotation.

Usage 5: Hope/Prayer

In the same way ～ように can indicate a command to someone so that a goal can be met, when the verb involved is a non-volitional verb and nothing else follows, the resultant phrase solely expresses a hope that that goal is realized. This was hinted at in Ex. 41, but the examples below explicitly show how ～ように without “B” expresses hope. This usage is used extensively when praying and wishing for something to happen.

Typically, this usage is used with the verb preceding ～ように being in polite speech, thus creating ～ますように. If a plain form speech were to be used,

then grammar resembling that of Ex. 41 would need to follow.
Unsurprisingly, ～ませんように is also possible with this usage.

42. 当あたりますように。
May [I/you] hit (the lottery).

43. 素敵すてきな一年いちねんになりますように。
May this be a wonderful year.

44. ずっと一緒いっしょにいられますように。
May we always be together.

45. どうか怪あやされませんように。
May I not be suspected.

46. お疲つかれの出でませんように。
May you not become wary (in your endeavors).

Phrase Note: Ex. 47 is the honorific means of expressing 頑張らんばってください to superiors. It is not so ubiquitous among younger speakers, but knowledge of it and proper use of it in the workplace is highly appreciated by older generations among adult speakers.

Variation with Negative Auxiliaries

In conclusion, it's worth noting that ～ない is not the only form that negation takes and that those other forms can all be used in conjunction with ～ように. Aside from ～ませんよう, there is also ～ぬよう (に), seen most frequently in literature and song as a more poetic variant. There is also ～んよう (に) which is merely dialectical, but to many can give off the impression of a man in his 40s or older. Lastly, ～へんよう (に) is possible in Kansai Dialects.

47. 時節柄じせつがら、体調たいちょうを崩くずされませぬようご自愛じあいくださいませ。
The season being what is, please take care of yourself so that you do not upset your health.

48. この想おもいが消きえぬように、流ながれ星ぼしに願ねがうよ。
I wish to a shooting star so that this hope may not die.

49. 同おなじような事故じこが起おきんようにしっかりと頑張らんばってほしいな。
I want for them to work firmly so that similar accidents don't occur.

50. LINEラインの通知つうちを来こーへんようにしたよ。
I made it so that LINE notifications don't show up.

Dialect Note: こーへん = こない in Kansai Dialects.

Curriculum Note: One cliffhanger that remains from this lesson pertains the usages of ～ようになる and ～ようにする which fall outside their definitions presented here due to

the simile definition of ～ように. In Lesson ??? (which will be made within the coming month), we will direct specific attention to ～ようになる and ～ようにする, and in doing so we will learn more about how the simile ～ように and the ambition ～ように are interrelated.

第137課: ～ために I: In order to...

The purpose-marker に attaches to a handful of nouns, creating several important grammar patterns. This is very much the case when it follows the noun 為, which means “objective/benefit” or “result.” Although most typically seen paired with the particle に, 為 can still be used like any other noun with these meanings as demonstrated below.

1. あなたの**為**ためを思おもって言うのよ！

I’m saying this **for** your own **good**!

2. 世界せかいの**為**ためなら犠牲ぎせいは仕方しかたない。

If they’re **for the sake of** the world, sacrifices can’t be helped.

3. 子供こどもの**為**ためを思おもって言っているつもりが、逆ぎゃくにストレスを与あたえているかもしれません。

Your intentions of saying that **for** your child’s **benefit** may in fact be conversely stressing out your child.

4. 部下ぶかの沈黙ちんもくは上司じょうしの**為**ためにならないし、組織そしきにとってもその上司のキャリアにとってもプラスにはならない。

Silence from subordinates is not **for the benefit of** the boss, nor will it be a plus for the organization or for that boss’ career.

5. 情なさけは人ひとの**為**ためならず。

Compassion is not **for** other people’s **benefit**.

Grammar Note: ならず is the Classical Japanese equivalent of ではない and is commonly seen in proverbs such as Ex. 5.

When the purpose-marker に follows ため, it is used to express an **objective/goal to realize something by one’s utmost effort**. In doing so, it is often translated as “for” or “(in order) to” as we will soon see. Aside from showing purpose, in concurrence with its second definition, ため **may also be used to show cause**. This lesson will focus solely on the first meaning, and in the next lesson we’ll focus on the second meaning.

Orthography Note: It’s important to note that 為 is typically written as ため, which is how it will be spelled for the remainder of this lesson. Nonetheless, 為 is still a common spelling. Often, it is the writer’s style or the medium that dictates which spelling is used.

Marking an Objective

The primary purpose of ～ために is to express purpose. In doing so, ～ために **must be used with verbs of volition**. This does not mean that it is limited

to transitive verbs. Rather, it is limited to verbs which have an agent who has control over achieving the stated goal.

Conjugation Recap

Although ～ために follows the same grammar as any other instance of a noun following a verb, because the Japanese expression itself is very different in regard to part of speech from its English counterpart “(in order) to,” we will look at how to conjugate ～ために with each kind of verb.

/eru/-Ichidan Verb	食べる + ために →	食べるために	(In order) to eat
/iru/-Ichidan Verb	見る + ために →	見るために	(In order) to see
/u/-Godan Verb	使う + ために →	使うために	(In order) to use
/ku/-Godan Verb	行く + ために →	行くために	(In order) to go
/gu/-Godan Verb	泳ぐ + ために →	泳ぐために	(In order) to swim
/su/-Godan Verb	話す + ために →	話すために	(In order) to talk
/tsu/-Godan Verb	勝つ + ために →	勝つために	(In order) to win
/nu/-Godan Verb	死ぬ + ために →	死ぬために	(In order) to die
/mu/-Godan Verb	読む + ために →	読むために	(In order) to read
/ru/-Godan Verb	測る + ために →	測るために	(In order) to measure
Suru (Verb)	する + ために →	するために	(In order) to do
Kuru	来る + ために →	来るために	(In order) to come

Conjugation Note: This usage of ～ために is usually used with affirmative expressions, and it must be used with the non-past form of a verb.

The Four Scenarios of the Objective-Marking ～ (の) ために

Regardless of how ～ (の) ために expresses purpose, the agent of both clauses in the sentence are always the same. To visualize this, envision all instances of the purpose-ため as being “AためにB.” The someone doing A and the someone doing B must be the same person. In case you’ve forgotten what “agent” means, the “agent” of a sentence is the “someone doing X.”

Particle Note: Interestingly, the particle に is often dropped in literary settings from these two expressions when in declarative statements, but in interrogative sentences and/or comments directed at others, に is not dropped. Motivation for this is that in literary settings, grammatical connections such as に’s role of marking purpose that are easily deduced from context are dropped out of a necessity to be concise. Questions or statements directed toward others, though, present a need to be explicit, and so omission of latent parts of a sentence becomes out of place.

①: Noun A + の + ため: Thinking about A's benefit

This interpretation is used with nouns that either concern people or are/made up of people. This usage is usually translated as “for.” Even when the “A” element in the base sentence pattern “AためにB” is a noun, the particle の is conceptualized as being an abbreviation of some verbal expression. For instance, in Ex. 6, a verb that comes to mind that の before ため stands for is 援助えんじょする (to aid).

6. 貧まずしい人々ひとびとのために何百万円なんひゃくまんえんもの慈善寄付金じぜんきふきんを集あつめました。

We have collected millions of yen in charity contributions **for** the poor.

7. 今いままでで一番国民いちばんこくみんのための政治せいじを行おこなってくれた総理大臣そうりだいじんは誰だれだと思おもいますか？

Of the prime ministers up till now, who do you think has governed **for** the people the most?

8. 社会貢献活動しゃかいこうけんかつどうを通とおして、安全あんぜん・快適かいてきな社会しゃかいのために、様々さまざまな活動かつどうを行おこなっています。

Through social action programs, we are conducting various operations **for** a safe and pleasant society.

9. 言葉ことばの壁かべにより、高たかい能力のうりよくを生いかせない外国人生徒がいこくじんせいとのため、取とり出だし授業じゅぎょうや外国人生徒がいこくじんせいとサポーターなどによる教育支援体制きょういくしえんたいせいを整ととのえている。

For foreign students who cannot make the best of their high-level abilities due to language barrier, (they) have arranged an education support structure by means of separate classes and foreign-student supporters.

10. 会社かいしゃのために働はたらいていることが、お客様きゃくさまに喜よろこばれ、それが自分じぶんや家族かぞくのためになるのであればそれでいいし、自分じぶんや家族かぞくのために働はたらくことでお客様きゃくさまから支持しじされ、それが会社かいしゃにとっても有益ゆうえきならそれでいい。また、お客様きゃくさまのために働はたらいていることが、自分じぶんの喜よろこびとなり、それが結果的けっかてきに会社かいしゃの利益りえきに繋つながら、給料きゅうりょうが上あがることで家族かぞくの喜よろこびとなればそれでいい。

Working **for** the company will delight one's clientele, which is fine if it becomes beneficial **for** oneself and one's family, and if one receives support from one's clients by working **for** oneself and one's family and that is also profitable to the company, then that's fine. Also, if working **for** one's clientele becomes one's joy, which is then consequently tied to the company's benefit, and leads to a raise that becomes one's family's delight, that too is fine.

②: Noun A + の + ため: Objective to realizing A

In this usage, “Noun A” refers to some entity that can be viewed as a purpose/goal, and what follows is the objective for realizing that said purpose/goal. This usage can also have its parts reversed to have the

objective stated first with the sentence ending in ～ためだ (Ex. 11). This usage is also typically translated as “for.”

11. なぜ会社かいしゃの**ために**仕事しごと（を）するかというと、自身じしんの収入しゅうにゅう**のため**です。

As to why one works **for** one's company, it's **for** one's own income.

Grammar Note: Though the first instance of **ため** is of Usage 1, the sentence-ending instance is of Usage 2. “Working for one's computer” is the objective for realizing one's source of income.

12. 安全あんぜんな社会しゃかいの実現じつげんの**ためには**、すべての市民しみんの理解かいと協力きょうりょくが必要ひつようです。

For the realization of a safe society, understanding and cooperation of all townspeople is necessary.

13. 自分自身じぶんじしんの健康けんこうと幸福こうふくの**ために**敵てきを赦ゆるし、忘わすれましょう。

For one's own health and happiness, forgive one's enemies and forget.

14. 何なんの**ために**闘たたかうのか。権力けんりょくの**ため**か。自由じゆうの**ため**か。平和へいわの**ため**か。

What do you fight **for**? **For** influence? **For** freedom? **For** peace?

15. 責任せきにんある科学者かがくしゃは、科学かがくの健全けんぜんな発展はってんの**ために**、こうした事態じたいに自みずから適切てきせつに対応たいおうしていく必要ひつようがある。

As for the scientists responsible, it is necessary that they themselves adequately handle these situations **for** the healthy development of science.

念のため、確認したいのですが、上記の認識で大丈夫でしょうか。

I want to make sure just in case. Is my understanding above okay?

③: Verb + **ための** Noun B: Noun B which realizes stated goal

Although this can also be seen as Noun A + **ための** Noun B, the point of Usage 3 is that when ～（の）**ため** is followed directly by another noun, that Noun B is what realizes the stated goal seen before **ため**. This usage may be translated as “for” or “to.”

16. 住民じゅうみんの福祉ふくしを向上こうじょうさせる**ための**政策せいさくを実施じっしする。

To implement political measures **for** advancing the welfare of residents.

17. 幸しあわせになる**ための**たったひとつの道みちとは？

What is the one single path **to** becoming happy?

18. 場所ばしょによっては、着替きがえる**ための**部屋へやを提供ていきょうしてくれるところもある。

Depending on the location, there are also places that will offer you a room **to** change.

19. 一人暮らしをひとりぐらしをする**ための**部屋へやを借りるときには、部屋へやを貸してくれる大家おおやさんと賃貸契約ちんたいけいやくを結むすぶことになります。
When renting a room **to** live alone, you will sign a lease agreement with the landlord who is renting you the room.

20. 全すべては、家族かぞくにより良よい生活せいかつをもたらす**ためだ**。
It is all [**for** bringing/**to** bring] about a better life for (their) families.

漢字 **Note:** The verb もたらす (to bring about) is only seldom spelled as 齎す.

④: Verb of Volition + **ためには** + Expression of Obligation

～**ためには** involves willful action/control by the agent/speaker in question. For verbs that have intransitive-transitive pairs, only the transitive form should be used with this pattern. This is further enforced by the sentences ending in an expression of obligation.

21. 成功せいこうする**ためには**、面倒臭めんどうぐさいことをたくさんしなければなりませんよ。

(In order) to success, you must do lots of tiresome things.

22. 優良ゆうりょうな見込みこみ客きゃくを獲得かくとくする**ためには**、これを見極みきわめなくてはなりません。

(In order) to acquire excellent prospective [customers/clients], you must get to the bottom of this.

23. 大型船舶おおがたせんぱくを運航うんこうする**ためには**海技士かいぎしの免許めんきょが必要ひつようです。

(In order to) operate a large seacraft, [a mariner license is necessary/you must be a licensed mariner].

24. 心臓病しんぞうびょうを予防よぼうする**ためには**、どうすればいいですか。

(In order) to prevent heart disease, what should one do?

25. 英語えいごを習得しゅうとくする**ためには**、あなたの生活せいかつの中なかで英語えいごの優先順位ゆうせんじゅんいを高たかくしましょう。

(In order) to learn English, increase the priority of English in your daily life.

～ないために

As mentioned earlier, ～ないために is seldom used. This is because for it to be grammatical, 100% or near 100% confidence that the agent has control over the non-realization of “A” must be implied. Remember, the base sentence pattern for ～**ために** is “A**ために**B.” Just as how **ため** carries a very affirmative nuance of “A” being realized by a stated objective “B,” when paired with a negative sentence, this becomes a very affirmative statement that “A” won’t realize by means of the stated objective “B.”

26. スズメバチに襲おそわれないためには、どのようなことに気をつけたらよいのでしょうか。

What sort of things should one be careful of to not be attacked by wasps?

Sentence Note: This question asks about what actions—"B"—can be taken to give the agent control over the non-realization of "A"—being attacked by wasps.

27. 被害ひがいに遭あわないために、様々さまざまな詐欺さぎの手口てぐちについて知っておきましょう！

Know about the various scam tricks in order not to become victimized!

Sentence Note: The use of ～ために is appropriate so long the speaker implies that "B"—actively finding out and learning about the various scam tricks—brings about person control over not becoming a victim.

28. そうならないためにも専門家以外の人に相談するのはやめましょう。
Refrain from consulting with non-experts to make it **so** it also doesn't happen that way.

Grammar Note: Although なる typically doesn't imply volition, this sentence implies that "B" is the means by which the agent has control over "A" not realizing, thus making the sentence grammatical.

29. 死しないために生いきるのは御免ごめんだ。
I'll have nothing to do with living in order not to die.

30. ～パリ協定後きょうていごの投融资とうゆうしを誤あやまらないために～
—In Order not to Make Investment and Lending Mistakes Post-Paris Accords—

Sentence Note: The use of ～ないために is most common in headlines such as this.

第103課: Expressions with こと

There are many expressions with こと. Even though you may end up hating こと, you're going to have to use it a lot.

こと Expressions

The nominalizer こと is used in a lot of set expressions that involve nominalization. In these expressions, you should not replace こと with の.

1. ～ことがある: With the past tense it means "have done" as you have done something before. With the non-past tense it means that you "often" do something. Note that you can't use ～ことがある for the "have" in expressions like "I have done my homework". This would be the "past perfect," in which case you would just use the auxiliary ～た.

1. 富士山に登ったことがありますか。
Have you climbed Mt. Fuji before?
 2. 私は酒を飲んだことがあります。
I've had sake before.
 3. 北海道では四月でも雪が降ることがある。
In Hokkaido, it snows often even in April.
 4. 彼はジョギングすることがある。
He often jogs.
 5. 彼女を見かけることがある。
I often catch a glimpse of her.
 6. 東京で道に迷うことがあります。
I often get lost in Tokyo.
 7. 私は買い物に行くことがある。
I often go shopping.
 8. そのバスは遅れることがある。
The bus is often late.
 9. 香港に行くことがある。
I often go to Hong Kong.
 10. 私はフィンランドに行ったことがある。
I've been to Finland.
 11. 何度も寿司を食べたことがあります。
I have eaten sushi many times.
 12. あなたは歌舞伎を観たことがありますか。
Have you seen Kabuki before?
 13. この映画は前に見たことがある。
I have seen this movie before.
-

2. ～ことがない: To have not done before.
14. 東京に行ったことがありません。
I haven't gone to Tokyo.
15. あんなにきれいな日没にちぼつは見たことがありません。
I've never seen such a beautiful sunset.
16. 飛行機で行ったことがない。
I haven't gone by airplane.
17. 秋葉原に行ったことがありませんが、一度行ってみたいです。
I haven't been to Akihabara, but I would like to go once.

Culture Note: 秋葉原, often shortened to 秋葉, is a popular place in Tokyo known for cheap electronics as well as cafes that cater to オタク・ヲタク. In メイド喫茶 maids dress up in uniform.

3. ～ことはない: It shows that something is not important/necessary or is an emphatic version of #2.

18. 気にすることはない。
There is no need to worry.

19. 多分これから外国に行くことはないでしょう。
I probably won't go abroad from now on.

20. 彼の方ほうでは何ら困こまったことはない。
There's no problem at his end.

4. ～ことにする・こととする: To decide. ～ことにしている shows that one makes a routine of doing something or that one is determined/has a strong commitment to doing something.

21. あいつを忘れることにしただけさ。(Very colloquial)
I've just decided to just forget that guy.

22. 私はお酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。(Slightly formal)
I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

23. 毎日カルピスを飲むことにしています。
I make it a rule to drink Calpis every day.

24. 英語では話さないことにしています。
I am determined to not speak in *English*.

5. ～ことになる・こととなる: To be decided

25. 今年日本に行くことになりました。
It has been decided that I will go to Japan this year.

26. 新製品は5月10日に発表することになりました。
It has been decided that we will announce the new product on May 10th.

Grammar Notes:

1. こと is not needed with ～にする or ～になる when these phrases are used with a concrete noun.

2. ～ことになっている shows that the decision has been made for you. It is equivalent to "am to". It is also important in describes rules, traditions, etc.

3. と gives a more formal and punctual feeling.

6. ～ということだ: It is said that

27. ロケットが打ち上げられたということだ。
It is said that a rocket was launched.

7. ～ことだろう: Probably

28.. さぞかし無念 {な・だった} ことだろう。(やや書き言葉的)
It was certainly regretful.

8. ～ことだし: Is, so

29. 子供の(した) ことだし、彼女を許してくれないか。
It was a childish thing to do, so won't you forgive her?

9. ～ことこのうえない: There's nothing better than

30. ウケいいことこの上ない。
Nothing is more popular than this.

10. ～ことに(は) : In being

With the negative it shows that when you don't do X, Y is an undesirable result.

31. ありがたいことに、全員が無事だった。
In being grateful, everyone was alright.

32. 早く出発しないことには、大変なことになる。
In not departing early, it'll become an ordeal.

11. ～ことと思う: Hope that

33. ご承知のことと思いますが。
I hope you are aware, but...

12. ～のこと: Strengthens an adverb and is typically only used in certain expressions.

34. もちろん(のこと)、あいつは失敗した。
Of course that guy failed.

13. AことはAが: It's (the case that)...but

35. おいしいことはおいしいが、ちょっと高すぎる。
It's delicious, but it's a little too expensive.

14. Adj. + こと: Makes an adverb. It isn't really constructive and is only limited to certain phrases.

36. 長いこと待つ。
To wait for a long time.

15. ～ってことよ: It creates an admonishing tone. Remember that って = という

37. いいってことよ。
It's alright!

16. ～ことなく: Without

This pattern should not be used with habitual actions.

38. ためらうことなく、消防士は燃えている家に入った。
The firefighters went into the burning house without hesitation.

17. ～ことなしに: Not possible without

39. 福田社長はしょうことなしに謝罪をした。
Company President Fukuda apologized with little choice.

40. 試験に合格することなしに、この会社には入れません。
It is not possible to get into this company without passing the exam.

18. ～に事寄せて: On the plea/context of

41a. 彼女は出張に事寄せて東京市内の観光をしました。
41b. 彼女は出張を口実に東京市内の観光をしました。
41c. 彼女は出張に託けて東京市内の観光をしました。
She went sightseeing in Tokyo on the pretext of a business trip.

19. ～こともなげに: Easily; as if nothing happened

42. 彼は仕事を事もなげにやってのけた。
He pulled the job off as if nothing happened.

20. {どれだけ・どんなに}…ことか: Oh how....!

43. どれだけ雨が降ったことか。
Oh how it rained!

44. どんなに料理がおいしかったことか。

Oh how the dish was delicious!

45. どれだけ私が急いだことか。

Oh how I was in a rush!

46. どれだけあなたが食べたことか。

Oh how you ate!

Contraction Note: ことは as well as とは can be contracted to こ (っ) たあ・こっちゃ and たあ respectively in slang.

～だけ (のこと)

～だけ (のことは) ある shows that something is as expected, and moreover, adequate and fulfills something. A worth, skill, capability, or action is demonstrated to be suitable. Potential ways to translate this include "it is worth", "it's not surprising that (as expected)". It is often used with adverbs like {さすが・流石} (に), which means "as expected".

47. 公費こうひを削減さくげんするだけのことはある。

Cutting public spending is worth it.

48. 高くても、買っただけのことはある。

Although it was expensive, it has its worth for being bought.

49. 高かっただけのことはあるよね。

It was expensive, but it was worth it.

50. さすが (に) 大学に行っただけのことはある。

As expected, he has worth from going to college.

～だけ (のことは) あって describes a circumstance that fulfills expectations. It is interchangeable with ～だけに, but there is a slight nuance difference. With ～だけに, the situation expected might not happen, making it an unexpected surprise. It may also be found in the pattern "AがAだけに".

With A in mind, there is plenty of reason for a certain outcome.

51. ここは有名ゆうめいなだけに、沢山たくさんの方が訪おとずれます。

Since this place is famous, a lot of people visit.

52. 母も書道もあまりに身近な存在だっただけに、客観視することができなかったのかもしれない。

Since mom also had too close of an existence with calligraphy too, she might not have been able to see (her work) from an objective point of view.

By 武田双雲 in the 文藝春秋 2008 (2).

53. よく勉強しただけに、いい成績で合格しました。

Since I studied hard, I passed with good grades as expected.

Sentence Note: This student probably normally doesn't study, but this time he/she did and as expected from good effort, he/she got a just reward.

54. 彼は政治家せいじかだけに口が巧うまいでしょう。

He's probably a good talker since he's a politician.

Word Note: 政治屋せいじや would be a much more fitting word for this sentence, but it is a sensitive word to some due to implying the politician is in it for the money.

55. 津波で町全体が荒らされただけに、一戸の建物さえ残っているのにびっくりしました。

Since the entire town was devastated by the tsunami, I was surprised that just one building remained.

56. 民主党が勝手に頑固たる政策方針を結束して言い張り続けただけに、選挙戦に敗戦して自民党・公明党が当選を果たしたのであろう。(Literary)

Since the DJP continued to insist in solidarity on their stubborn policy stance as they pleased, they lost in the election battle and the LDP and Komeito won in the language (as expected).

History Note: On December 16, 2012 the Democratic Party of Japan lost to the Liberal Democratic Party, which won the majority of seats, and Komeito in a sweeping election, which would make 安倍晋三（あべしんぞう） Prime Minister for the second time.

57. 韓国は儒教文化が残るとされる国なだけに、パク・クネ氏が初めての女性として大統領選挙で選出されたことは韓国社会の変化を象徴しているだけでなく、アジア諸国の社会変動も象徴しているのかもしれませんが。

Since South Korea is deemed to be a country where Confucian culture still remains, the election of Park Geun-hye as the first female president not only symbolizes change in Korean society, but it may also symbolize societal change in all of Asia.

History Note: Park Geun-hye of the Saenuri Party of South Korea was elected with over 50% of the vote, a first for a presidential candidate in that country, as the first woman president on December 19, 2012.

58. 敵の防壁を潔く突破しただけに、宮殿に入ってからすぐに殺されたという戦死の告知は母国に大嘘だと見なされた。

Since (he) had gracefully burst through the enemy bulwark, the notice of his death in war after being killed once he had entered the palace was taken as a big lie in his homeland.

59. インドネシアは赤道に近いだけあって、うだるように蒸し暑いですね。僕の親友がジャワ島に住んでいますから、訪ねるために身軽な服装を持っていけないでしょう。

Since Indonesia is close to the Equator, it's seething hot, isn't it? As my close friend lives on Java Island, I'll probably have to take light clothing to visit.

60. ミス東大だけに美人だ。

Since she's Miss Todai, she's a beauty.

Word Note: 東大 = 東京大学.

61. 明日はテストだけあってみんな眠そうだ。
Since there is a test tomorrow, everyone is sleepy.

62. 台風の被害が大きかっただけに、都市の復興振ふっこうぶりには目を見張るものがあった。
Since the damage from the typhoon was large, there was quite something to behold in the state of reconstruction.

Usage Note: The usage of だけに to show something unexpected is becoming rarer nowadays.

63. 被害が大きかっただけに、復旧も困難を極めた。
Since the damage was large, restoration was extremely difficult.

結婚けっこんすることになりました VS 結婚することにしました

This is one time where definitions of a phrase don't help much. When students hear the first one, they think of an arranged marriage. That may be so, but it is just a euphemism that describes the current state. It's uncertain whether the person had say in it or not. It is more appropriate to use 結婚することになりました in situations where you are informing someone or talking to someone you haven't seen in a while. 結婚することにしました clearly shows you've chosen to and you are likely telling friends in a conversation.

This is a rule of thumb, but Japanese themselves don't always follow through all the time. Some may purposely use the wrong one to make people laugh or what not.

第140課: Try II: ～ようにする & ～ようとする

As you can tell just by looking, these phrases are very similar. Only the particle within the phrases are different, and they're still not that different. Nevertheless, these patterns are not quite the same.

～ようにする

～ようにする shows that you carry something out willfully in the sense of making a serious attempt. ～ようにしてください can be used to indirectly tell someone to do something by telling them what they need to try to do either for a one-off occasion or for a habitual change. It can't be used for an on-the-spot request. This よう is a noun and the pattern follows the non-past affirmative or negative forms.

1. 肉を食べないようにしています。
I am trying not to eat meat.

2. ご希望に添そうようにします。

I'll attend to that.

3. 遅れないようにしてください。

Please try not to be late.

4. 町を引っ手繰たくるようにして（、物を）奪うばい取った。

They plundered the town by snatching.

Word Note: 引っ手繰る means "to grab at". You can figuratively see the things of the town being drawn towards the bandits with this example. Remember that the よう used in this pattern is 様. Plundering a town is serious work, so this is a great example.

～ようとする

～（よ）うとする shows that one tries to materialize something, not just attempt something. This is a present action and isn't continuous for any considerable duration. What is being expressed is that you're trying to realize something.

5. 起きようとしたんですが、起きられませんでした。

I tried to get up, but I couldn't.

It may also show something right as something is about to happen. So, it's "right as...is about to try to do..., then...".

6. 朝ご飯を食べようとした時、電話がかかってきました。

Just as I was about to eat breakfast, I got a telephone call.

In this example, the phone call came in before the speaker could ever actually start eating breakfast.

When an attempt is continuous, meaning that it has a measurable duration, conscious in the sense that you are willfully trying to do it, or a non-momentous effort (such an action could have a negligible duration), ～ようにする must be used instead. Remember that ～ようにする actions have a longer duration and it is often the case that one is trying to change a habit.

This is attached to verbs of volition, and ～よう and ～う attach to the 未然形. As the class of verb determines which one you use, here is a conjugation chart for this pattern.

一段	食べる	食べる＋よう＋とする	→	食べようとする
五段	飲む	飲む＋う＋とする	→	飲もうとする
サ変	する	する＋よう＋とする	→	しようとする
カ変	来る	来る＋よう＋とする	→	来（こ）ようとする

7. ワインを飲もうとしました。

I tried to drink wine.

8. エレベーターに乗ろうとした時、後ろから走ってきた男に押おされたんです。

Just as I was about to get onto the elevator, I was pushed by a man who came running from behind.

9. その後、店で財布を出そうとしたけれど、何もなかったんです。

After that, just as I tried to take out my wallet in the store, nothing was in it.

Grammatical Limitations

There is a time restraint to ～ようとする that makes its non-past form ungrammatical in many instances. ～ようとする describes the moment right before an action/change occurs, namely the beginning of the "trial", but the action is meant to be right after when one says it. The moment you utter the phrase is the "base period" for the action implied. If say you are going abroad to Japan like in Ex. 10. You're trying to put into action some sort of change, and that change consequently is about to happen, but in doing so your attempt has already begun as you are consciously planning its execution. All of this is implied with this phrase, which is why we usually see it in the past tense or the progressive. With that in mind, Ex. 10 should sound weird. The "try" in English should clearly not match the "try" phrase being used in the Japanese.

Take note in what makes the following sentences grammatical.

10. 私は日本へ留学しようとするんです。X → 私は日本へ留学しようと思います。○
Intended: I will try to study abroad in Japan.

11. 友子、すぐ出かけようとするんですか。X → 友子、すぐ出かけようとしていますか。○
Intended: Is she going to try to leave immediately?

12. 蟻ありが自分よりも大きな食べ物を巣の方へ運ぼうとしていますよ。
Ants are trying to carry food that is larger than themselves to their hill.

13. 僕は、大学院に進むため、留学しようとしていたんです。
I was trying to go abroad to get into graduate school.

14. 僕は氷が張はるくらい寒いところにある川に氷の裂さけ目から落ちてしまった犬を助けようとしたのです。
I tried to save a dog that had fallen from an ice crack into a river in an area that was cold with ice.

3rd Person Restraints

[Xは + Verb of volition A + とする] when trying to speak figuratively, an object third person's pose or feeling right before a trial can be captured by the speaker. In actual dialogue this becomes unnatural. When in conversation, in other words, in the present time of the speaker, there is no explanation for why the speaker would conjecture definitely about the feelings of the third person. This is un-Japanese to do, and bad Japanese

grammar to try. In other words, in this situation, there is no shutter chance to be able to grasp the instant before X (the third person) does A. Consider this passage.

15. 日が昇のぼり、男の顔を照らそうとする。男は目を覚まし、起き上がろうとする。そのとき、鋭するどく刺さすような胸の痛みを感じた。まぶしい。男は太陽が怖かった。何とかして歩こうとする赤ちゃんの姿が、微笑ほほえましかった。

The sun rose and shined on the man's face. The man opened his eyes and tried to get up. Then, he felt a sharp pain in his chest. He was dizzy. The man was afraid of the sun. For some reason the figure of his baby trying to walk was pleasing.

This shows a lot of features about Japanese literature. For one, literary past can be expressed with the non-past form. This enables the passage to capture the exact moment before the trial as mentioned above. You can make conjectures about third person feeling when writing a novel or when definitively talking about someone.

16. どうして、わざわざ、そんなところへ行こうとするんだ！？やめとけ。

Why are you trying to take the efforts to go to such a place!? Quit it.

In this situation it is appropriate to use this without an evidential phrase like ～ようだ or ～らしい in dialogue because you are being critical about something that you're watching fold out in front of your eyes. Note that this pattern is actually a contraction of [Verb A+ (よ) うとして+Verb B]. So, you will see examples where all of this applies in a complex sentence.

Foreboding

When ～ようとする is used with verbs of non-volition, it shows foreboding of a situation.

17. 稲妻いなずまが走って、雷が鳴り、今にも雨が降り出そうとしていたんだよ。

Lightning was striking, thunder was roaring, and it was going to rain at any moment.

18. ワニに食くわれようとして、目が覚めたが、恐怖きょうふのあまり、身みが強張こわばっていた。

About to be eaten by an alligator, his eyes opened, but his body was rigid out of fear.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 for ワニ is 鱷.

第141課: The Particles とか, など, & なんか

In this lesson we'll learn about additional particles that are used to list things colloquially: とか, など, and なんか.

The Adverbial Particle とか

とか means "such as." It can also be interpreted as "something like". This particle may be seen after nouns, the end of conjugations such as the て形 and the 命令形. It is somewhat colloquial, and you can often see it at the end of a sentence fragment.

1. 美由紀さんはギターとか、ドラムとか、ピアノとかたくさんお稽古けいこに行ってるのよ。(女性言葉)

Miyuki is taking many lessons such as guitar, drum, and piano.

2. 民主主義は食料とか飲料のように輸出できるものではない。

Democracy is not exportable like food or drink.

3. まだ用意とかできてねえよ。(乱暴な言い方)

I still can't, uh, get prepared.

4. Youtubeを見てないで、少しは犬を散歩につれてくとか、本を読むとか、してはどう？(Casual)

How about doing something like walk the dog or read a book without watching Youtube?

5. テニスとかサッカーとかアメフトとかの球技が大好きだからね。(Casual)

Because I love ball sports like tennis, soccer, and (American) football.

6. 宏君のおばあさんは80いくつとかでまだフランス語を教えているんですって。

Hiroshi's grandmother is something like 80 years old and is still teaching French.

The Adverbial Particle など

など becomes なんか in colloquial settings. It is used to give related examples and may be seen after nouns or verbs. This particle is not usually used in list form like other similar particles such as と. However, when the need arises, it is often used together with the particle や.

Translation Note: The particle など is often also translated as "etc."

7. 私は休日は雑誌ざっしを読むなどして過すごしました。

I spent the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines.

8. 東京やニューヨーク市などの大都市には大勢たいせいの人が住んでいます。

A lot of people live in metropolises such as Tokyo and New York City.

9. 音楽やビデオゲームなどが若者に愛用されている。(堅苦しい言い方)

Things such as music and video game are cherished by young people.

10. お茶・砂糖さとう・塩など

Tea, sugar, salt and so on

11. レモンやミカンやタンジェリンなどの果物くだものを買集めた。
I bought up fruits such as lemons, mandarin oranges, and tangerines.

漢字 Note: Lemon and mandarin oranges can be written in 漢字 as 檸檬 and 蜜柑 respectively, but they are usually just spelled in カタカナ.

12. 彼など適任者てきにんしゃだね。
Someone like him is suitable, right?

13. このパソコンなどお買い得どくです。
Something like this personal computer is a bargain.

14. ヨーロッパの信用しんよう不安で海外経済が減速げんそくしていることなどが影響
えいきょうしている。
Events such as overseas economies decelerating due to uneasiness of
confidence in Europe are taking an effect.

15. こりゃなんかええじゃん？ (Casual)
Isn't something like this OK?

16. 彼女になんか会わなければよかった。
If I had somehow not met her, it would have been good.

17. 私はテレビでアニメなどは見ません。
I don't watch things like anime on TV.

18. 休暇きゅうか中に洗濯せんたくや掃除そうじなどしなくてもいい。(堅苦しい)
休みなのに洗濯とか掃除とかしなくてもいいじゃない。(Casual)
It's all right to not do laundry, cleaning and such on vacation.

19. 表彰ひょうしょうなんか受けたくもねーし。(砕くだけた言い方)
I don't want any public acknowledgement.

20. 泣いてなどいられん。(Casual; dialectical)
I can't just cry.

21. 「ああ、佐伯あさっちゃんのところに行ったの。あんなヤツの言うことなんか、
嘘っぱちだよ」
"Ahh, Sahaku went to Satchan's place? What that guy says is a downright
lie.
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

22. 今さら行くなどと言ってももう遅おそいよ。
Even if you say you're going to go now, you're already later.

23. 甲冑かっちゅうなども精巧せいこうに出来できている。
Things like the armor are also exquisitely made.

漢字 Note: 冑 is not a 常用漢字. So, don't worry about it.

Variants' Note: など may also be seen as なんと, なぞ and なんぞ. These are
all dialectical. So, who uses them is dependent on the region in question.

第142課: The Particle なんて

The particle なんて is similar to なんか and など because all three particles can be used to euphemize what they follow. However, the practical situations in which they are used can be very different. When it comes to how なんて is used, the tone that it gives is far more emphatic than the other two can ever be. It also brings about unique grammar that the other two don't.

In this lesson, we will focus solely on なんて to see how it's used. Ultimately, it is easier to learn this particle separately so that you don't confuse it with things that can occasionally be used similarly but not ultimately bring about the same nuance.

How to Use なんて

Grammatically speaking, なんて can pretty much follow anything. One reason for this is that it is partially composed of って, which you should understand as one of the most common means of citation in speech. The なん, as you can imagine, comes from 何. This provides major context to how the phrase generally works. It's emphatic; it's subjective; it's there to draw some form of attention.

なんて can pretty much follow anything. It can be seen after nouns, adjectives, adjectival nouns, verbs, as well as full statements. Interestingly enough, as you will soon see, the copula だ can actually intervene at times to add even more dramatic effect to what's being referred. The "referring" aspect makes だ's role akin to that of a citation particle like って, drawing upon the literal breakdown of なんて itself.

Part of Speech	Example
With Nouns	恋 (だ) なんて
With Adjectives	おかしい (だ) なんて
With Adjectival Nouns	新鮮 (だ) なんて
With Verbs	行く (だ) なんて
With Sentences	本当に好きだよなんて

Although overall it is fair to say that なんて is used in mostly negative situations, it is not limited to this. Regardless of whether the statement is positive or negative, it will euphemize whatever it follows. This euphemizing can then have a belittling, critical, or supportive tone depending on the sentence.

1. 彼女かのじょ、包丁ほうちょうなんて使ったことあるのかな。
I wonder if she's ever used a kitchen knife.

2. そもそも決闘けっとうなんてしませんよ。
We're not going to be having a duel in the first place.

3. もう、健太君けんたくんなんて知しらないわ！
I don't know you anymore, Kentaro!

4. 私わたしなんてまだまだです。
I still have a long way to go.

5. アライグマなんて怖こわくないよ。
There's nothing scary about raccoons!

6. バスク語ごなんて簡単かんたんさ。
Basque is just easy!

7. 野球やきゅうなんてちょっと詰つまらない？
Isn't baseball a little boring?

8. 雪合戦ゆきがっせんなんて子供こどもじゃあるまいし。
A snowball fight...it isn't as if I'm a child.

9. 人生じんせいなんてそんな素晴すばらしいものじゃない。
Human life is not such a wonderful thing.

10. 人間にんげんなんて脆もろいものなんでしょうね。
People really are weak things, aren't they?

11. セス先生せんせいなんて聞きいたことねー。
I've never heard of this Seth-sensei.

12. 漢字かんじなんてどうしても書かけないの！
I can't write Kanji no matter what I do!

13. なんで試験しけんなんてやるんだろ。
Why is it that we do exams anyway?

14. お金かねなんて要いらない！
I don't need any money!

15. 無意味むいみな愚痴ぐちなんて聞ききたくもない。
I don't want to hear your meaningless complaining.

16. 本来ほんらい白しろいはずのものが赤あかいなんてちょっと神秘しんぴ（的てき）
だよね。
Something that's originally supposed to be white being red is a little
mysterious, isn't it?

17. 男性だんせいじゃあるまいし、鼻下びかが青あおいなんて洒落しゃれになりませ
ん。
It's not as if I'm a man; my upper-lip being blue is no joking matter.

18. 始はじまりが怖こわいなんて、そんなの当然とうぜんだからね。
That's 'cause it's natural for the beginning to be scary.

19. あれほど醜みにくいなんて、本当ほんとうに残念ざんねんなことだ。
It truly is a shame that (he) is so ugly like that.

20. 図々ずうずうしいだなんて、とんでもございません。
It's absolutely not audacious (of him).

21. 体型たいけいが美うつくしいだなんて、照てれるわ。
I get embarrassed when I'm told my figure is beautiful.

22. 必かならずずっと一緒いっしょ（だ）なんて、あり得えないんじゃない？
Always being together forever is impossible, no?

23. 日常会話が簡単（だ）なんて嘘だよ！
It's a complete lie that daily conversation is easy!

24. え、まさかあいつが俺おれのことを好きだなんて・・・
What? You're saying that guy likes me!?

25. 仏様ほとけさまを焼やき払はらうなんて、人間にんげんの出来ることじゃない
と思おうがね。
Though I'm pretty sure reducing the Buddha into ashes is not something
man can do.

26. 我わが国くにの神々かみがみを疑うたがうなんて、とんだ身分みぶんだな。
What unthinkable position you're in doubting the gods of our country.

27. 息子むすこさん早稲田わせだに受かったなんて凄すごいですね。
That's amazing how your son got accepted to Waseda (University).

28. 正月しょうがつに一度いちども帰かえらないなんて何なにか事情じじょうがあるか
らだろうしなあ。
There's probably got to be some reason behind (him) not going home even
one on New Year's.

29. 重要じゅうような会議かいぎに遅刻ちこくするなんて、許ゆるせない。
It's unforgiveable to be late to an important meeting.

30. 行いくなんて言いってないよ。
I'm not saying that I'm going.

31. 子供こどもの猿さるも次つぎの年としに子こをたくさん産うむなんてことはできな
い。
The young monkeys can't also give birth to a lot of offspring the next year.

32. この猿さるちゃん、子こをたくさん産うむことなんてできないもん。
This little monkey, there's no way it can give birth to a lot of offspring.

33. 全員ぜんいんに好すかれるのなんて無理むりだよな。
It's impossible to be liked by everyone, huh.

34. 禿はげるのなんて絶対嫌ぜったいいやだ！
Going bald would just be absolutely awful!

35. タイムマシンが出来できるのなんて不可能ふかのうなんですよな？
Building a time machine is impossible, right?

36. 英語えいごでできるのなんて成人せいじんとしては当あたり前まえじゃないか。
Being able to speak English is only natural as an adult, is it not?

37. 智美ともみがああいう人ひとだったなんて、知しらなかったです。
I had no idea Tomomi was that kind of a person.

38. つい最近さいきんまで高校生こうこうせいだったなんて信じ信じられませんね。
I can't believe that I've been a high school student up until just recently.

39. この世よも終おわりだなんて考かんがえるのは愚おろかだ。
Thinking something like the world's going to end is foolish!

40. どうしてここに来きたのかなんて、決きまっている。
It's a given as to why (he) came here.

41. 呼よび捨ててか、さん付づけかなんて考かんがえる余裕よゆうはなかった。
There was no leeway to ponder whether to address him with or without an honorific.

As a Final Particle

To the same effect as above, you can also find **なんて** at the end of a sentence/statement to show utter surprise/disbelief. Depending on the tone, this may be used in ridicule as well.

42. どうしていきなりお酒さけなんて・・・
Why alcohol all so suddenly?

43. まさか、和睦わぼくの道みちを選えらぶなんて・・・
Wow, to think (they're) choosing the path of reconciliation...

44. お正月しょうがつがこんなに大変たいへん（だ）なんて・・・
To think New Year's would be this intense...

45. どちらも本物ほんものだなんて。
Both are the real thing?!

46. これからずっと怯おびえて暮くらさなきゃいけないなんて。
The thought of us having to live from here on out in fear....

47. まだまだ4し月がつなのに竜巻たつまきが発生はっせいするなんて・・・
Tornadoes forming even though it's still only April...

48. 愛あいしてるよなんて。
Huh, I love you...

49. あいつが「竹島たけしまは実じつは独島トクトだと主張しゅちようしてる」なんて
もっばらの噂うわさだよ。
The persistent rumor is that he "claims Takeshima is Dokdo".

Culture Note: 竹島 is a group of islands in the Sea of Japan called the "Liancourt Rocks" in English. However, the islands are under territorial

dispute with Korea. Japan claims they're part of 島根県しまねけん (Shimane Prefecture). However, Korea claims them as theirs under the name 独島.

With the Copula や

The particle なんて does not follow the copula や, however, which is used in dialects like 関西弁 instead of だ.

50a. 東京弁とうきょうべん：買かってあげる（だ）なんて言っていない。○

50b. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるなんて言いうてへん。○

50c. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるやなんて言いうてへん。X

I'm not saying that I'll buy it for you.

何て

As you may have already noticed and as was alluded to earlier, you can also view なんて as being equivalent to など and 何 and 何て. As you can see in the following sentences, spelling it as 何て is possible when it is used more literally.

51. 今いま、何て言いったんだろ・・・

What was it that (he) said now?

52. 名前なまえは何ていうの。

What's your name?

53. この漢字かんじ、何て読よむの？

How do you read this Kanji?

54. こんな噂うわさが広ひろまってるなんて、上司じょうしが知しったら何なんて言いうかな。

I wonder what the boss would say if he found out this sort of rumor was surprising.

55. 池田いけださんなんて人ひととは知しりません。

I don't know a person by the name of Ikeda-san.

56. スイーツでまずいなんてことってあんまりないですよ。

There really aren't that many times in which something is a sweet but actually tastes bad.

Sentence Note: In Ex. 56, you could interpret なんて as being the same as など and 何.

57. 旦那だんななんて呼よばれる身分みぶんじゃない！

I'm not in the position to be called "husband"!

58. 「仕事しごとと私わたし、どっちが大事だいじなの？」なんて絶対ぜったいに言いうてはいけない禁句きんくなんですよ。

“Which is more important, work or me?” is a taboo that you should absolutely never utter.

59. すごいなんて言葉ことばでは全然足ぜんぜんたりない。
Using a word like “awesome” is totally not good enough.

60. 私わたし、なんて事ことを！
What have I done!

Oh How...

Lastly, it is also important to note that **なんて** can be used in its own set phrases (Ex. 64) as well as an adverb meaning “oh how...,” in which case it is synonymous with **何と** (Exs. 61-63).

61. カナダの冬ふゆって、本当ほんとうになんて美うつくしいんでしょう。
Oh how beautiful winter in Canada truly is!

62. うちのアパートの水道水すいどうすい、なんてまずいんだ。
The tap water at my apartment, it’s just awful.

63. なんてつまらないんだ！
How boring!

64. なんて、（冗談じょうだんで）ね。
Just joking.

第143課: The Particles ほど & くらい

Although very similar, **ほど** and **くらい**—also **ぐらい**—are not always the same.

The Adverbial Particle ほど

The first thing that you should know about the particle **ほど** is how it is attached to various parts of speech and what sort of particle combinations are allowed.

Class	Pattern	Example
名詞	N+ほど	日本ほど
形容詞	連体形+ほど	できないほど
形容動詞	連体形+ほど	楽なほど
動詞	連体形+ほど	考えるほど

As far as particles are concerned, the typical order is noun + case particle + **ほど**. However, **が**・**を** are deleted. If they are to be used, they are used right after **ほど**. However, the particles such as **に**, **で**, and **から** are always after it.

Approximation

After a quantity, ほど shows an **approximation**. This usage is interchangeable with くらい・ぐらい.

1. 9年間ほど
About nine years
2. 旅は10時間ほどかかるでしょう。
The trip will probably take about ten hours.
3. そのロープは長さが六メートルほどあります。
The rope is about six meters long.
4. することが山ほどあるよ。
I have a pile of work to do.
Literally: I have a mountain of stuff to do.
5. あと1ヶ月ほどで夏休みになる。
I'll be on summer vacation in about a month.
6. この仕事はあと2週間ほどあれば出来上がりますか。
Will this job get done in around two weeks?
7. {細石・小石} ほどの大きさの石

A stone the size of a pebble

Reading & Meaning Note: 細石 = さざれいし. This is smaller than a 小石. However, in English you use the same word.

8a. あの橋はどれ {ほど・くらい} 長いんですか。(More natural)

8b. あの橋の長さはどれくらいですか。
How long is that bridge over there?

9. お(お)よそ50人(ほど)の人
Around fifty people

Word Note: お(お)よそ = Approximately

Extreme Example

It may also show an **extreme example**. It takes a specific situation and evaluates its extent. So, it is often translated as "to the extent that". It may be seen after nominal or verbal expressions. Of course, idiomatic translation may very well blur this literal definition.

10. 言葉にできないほど素晴らしい。
It's too wonderful for words.
11. 彼は歩けないほど弱ってはいなかった。
He wasn't weak enough to not walk.

12. 彼を見てるのが気の毒なほど悄気しょげてる。(Casual)
Just seeing him makes me feel bad.
13. 彼はそれを試みるほど勇敢ゆうかんな兵士ではありません。
He isn't a brave enough soldier to attempt that.
14. 全国民は戦争に優勝して、涙なみだが出るほど嬉しかったです。
The entire nation was happy to the point of tears from winning the war.
15. 振り解ほどけないほど彼女を確しっかりと抱き締しめた。(叙述的な表現)
I hugged her so tightly that she couldn't break away.

漢字 Note: しっかり(と) is usually written in ひらがな. Using the 漢字 is more old-fashioned.

When ほど is used to make a negative comparison such as in the following sentences, it cannot be replaced with くらい・ぐらい.

16. クリスマスほど待ち遠どおいしいものはない。
There's nothing I look forward to more than Christmas.
- 17a. 鈴木さんは外見ほど年をとっていませんね。(Potentially rude)
17b. 鈴木さんは見た目より若く見えますね。(More natural)
Mr. Suzuki's not as old as he looks.
18. 高橋氏は外見ほどの年齢ねんれいじゃないよ。(失礼な言い方)
Mr. Takahashi is not as old as he looks.
19. 日本に住むほど幸せなことはありません。
There is nothing more happy than living in Japan.
20. 足はこの程度なら医者に行くほどのこともない。
If your foot is only this bad, there's no need to go to the doctor.
21. 怒おこるほどのことではありません。
It's not something we need to get angry about.
22. 心配するほどの怪我けがではありません。
It's not an injury to worry about.
23. 病状は手術が必要なほどではない。
The condition of her illness is not to the point of surgery.
24. あいつは俺はどうまく運転しねー。(Vulgar)
He doesn't drive as good as me.
25. 私の知識ちしきなど先生のそれとは比較ひかくにならないほどお粗末そまつなものでございます。(Humble)
My knowledge is not even comparable to that of the teacher's.
26. 散歩ほどいいものはないね。
There's nothing like a walk, right?

27. 今日の微分積分学びぶんせきぶんがくの試験は思ったほど難しくなかった。
Today's calculus exam was less difficult than I thought.

28. 結果は後程ご一報ください。(Formal)
Please inform us the results later.

敬語 **Note:** 後程（のちほど） = あとで.

AすればAするほど

This pattern means "the more...the more...". Without the conditional, you'd just show that there is a link between the extent of the pattern and the phrase that follows. The overall sentence can either be positive or negative depending on whether you are showing an increase or decrease in the degree of something respectively. You **cannot** replace ほど with くらい・ぐらい for this usage!

Verbs	泳ぐ → 泳げ → 泳げ + ば = 泳げば + 泳ぐほど = 泳げば泳ぐほど
形容詞	新しい → 新しいけれ + ば = 新しいければ + 新しいほど = 新しいければ新しいほど
形容動詞	簡単だ → 簡単な（+ば） = 簡単なら（ば） + 簡単なほど = 簡単なら（ば）簡単なほど

Politeness Note: Using であれば instead of なら is more formal/polite.

29. 多ければ多いほどよい。

The more, the better it is.

30. 複雑ふくざつなら複雑なほど壊れやすいです。

The more complicated something is, the easier it is to break.

31. 何でも、練習すればするほど上手になります。

With anything, the more you practice, the better you become.

32. 価格かかくが高ければ高いほど、需要じゅようは減少げんしょうする。

The higher the price, the smaller the demand is.

33. 骨董品こっとうひんは古ければ古いほど価値があがる。

The older antiques are the more value it has.

34. 早ければ早いほどいいです。

The sooner, the better it is.

35. 高く登れば登るほど寒くなってくる。

The higher you climb, the colder it gets.

36. パソコンは操作が簡単であれば簡単であるほどいいです。

The easier the operation of a PC is, the better it is.

37. 田舎いなかに住むほど幸せなことはないと思う。
I think that nothing is happier than living in the country.

38. 人が多ければ多いほど楽しい。
The more the merrier.

39. 深ければ深いほど暗くなる。
The deeper you get, the darker it gets.

The Adverbial Particle くらい・ぐらい

The way くらい・ぐらい are attached to things is the same as with ほど, but its combination with other particles is slightly different.

Class	Pattern	Example
名詞	N+くらい・ぐらい	一円 {くらい・ぐらい}
形容詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	見えない {くらい・ぐらい}
形容動詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	不思議な {くらい・ぐらい}
動詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	捨てる {くらい・ぐらい}

The particles が and を if used with it are after it. The particles に, へ, で, と, から can all be seen before or after it.

Approximation

Introduces something and then shows the degree or quantity almost equivalent to that. When you are saying that something is the same degree, you must use くらい・ぐらい.

40. ニューメキシコ州も同じ {○ くらい・○ ぐらい・X ほど} 暑いですよ。
New Mexico is just as hot.

41. 8時くらいです。
It's about eight o'clock.

42. リーチは立原の方が極端なぐらい長い。
As for reach, Tachihara's is longer to an extreme.
From 擬態 by 北方謙三.

43. 彼は36歳ぐらいだ。
He is around thirty six years old.

44. 30分ぐらいしてから、もう一度電話をかけてみました。
I tried calling again after about thirty minutes.

45. 私の捕った魚はこれくらいの大きさでした。
The fish I caught was about this big.

46. 昼くらいに雨が止んだ。

It stopped raining around noon.

47. それくらいのことでめげるな。

Don't be discouraged at such a thing.

48. 眉まゆが隠れるくらいに切ってください。

Please cut it so that my eyebrows are covered.

49. そして仲田が、その女を自分の妹あつかいし、馬鹿にしているのを勿体もったいないことをする奴やつだ位に感じた。

Furthermore, he felt that Nakata was this guy treating that (perfect woman for him) as his own sister, making her out to be stupid, having her do things unfit for her class.

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤むしゃのこうじさねあつ.

Grammar Note: An entire clause is modifying 位, the 漢字 spelling of くらい, and if this were written in a more modern fashion, quotations would have probably been used to reinforce a short spoken pause that aids in the grammaticality of this sentence.

Orthography Note: This sentence comes from a book originally published in 1920, which is why くらい is written in 漢字. It would be somewhat old-fashioned to do likewise today.

Belittling

Introduces something of light degree and limits it to a certain level. This can be seen in the pattern XのはYくらいだ (Y is about the only X). Thus, again, this usage creates a minimal phrase. This belittling usage is not interchangeable with ほど.

50. せめてタバコくらいやめてくださいよ。

The least you can do is stop smoking.

51. 簡単な料理ぐらい私だってできるよ。

Even I can cook a simple meal (to that extent)!

52. 子供でもそんなことくらい分かる。

Even a child would understand (to the extent of) something like that.

53. 「韓国料理は、何でも好きですか」 「いいえ、私が好きなのはキムチくらいです」

"Do you like any Korean food?". "No, kimchi is about the only thing I like".

54. 「このごろの子供は、本をあんまり読まんと聞いたが」 「ええ、ほんとに。よく読むマンガぐらいなんだよね」 「そりゃ困ったな〜」 (すごく砕けた言い方)

"I heard that kids these days don't read books much". "Yeah, that's true. Manga is just about the only thing they often read". "That's no good".

55. 「あの、君はスポーツは何でもできるんでしょ」「いや、実は、僕ができるのは
{サッカー・卓球・野球・バドミントン・テニス} くらいだよ」
"Uh, you can play any sport, right?". "No, actually, [soccer; table tennis;
baseball; badminton; tennis] is about the only thing I can".

56. 空一面真っ赤かになるくらいの見事みごとな夕焼けでした。
The splendid sunset was to the extent that the whole sky turned
completely red.

57. 恥はずかしくて穴があったら入りたいくらいだった。
I was so embarrassed to the extent that if a hole opened up I would want
to enter it.

2. Shows an extreme matter. ～くらいなら～ほうがましだ = "rather...than...".
However, it should be understood that both actions are unfavorable. It's just
you say that you'd rather do the latter.

58. 降参するくらいなら死んだほうがましだ。
I'd rather die than surrender.

59. 君を捨てるくらいなら死んだほうがましだ。
I would rather die than abandon you.

60. 期日きじつに遅れるくらいなら、徹夜てつやをして完成かんせいさせた方がまし
だ。
I would rather have it completed overnight than be late to the deadline.

Phrase Note: ましになる is used to show that something is improving, but
it's not fully good. As such, it's not really appropriate to a lot of people to use
such a phrase to refer to someone feeling better. However, there are areas
like the Kansai Region where it is rather common.

61. 痛みがましになる。
The pain improved.

62. 通りから広場に出たところで、少し混雑がましになった。
As I entered into the plaza from the street, the traffic got a little better.
From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

3. ～くらい～はない shows something being the most....

63. 彼くらい努力する人はいません。
There is no person putting effort into it than him.

64. 地震 {ほど・くらい} 怖いものはない。
There's nothing as scary as an earthquake.

4. ～くらいで gives that the feeling that something is at a small amount or
significance. It is often used in suggesting or belittling something.

65. テストが悪かったぐらいで、泣かないで。(Casual)

Don't cry over a doing bad on a test.

66. スペイン語習ったことはあるけど、ちょっとしゃべれるようになったぐらいでやめてちゃったんで、本を読めるようにはならなかった。(すごく砕けた言い方)

I've studied Spanish, but I quit when I became able to speak it, so I didn't end up becoming able to read a book.

67. このレッスンはやさしいから、ちょっと練習するぐらいで、終わりましょう。

Since this lesson is easy, let's end with a little practice.

第144課: The Particle より

In this lesson we will learn how to compare things with the particle より.

The Case Particle より

より creates a comparison and it translates to "than". There is no change to the adjective in Japanese like there is in English with the suffix -er. As illustrated in the chart, the Japanese word order is still flexible. Notice the differences in word order between English and Japanese.

English X is adj -er than Y.

Japanese X(は・の方が) Yより(か・も) adj.

Japanese Yより(か・も)X(の方)が adj.

Contraction Note: よりか can be contracted to よか in slang.

Usage Note: よりか is a くだけた言い方.

1. このリンゴはあのリンゴより大きい。

This apple is bigger than that apple.

2. 俺はお前より背が高いぞ。(Rough male speech)

I'm taller than you are!

3. 彼女は臆病者が何よりもいやだった。

She hated a coward more than anything.

4. 君は誰よりも早く走ったな。(Male speech)

You ran faster than anyone else, didn't you.

5. 祖父は父よりゆっくり話す。

My grandfather speaks more slowly than my father.

6. 俺にはあんたよりずっと多くの歌があるんだ。(Rough male speech)

I have much more songs than you do.

7. 彼女は僕より {4つ・4年・4歳} 年下だ。

She is 4 years younger than me.

8. 昨日よりも今日の方がずっと暑い。
Today is much hotter than yesterday.
9. あいつは、不良よりマヌケだぞ。(Rough male speech)
He's more so a fool than a rogue.
10. 薬を飲むより仕事してくれ！(乱暴な言い方)
Work instead of drinking medicine!
11. 彼は僕よりお前を選んだのか。(Male speech)
He chose you instead of me?
12. ここに残ってるより出て行きたいの？
You'd rather go than stay?
-

より仕方がない

より仕方がない = There is no other choice but to.

13. 「車が故障したんですが」「じゃ、歩いて行くより仕方ありませんね」
"My car broke down". "Then, there's no other choice but to walk".
14. 「僕、料理は、ぜんぜんできないよ」「じゃ、自分で作るよりしょうがないね」
"I can't cook at all". "Then, you have no choice but to do it yourself".
15. 「今日の宿題を忘れてきちゃった」「じゃ、早くやりなおすよりしょうがないよ」
"I accidentally forgot today's homework". "Then, you have no other choice but to redo it quickly".
-

2. "From" in the sense of starting, distance, space, or quantity. This is a more polite version of から.

16. 四時よりも後なら結構です。
It'll be good if its after 4 o' clock.
17. ホームの白線より内側でお待ちください。
Please wait inside the white line on the platform.
18. 真ん中より後ろに置いてください。
Put it behind the middle of it.
20. これより先は立入禁止。
It's forbidden to pass by from here!
21. 学校は駅より手前にあるのです。
The school is before the station.
22. 会議は五時より行います。
The meeting will be held at 5 o' clock.

23. 雪は未明より降り続いています。
The snow will continue to fall from dawn.
24. 私共は朝6時半より営業しております。
We are open from 6:30 A.M.
25. 子どものころよりお互いに知っています。
We've known each since we were children.
26. 羽田空港より出発しました。
We departed at Haneda Airport.
27. 横浜港より出港しました。
We departed from Port Yokohama.
28. 吉田さまよりお電話がございました。
You got a telephone call from Mr. Yoshida.

3. "Verb + ～よりほかない" means "nothing else to do but..." This is a more formal rendition of simply using ～ほかない (Ex. 30).

29. どうしても電話が通じない。こうなっては、仲谷君の家へ行くよりほかない。(やや書き言葉的)

I can't get through on the phone no matter what. This being the case, there's nothing I can do besides going to Nakaya's house.

30. ケーブルカーが故障で動かへん。直るまで待つほかあらへんわ。(Kansai Dialect)
The tram is out of order due to a collision. There's nothing else to do besides wait until it's repaired.

Dialect Note: ～へん = ～ない.

第145課: Similarity: ～ようだ, ～みたいだ, & ～っぽい

Though all of these phrases have a common theme, their grammar and usages do vary significantly. So, please be sure to not rush through them even if you've seen them show up many times in your studies thus far.

～ようだ

様 is a noun that literally means "appearance". ～ようだ is a 形容動詞 conjugating ending that comes from it, and it has many applications.

～ようだ

Overall, ～ようだ is like "like" or "seem". よう is a noun itself, so when used after nouns, precede it with の. When after 形容動詞, use な!

1. 僕の犬は言葉が分かるようだよ。

My dog **seems** to understand words!

2. 爬虫類はちゅうるいのようで、実は、哺乳類ほにゅうるいだ。

It **looks like** a reptile but in reality is a mammal.

漢字 Note: 爬 and 哺 are rare. So, you don't need to worry about them.

3. すこし塩辛しおくらいようですね。

It's **kind** of salty, don't you think?

Word Note: 辛い is often used to mean "salty" in West Japan. The word 塩っぱい also exists. In this word, 塩 is pronounced as しょ.

4. どうも壊こわれているようだ。

Presumably, it's broken.

5. みな元気なようです。

Everyone **seems** fine.

6. 彼はとても悲しんでいるようです。

He **seems** to be very sad.

7. 何か隠かくしているようです。

He **appears** to be hiding something.

8. あの人を見たような気がしました。

I felt **like** I saw that person before.

9. ちょっと怒おこったように聞こえた。

I heard her **like** she was a little angry.

10. ステーキかまたはそれと同じようなものを食べる。

To eat steak or something just **like** it.

11. 彼は、何も言いたくないような、押おし黙だまった表情をしてる。

He's reticent **as if** he doesn't want to say anything.

12. 彼は、何も言いたくないようで、ぶすっとしてる。

He's in a bad mood not saying anything.

13. 難しかったようです。

It **looks like** it was difficult.

14. 対策もなく、俎板まないたの鯉こいのようなものだ。(Idiomatic)

It's **basically** a hopeless situation without a countermeasure.

まるで&~かのようだ

~ようだ is also often paired with まるで to make "just like", and when used with the particle か, it creates "as if".

15. マイクさんはまるで天使のような人ですね。
Isn't Mike just **like** an angel?
16. まるで人でも殺したかのように、ぼうぜんとしてる。
He's dumbfounded as if he's killed a person.
17. 彼の病気はまるで神様が治してくれたかのようにきれいに消えましたよ。
His sickness disappeared **as if** it was by God.
18. 地に膝ひざをつくかのように木が風に揺れていた。
The trees swayed in the wind **as if** they knelled to the ground.
-

～よう {なら・だったら}

～よう {なら・だったら} euphemizes a supposition.

19. この治療ちりょう {手当て・処置しょち} で治らないようだったら病院に行ってくださいね。
If you don't get better with this medical treatment, please go to the hospital, OK?
-

～ようになる

～ようになる shows that a state changes. It indicates a state that could not be done has become one that can be done. It can also be used in the negative. Also, ～ないようになる can be contracted to ～なくなる. The pattern can also be used to show acquisition of a habit or custom.

20. 六年ぶりに旧友きゅうゆうと会えるようになった。
After six years I was **able to** meet an old friend.
21. 日本語で挨拶あいさつができるようになりましたよ。
I have become able to greet in Japanese.
22. 「日本語の勉強はどうですか」「宿題が簡単にできるようになりましたし、それに日本人と毎日会話をしています」
"How are you Japanese studies?" "Homework has become easier to do, and furthermore, I converse with Japanese people every day".
23. 最近、彼女はよく話すようになりました。
She recently **started to** talk a lot.
24. 彼はテレビを見なくなりました。
He stopped watching TV.
-

The Noun よう

The noun よう may be after the 連用形 of verbs to show appearance or method. It can also function as a nominalizer.

25. 言おう様ない (Rare) = 言い様のない
Indescribable

26. その苦しみようは見えていられない。
I can't stand watching that miserable condition (of that man).

～みたいだ

～みたいだ is for the most part a more casual variant of よう for comparison, but since it does come from 見る (to see), it shows that something "resembles...". It acts as a 形容動詞. So, you can see ～みたい (adjectival) and ～みたい (adverbial). The negative should be ～ないみたいだ, but in slang you may still see ～みたくない.

27. 兄は侍さむらいみたいな人だね。
My older brother is like a samurai.

28. 真まっ暗で雨が降ったみたいだ。
It was like rain had fallen in pitch black.

29. ガムみたいに伸びるものだ。
It's a thing that stretches like gum.

30. もう売り切れみたい。
It looks like it's already sold out.

31. 誰もいないみたいだが。
It seems that nobody is here, but...

32. 夢みたいな話だ。
That's a story resembling a dream.

33. 壁かべは紙みたいに薄うすいよ。
The walls are thin like paper.

34. 味がすこし薄いみたいです。
The taste seems to slightly be weak.

Origin Note: ～みたい comes from ～みた様, which can still be seen in literature.

～っぽい

The 形容詞 conjugating suffix ～っぽい is often discarded as slang. However, it is becoming very popular. It is very similar to "-ish". After the stems of adjectives, it shows a distinct nature. With nouns, it shows a strong impression about what something is like. However, when attached to the 連用形 of verbs, it shows tendency. Now it can be seen after the 終止形 to mean "looks like".

35. 彼女は全然女っぽくないな。
She's not womanly at all!
36. 君の欠点けってんは忘れっぽいことだぞ。(Masculine)
Your fault is that you're forgetful.
37. なんて嘘うそっぽい話や！(関西弁)
What a lie!
38. 埃ほこりっぽい
Dusty
39. 最近忘れっぽくなった。
I tended to forget the recent times.
40. 荒あらっぽい行動。
Rough conduct.
41. 彼は熱ねつつぽく身が震えていた。
His body was feverishly shaking.
42. この酒は水っぽいの。(Feminine)
This sake is watery.
43. 理屈りくつっぽい
Argumentative
44. マジで安っぽいテレビだな。(Casual)
It's really a cheap TV, isn't it?
45. やるっぽい！(Casual)
It looks like he's doing it!
46. 病院っぽい雰囲気ふんいき
A hospital-like atmosphere.
47. 子供っぽいことすんなよ。(Masculine)
Don't do something childish.
48. バナナっぽい香かおりが好きだわ。(女性言葉)
I like banana-like fragrances.
49. 黒っぽい車でした。
It was a blackish car.
- 50a. 哀れっぽい声
50b. 哀れめいた声 (More serious)
A piteous voice

第146課: Seem: ～そうだ

～そうだ acts like a 形容動詞 and is only used with adjectives or verbs. It just can't be used with plain nouns. Its usages have significant differences in grammar. There are two grammatical ways it can be used. In this lesson, we will focus on how it is used when it attaches to the 連用形.

Attaching to the 連用形: Conjecture

From the outward appearance, ～そうだ expresses the speaker's intuitive subjective guess on the nature, quality, or properties of something or someone. The statement isn't proven. So, if obvious, it's not applicable. This is like "seem to be (doing)". ～そうだ attaches to the 連用形 for verbs but the stems of adjectives for conjecture.

動	降る＋そうだ→降り	形容	面白い＋そうだ→面白	形容動	簡単＋そうだ→簡単
詞	そうだ	詞	そうだ	詞	そうだ

The negative can be ～なさそうだ or ～そうじゃない. One may be more preferable depending on the situation and or the opinion of the speaker. With **adjectives in the negative and** よい, さ should be inserted. So, ～なさそうだ and よさそうだ.

1. 新しいマネージャーは怖こわそうな方かたですね。
The new manager is a scary-looking guy, isn't he?
2. このビデオゲームは面白くなさそうだ。
This video game doesn't seem interesting.
3. 今日は調子ちょうしがよさそうだね。
You look good today.
4. マレーシアは、今日は天気がよさそうです。
The weather seems nice today in Malaysia.
5. 雨は降らなさそうです。
It doesn't look like it's going to rain.
6. もうしばらく続きそうです。
It seems like it will continue for a little longer.
7. このステーキは美味おいしそうです！
This steak looks delicious.
8. 金髪きんぱつの女が好きそうだな。(Masculine; casual)
I bet you like blond women!
9. まだ使えそうだ。
It looks like you can still use it.

10. 難しそうな本だ。
It's a difficult looking book.
11. なんだかずいぶんよさそうじゃないか? (Casual)
Somehow it doesn't really seem amazing does it?
12. 彼は苦しくなさそうだ。
He doesn't seem to be feeling painful.
13. 建物は静かそうです。
The building seems quiet.
14. 彼は来そうだ。
It seems that he's going to come.
15. 彼は楽しそうではなかった。
He didn't look happy.
16. この犬は可哀相かわいそう。
This poor dog.

Meaning Note: Notice how the meaning of かわいい changes to "poor" with ~そうだ.

漢字 Note: 可哀相 is 当て字. 可哀想 is also possible.

17. 一見したところではその本はやさしそうだ。
At first sight, the book seems easy.
18. 忙しそうです。 VS 忙しいようです。
Seems to be busy. Looks busy.

Nuance Note: As this shows, ~そうだ shows something from an intuitive judgment based on observation. You get the sense that the person is busy. Maybe he's constantly looking at his clock. ~ようだ indicates that the judgment is based on actual knowledge of the person's situation. You may have heard that he was busy, or you know information concerning his work schedule.

19. 仕方しかたなく一成は受話器じゅわきを置いた。初老しよろうの守衛しゅえいが怪訝げんそうにしているので、すぐにその場を立ち去ることにした。
Kazunari reluctantly put the phone receiver down. The middle-aged security guard was giving a questioning look, so Kazunari immediately deciding to leave the area.
From 白夜行 by 東野圭吾.

Grammar Note: Remember that this structure is adjectival. So, you can get forms like ~そうな and ~そうに.

Word Note: 初老 originally meant someone in one's forties. As people now live longer, some consider it to mean mid-fifties to even early sixties.

Inserting -さ

Again, with よい and ない, さ is inserted. This gives よさそう and なさそう. As for the auxiliaries ～たい and ～ない, ～そうだ attaches to the stem. However, さ is being attached more and more. Even for adjectives that end in ない like ぎこちない (awkward), ～さ is being attached. The negative is ～そうではない, but you can also use ～な(さ)そうだ. However, something like "知らなそうだ" is correct. You still get examples like 20, though.

20. 成瀬はつまらなさそうに言った。
Naruse said in a disappointed tone.
From 顔に降りかかる雨 by 桐野夏生.

2. Shows a judgment based on circumstances or experience. The negative is そう
[に・も] ない.

21. このままだと、帰れそうにもない。

It would seem that at this rate, there is no way that [I/we] will be able to go home.

22. 今ならまだ間に合いそうです。

If now, we can still be there on time.

23. 景気は依然として好転しそうにない。(ちょっと硬い文章語)

The economy still appears that it won't improve.

3. Shows that something looks like *it's going to or has...just as before*. There is a basis with some experience. After all, how can you know if it's going to rain if you've never seen rain? This is an affirmative application of 1 seen with verbs. This can be seen with the past tense, and time phrases are often used to specify when something is thought to occur.

24. 赤ちゃんは泣き出しそうな顔をしていた。

The baby had a face as if he was going to burst out crying.

25. 当分とうぶんの間、今回こんかいの熱波ねっばは居据いすわりそうだ。

For the time being, this heat wave will probably settle.

26. バランスが崩くずれて、一瞬倒いっしゅんたおれそうだったさ。

I lost my balance, and for a moment it seemed I would fall.

27. 彼は100歳まで生きられそうだ。

He is likely to live to 100.

28. このカメラは壊れていそうだ。

This camera looks broken.

29. 電気が消えそうだ。

The lights appear to be dying.

30. 元気になれそうです。

It looks like it will be able to become better.

31. 今にも雨が降ふりそうだ。

It looks like it's going to rain any moment.

32. もうすぐ桜さくらの花が咲きそうだよ。

The cherry blossom trees are about to bloom.

33. 試験に合格できそうだ。

I feel that I can pass the exam.

34. 朝鮮半島ちょうせんはんとうで、戦争せんそうや何か物騒ぶっそうなことが起おこりそうだ。

It appears that war **or something** dangerous is going to occur in the Korean peninsula.

第147課: Hearsay: ～そうだ & ～らしい

Hearsay, 伝聞, is the topic of this lesson. This should be a lot easier than phrases for expressing similarity.

Verb/Adjective + ～そうだ

Directly following a verbal/adjectival expression with そうだ expresses hearsay. So, with a noun, follow it with だそうだ. Tense is shown before ～そうだ because this usage has no tense: it's only used with て or in the final position. Before we get to any example sentences, we will first look at the conjugation chart below.

動詞 するそうだ 形容詞 古いそうだ 形容動詞 簡単だそうだ 名詞 猫だそうだ

1. 博士はかせは入院したそうだ。

I hear that the professor was hospitalized.

Reading Note: The general reading of 博士 is はかせ, but はくし is respectful and is in words such as 博士号はくしごう.

2. 先生は病気だそうです。

I hear that the teacher is sick.

Part of Speech Note: Remember that 病気 is not an adjective in Japanese!

3. 噂うわさによれば、二人は離婚りこんするそうです。

Rumor has it that the two are going to get a divorce.

4. 羅生門らしょうもんはいい映画だそうです。

They say that Rashomon is a good movie.

Culture Note: 羅生門 is a very popular crime scene movie in Japan from the 50s created by the renowned producer 黒澤明くろさわあきら.

5. 地震があったそうだ。

They say there was an earthquake.

6. 天気予報でんきよほうでは今日は雨が降らないそうです。

I hear it's not going to rain today with the weather report.

7. 日本語は上手じゃないそうです。

I hear that he's not good at Japanese.

8. 彼はよく勉強するそうです。

It sounds like he often studies.

9. 「あの人は子供の欲しいものは何でも買ってやるそうですよ」「よっぽど甘やかしているんでしょう」

"I hear that that person always buys whatever her kids want" "The kids must be pretty spoiled"

10. テレビ局が来月からタガログ語の番組を放送するそうです。

I hear that the TV network will air a Tagalog program starting next month.

～らしい

The **auxiliary** ～らしい shows speculation based on some sort of **foundation** such as hearsay. However, it is somewhat of a euphemism for a more direct, declarative statement concerning hearsay, which would be expressed by ～そうだ.

Also, when there is a clearly defined reason or proof for something, you the speaker aren't just making conjecture. Rather, you're taking what you're hearing, seeing, or reading and making a non-intuitive statement.

形容	高い	+	らしい	→	高い	形容動	危険な	+	らしい	→	危険	名	ガンらし
詞	らしい					詞	らしい					詞	い

Example Sentences

11. 日本へ来なかったらしいです。

He apparently didn't go to Japan.

12. それが原因げんいんらしい。

That is apparently the cause.

13. この都市の不動産ふどうさんは高いらしいです。

The real estate properties in this city seem to be expensive.

14. その家に幽霊ゆうれいが出るらしい。

The house appears to be haunted.

15. 彼女はよく勉強するらしいです。

She appears to study often.

When the **suffix** ～らしい attaches to nouns, it makes adjectives to show typicality. It may also follow the stem of adjectives and some adverbs to show that something brings on a certain emotion. As you can see, you must understand that the auxiliary verb and suffix ～らしい's are different.

16. 彼は子供らしくない。

He doesn't act like a child.

17. もう少し大人おとならしくしてください。

Please a little more like an adult.

18. この傷は致命傷らしい。

The wound seem to be mortal.

19. あいつもう元気らしいじゃん？ (Casual)

Doesn't he seem already fine?

20. あんた、ホントに浅薄せんぱくでいやらしい男だわ。 (Rough female speech)

You, you're a really shallow and disgusting man!

21. わざとらしい微笑びしょう

An intentional/unnatural smile

22. そんな発言はつげんはいかにも彼らしい。

Speech like that is typical of him.

23. このごろあんたらしくねーよ。 (乱暴な言い方)

You haven't been yourself lately.

第148課: Citation II: ～という, ～ということ, & ～というもの

という is a phrase even natives have difficulties with. At times may seem as if it is just a filler word, but when we study its use which all natives agree on to be correct, we do find details on how to use it most effectively.

Spelling Note: The 漢字 for 言う is usually used when the verb is used literally for “to say”. However, it is extremely common in casual texts to see it written out as いう or even ゆう. In other usages, the ひらがな spellings are more common. Also note that this verb may be spelled as 云う in older spelling for quoting others.

Casual Note: For all usages mentioned in this lesson, the particle と may be replaced with って in casual contexts. If it follows ん, て is usually used instead of って. Do not confuse this with the conjunctive particle て! The grammars are completely different.

という

First, let's remember what という is composed of and why it matters. と is the citation case particle of Japanese. The phrase it attaches gets grammatically

quoted, and it's always a signal that a citation verb of some sort should follow, and if it doesn't, that verb is implied. When conjoined with the verb 言う, literally meaning "to say", we see that it is used to help make phrases able to modify other phrases when otherwise the grammar wouldn't allow for it. Before we get to far ahead of ourselves, remember that this phrase is used to say "to say...".

1. 僕はセス先生に似ていると、たまに言われます。
I'm occasionally told that I resemble Seth-sensei.

The next logical leap from this literal usage is to be used to mean "to be called/said/named".

2. さっき買った植物がなんという植物なのか気になっています。
It's getting to me what plant it was that I bought a while ago.
3. 先月の台風で沈んだのは何という船でしたっけ。
Oh, what was the name of that boat that sunk in last month's typhoon.
4. 私はセスと申します。
I'm Seth. (I am called/call myself Seth)
5. いまびドットネットという学習サイトを勉強したことがありますか？
If you ever studied a site called imabi.net?
6. 「関心」は英語で「Interest」と言います。
"Kanshin" in English is "interest".
7. 人というものはわからないものだ。
People, I don't understand.
8. 人生というものは辛いものだ。
Life is tough. (Literally: the thing called life is a tough thing".

Grammar Note: Remember that もの refers to a more concrete thing. ～ということ would show a circumstance of some sort.

9. 希望という名の光
Light called hope

Nuance Note: ～という名の is a common figure of speech frequently seen in titles and song lyrics embodying a sense of reputation/name with something.

という's function in making complex relative clauses is incredibly important. Although complete sentences may easily modify nominal phrases at times, there are a few situations where not using という just doesn't work or just doesn't make sense. It's also important to note that Japanese speakers internalize this usage as the same thing as above. So, try to think why that is.

10. 日本に住みたいという動機があるので、日本語の勉強が楽しい。

Because I have a motive of wanting to live in Japan, studying Japanese is fun.

If you want to use a phrase that ends in だ as a complex relative clause, という is necessary. This is also true for onomatopoeic phrases.

11. 何をやってもダメだという気持ちを忘れよう。

Forget those feelings that whatever you do is bad.

12. せっかくの独立記念日だというのに、一日中家に引きこもっていた。

Although it was Independence Day (a great opportunity), I stayed inside my home all day.

Speech Style Note: ～だというのに is slightly more formal than ～なのに. This is because のに is already rather empathic. So, making it more emphatic would be slightly abnormal in the spoken language.

○という＋名詞 is used to introduce something to the listener or reader as new information. So, although it is reasonable to say something like ジブチという国, インドという国 would be unnecessary even for kids. This lack of necessity often leads to sentences being deemed ungrammatical when this common sense principle is not implemented. This point largely determines whether という makes the most sense or not with (complex) relative clauses.

13. 仕事で妥協を許さないのは、上司から何をされるか分からないという恐怖からでしょうか。

Is your behavior of not allowing compromise at work from a fear of not knowing what your boss will do to you?

14. 反乱軍の兵士たちは、国の軍隊にいつ拘束され、処刑されるかわからない（という）恐怖におびえながら、町々の住民を守り続けた。

The rebel soldiers continued to protect the citizens of the villages as they feared the unknown as to when they would be seized by the country's army and be put to death.

Sentence Note: The use of という in Ex. 14 would likely only be used in conversation in which という would function more so as a filler word. This is because the objective stance that the sentence takes in conveying the information makes という unnecessary at best.

Of course, this is not grammatically different at all from ～というの+Particle as we've already seen. Why? The particle の here functions as a dummy noun, making everything above apply.

15. 政治家たちさえ何が起こるかわからないというのはなぜでしょう？

Why is it that not even the politicians know what will happen?

16. 男でもいけるというのは本当なの？

As it true that you even go out with guys?

17. 多くの中国人や韓国人が日本人を毛嫌いするのに日本語を勉強するというのはどうしてなのでしょう。

Why is it that many Chinese and Koreans study Japanese even though they despise Japanese people?

18. 90% というのは信じられない数字でした。

90% was a truly impossible to believe figure.

19. アプリはアップデートしろというのに、Google Playストアにアップデート情報がきていない。

Although the app told me to update, there isn't any update information coming into the Google Play Store.

Phrase Note: Remember that the particle のに is technically just a combination of の and に.

～ということ & ～というもの

～ということ is perfect in showing something that is abstract in nature.

Essentially anything that can be deemed as an analysis of something, summarizing, determination etc. fits under this definition. This 'something' is never a physical thing but an abstract thing.

20. 夏にテキサス州のオースティン市に行ってみればどんなに暑いかということがわかるでしょう。

If you were to try and come to the city of Austin in the state of Texas in the summer, you would find out just how hot it is.

21. 分かるということはどういうことでしょうか。

What does understanding really mean?

22. 「バグが発覚したという報告がありました」「ということは、そろそろメンテに入るでしょう」

"We got a report that a bug surfaced" "So, that means we'll be entering maintenance shortly."

～というもの, on the other hand, is used with not-so-abstract noun phrases. The addition of it brings an "as a matter of fact..." nuance to the phrase in question.

23. 日本語というものがこんなに美しいと感じたことはなかった。

I had never felt Japanese to be so beautiful like this better.

24. 予知夢というものを見てしまったかもしれない。

I may have had a prophetic dream.

～ということ is also frequently inserted in places it is not necessary in formal speech to lessen the tone and to be more indirect. This should make sense because こと refers to the situation, so you're referring to things in a broader sense.

25. セス先生は、特に仕事が忙しいということなので、仕事頑張ってという応援メールを送りました。

I heard that Seth-sensei's job is particularly busy, so I sent him a support message telling him to "keep working hard".

Remember the difference between ～ということ and ～というもの? という invokes the vaguer meaning of こと which is to mean “matter” as in the matter of things. This is why we can say things like 映画のこと but not 映画ということ. ～ということ would work, though, if the noun is related to any event/action.

26a. ユーザーがモンスターを売却してしまった件ということですが、…。X

26b. ユーザーがモンスターを売却してしまったとのことですが、…。○

About the users accidentally having sold their monsters...

It's also important to note that ～ということだ or ～とのことだ can refer to hearsay. For instance, the sentence above may very well be hearsay depending on the context. The word hearsay here isn't that far removed from summarizing things. It would only be context that determines how certain that is.

27. 新聞によると、○○も自殺を図ったということだ。

XX also committed suicide according to the newspaper.

28. 禁断の恋ということですが、○○。

About forbidden love,....

という: **Emphasis Marker**

という can also be used as an emphatic marker at times. This also applies to the phrases above. In the first two phrases below as well, it is not grammatically necessary, but it strengthens the emotional sense of the statements. With counter phrases, it shows that the degree is high, and at times excessive.

29. 今日という日を記念日にするよ！

We make this day a commemoration.

30. 今日という日は二度と来ない。

Today will never come again.

31. なぜ数億円という突拍子もない数字が出てくるのか説明しろよ。

Explain how such a preposterous figure of several hundred millions of yen came about.

32. ウミガメは毎年、何百キロまたは何千キロという長距離を移動する。

Sea turtles move great distances of hundreds and thousands of miles every year.

33. その後、投資家たちが医療業界に数千万ドルという資金を投入した。

After that, investors invested several tens of millions into the medical industry.

34. 何千枚なんぜんまいという宝たからくじが、一日で売り切れました。

Lottery tickets totaling thousands were sold in a day.

Note that this point actually encompasses a general pattern of repeating the very same word using という. This pattern is more frequently used in the written language, but it is still possible to hear it in conversation.

35. クリスマスの日は、店という店は基本的には営業休止にすればいい。

All shops as a principle should close business on Christmas Day.

36. 今は今しかない。だから、今という今は本当に貴重なのだ。

Now we only have now. So, the *now* truly is precious.

第149課: The Superlative

The superlative is relatively easy, but there is still a lot to pay attention to.

-est

The superlative (最上級) is made with "-est" in English. In Japanese you use 一番 or 最も (in formal speech) before the adjective, not after. Superlative sentences often have some sort of restriction such as the following.

In the world 世界（中）で

せかい（じゅう）で

Of the three 三の[中・内]で

さんの[なか・うち]で

Of all [全て・皆] の [中・内] で [すべて・みんな] の [なか・うち] で

Word Note: 皆 is typically used in reference to people, but it can refer to everything as well.

1. その店は一番便利だと思う。

I think that store is the most convenient.

2. 会社では渡辺さんが一番意地悪だね。

Isn't Mr. Watanabe the meanest in the company?

3. あなたが今までの人生の中で一番悩んだ決断は何ですか？

What has been the most difficult decision you've made in your life?

4. こちらの教会は町で最も古いです。

This church is the oldest in the town.

5. 富士山は日本中で一番高い山です。

Mt. Fuji is the tallest mountain in all of Japan.

6. 最も深刻な都市問題は何ですか。

What is the most serious urban problem?

7. エベレストは世界で一番高い山です。

Mt. Everest is the tallest mountain in the world.

Suffix Note: ～山 isn't used with certain mountains outside of Japan. It's something you have to learn on a mountain by mountain basis.

最～

There are other superlative words with the prefix 最～. These words are, thus, Sino-Japanese for the most part. However, there are some exceptions to this. For instance, 最安値 (all-time low), 最高値 (all-time high), 最大手 (largest company/industry leader), and 最果て (the farthest/furthest ends) are possible.

Strongest	最強	さいきょう	Worst	最低	さいてい
Biggest	最大	さいだい	Worst	最悪	さいあく
Beloved	最愛	さいあい	Last place	最下位	さいかい
Best; tallest	最高	さいこう	Oldest	最古	さいこ
Least	最少	さいしょう	First-class	最上	さいじょう
Newest; latest	最新	さいしん	Best	最善	さいぜん
Very middle	最中	さなか・さいちゅう	Most	最多	さいた

Word Note: 最低 is for things and 最悪 is for people. 最善 refers to greater good whereas 最高 is more broad and similar to usages like "that's the best". 最良 also means "best" as in "ideal". There is also the word 最適 which refers to something being "the most fitting".

8. 最悪の場合を覚悟する。

To prepare for the worst.

9. 地球の最果て

The utmost point of the earth

10. 現存する最古の寺

The oldest temple in existence

11. 最小の努力で最大の効果を上げるのが我々の目的です。

Achieving the largest results with the smallest efforts is our goal.

12. 最上階

The top floor

13. 最新のニュースを聞いたか。

Did you hear the latest news?

14. 彼は一試合最多奪三振の記録を作った。

He set a record for strikeouts in one game.

15. 横浜に行く最短の道順を教えてくださいました。

I told them the shortest way to Yokohama.

16. 演説の最中に {立ち去った・席を立った} 。
I left in the middle of the speech.
17. 本州の最南端は潮岬だ。
The southernmost part of Honshu is Shionomisaki.
18. 沖おきノ鳥島とりしまは日本の最南端さいなんたんにある。
Okinotorishima is at the southernmost point of Japan.
19. 正直は最良の策。
Honesty is the best policy.

The Superlative Question

When making a superlative question, the first thing you must decide on is which interrogative you will use. The chart below illustrates the possible options.

何	Comparison of a group	どれ	Used in a list format
誰	About people	どこ	About a place

When referring to a group such as in sports, で always follows and の中 is often used in between for more emphasis. If 〜の中 is used and you are listing things with と, the last と that would normally be in the list--on the final noun--is deleted.

20. スポーツでは何が一番好きですか。
Among sports, which do you like the best?
21. 犬と、猫と、ウサギの中では、どれが一番好きですか。
Among dogs, cats, and rabbits, which do you like the best?
22. 日本の歌手では誰が一番好きですか。
Among Japanese singers, who do you like the most?
23. どこが世界で一番暑いですか。
Which place is the hottest in the world?

Grammar Note: In answering these questions, you simply use the normal superlative pattern.

第149課: The Superlative

The superlative is relatively easy, but there is still a lot to pay attention to.

-est

The superlative (最上級) is made with "-est" in English. In Japanese you use 一番 or 最も (in formal speech) before the adjective, not after. Superlative sentences often have some sort of restriction such as the following.

In the world 世界（中）で せかい（じゅう）で
 Of the three 三の[中・内]で さんの[なか・うち]で
 Of all [全て・皆] の [中・内] で [すべて・みんな] の [なか・うち] で

Word Note: 皆 is typically used in reference to people, but it can refer to everything as well.

1. その店は一番便利だと思う。
I think that store is the most convenient.
2. 会社では渡辺さんが一番意地悪だね。
Isn't Mr. Watanabe the meanest in the company?
3. あなたが今までの人生の中で一番悩んだ決断は何ですか？
What has been the most difficult decision you've made in your life?
4. こちらの教会は町で最も古いです。
This church is the oldest in the town.
5. 富士山は日本中で一番高い山です。
Mt. Fuji is the tallest mountain in all of Japan.
6. 最も深刻な都市問題は何ですか？
What is the most serious urban problem?
7. エベレストは世界で一番高い山です。
Mt. Everest is the tallest mountain in the world.

Suffix Note: ～山 isn't used with certain mountains outside of Japan. It's something you have to learn on a mountain by mountain basis.

最～

There are other superlative words with the prefix 最～. These words are, thus, Sino-Japanese for the most part. However, there are some exceptions to this. For instance, 最安値 (all-time low), 最高値 (all-time high), 最大手 (largest company/industry leader), and 最果て(the farthest/furthest ends) are possible.

Strongest	最強	さいきょう	Worst	最低	さいてい
Biggest	最大	さいだい	Worst	最悪	さいあく
Beloved	最愛	さいあい	Last place	最下位	さいかい
Best; tallest	最高	さいこう	Oldest	最古	さいこ
Least	最少	さいしょう	First-class	最上	さいじょう
Newest; latest	最新	さいしん	Best	最善	さいぜん
Very middle	最中	さなか・さいちゅう	Most	最多	さいた

Word Note: 最低 is for things and 最悪 is for people. 最善 refers to greater good whereas 最高 is more broad and similar to usages like "that's the best". 最良 also means "best" as in "ideal". There is also the word 最適 which refers to something being "the most fitting".

8. 最悪の場合を覚悟する。

To prepare for the worst.

9. 地球の最果て

The utmost point of the earth

10. 現存する最古の寺

The oldest temple in existence

11. 最小の努力で最大の効果を上げるのが我々の目的です。

Achieving the largest results with the smallest efforts is our goal.

12. 最上階

The top floor

13. 最新のニュースを聞いたか。

Did you hear the latest news?

14. 彼は一試合最多奪三振の記録を作った。

He set a record for strikeouts in one game.

15. 横浜に行く最短の道順を教えてください。

I told them the shortest way to Yokohama.

16. 演説の最中に {立ち去った・席を立った}。

I left in the middle of the speech.

17. 本州の最南端は潮岬だ。

The southernmost part of Honshu is Shionomisaki.

18. 沖おきノ鳥島とりしまは日本の最南端さいなんたんにある。

Okinotorishima is at the southernmost point of Japan.

19. 正直は最良の策。

Honesty is the best policy.

The Superlative Question

When making a superlative question, the first thing you must decide on is which interrogative you will use. The chart below illustrates the possible options.

何 Comparison of a group どれ Used in a list format

誰 About people どこ About a place

When referring to a group such as in sports, で always follows and の中 is often used in between for more emphasis. If 〜の中 is used and you are

listing things with と, the last と that would normally be in the list--on the final noun--is deleted.

20. スポーツでは何が一番好きですか。

Among sports, which do you like the best?

21. 犬と、猫と、ウサギの中では、どれが一番好きですか。

Among dogs, cats, and rabbits, which do you like the best?

22. 日本の歌手では誰が一番好きですか。

Among Japanese singers, who do you like the most?

23. どこが世界で一番暑いですか。

Which place is the hottest in the world?

Grammar Note: In answering these questions, you simply use the normal superlative pattern.

第141課: The Particles とか, など, & なんか

In this lesson we'll learn about additional particles that are used to list things colloquially: とか, など, and なんか.

The Adverbial Particle とか

とか means "such as." It can also be interpreted as "something like". This particle may be seen after nouns, the end of conjugations such as the て形 and the 命令形. It is somewhat colloquial, and you can often see it at the end of a sentence fragment.

1. 美由紀さんはギターとか、ドラムとか、ピアノとかたくさんお稽古けいこに行ってるのよ。(女性言葉)

Miyuki is taking many lessons such as guitar, drum, and piano.

2. 民主主義は食料とか飲料のように輸出できるものではない。

Democracy is not exportable like food or drink.

3. まだ用意とかできてねえよ。(乱暴な言い方)

I still can't, uh, get prepared.

4. Youtubeを見てないで、少しは犬を散歩につれてくとか、本を読むとか、してはどう？(Casual)

How about doing something like walk the dog or read a book without watching Youtube?

5. テニスとかサッカーとかアメフトとかの球技が大好きだからね。(Casual)

Because I love ball sports like tennis, soccer, and (American) football.

6. 宏君のおばあさんは80いくつとかでまだフランス語を教えているんですって。

Hiroshi's grandmother is something like 80 years old and is still teaching French.

The Adverbial Particle など

など becomes なんか in colloquial settings. It is used to give related examples and may be seen after nouns or verbs. This particle is not usually used in list form like other similar particles such as と. However, when the need arises, it is often used together with the particle や.

Translation Note: The particle など is often also translated as "etc."

7. 私は休日は雑誌ざっしを読むなどして過ごすしました。
I spent the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines.
8. 東京やニューヨーク市などの大都市には大勢たいせいの人が住んでいます。
A lot of people live in metropolises such as Tokyo and New York City.
9. 音楽やビデオゲームなどが若者に愛用されている。(堅苦しい言い方)
Things such as music and video game are cherished by young people.
10. お茶・砂糖さとう・塩など
Tea, sugar, salt and so on
11. レモンやミカンやタンジェリンなどの果物くだものを買集めた。
I bought up fruits such as lemons, mandarin oranges, and tangerines.

漢字 Note: Lemon and mandarin oranges can be written in 漢字 as 檸檬 and 蜜柑 respectively, but they are usually just spelled in カタカナ.

12. 彼など適任者てきにんしゃだね。
Someone like him is suitable, right?
13. このパソコンなどお買かい得どくです。
Something like this personal computer is a bargain.
14. ヨーロッパの信用しんよう不安で海外経済が減速げんそくしていることなどが影響
えいきょうしている。
Events such as overseas economies decelerating due to uneasiness of
confidence in Europe are taking an effect.
15. こりゃなんかええじゃん？ (Casual)
Isn't something like this OK?
16. 彼女になんか会わなければよかった。
If I had somehow not met her, it would have been good.
17. 私はテレビでアニメなどは見ません。
I don't watch things like anime on TV.
18. 休暇きゅうか中に洗濯せんたくや掃除そうじなどしなくてもいい。(堅苦しい)
休みなのに洗濯とか掃除とかしなくてもいいじゃない。(Casual)
It's all right to not do laundry, cleaning and such on vacation.

19. 表彰ひょうしょうなんか受けたくもねーし。(砕くだけた言い方)

I don't want any public acknowledgement.

20. 泣いてなどいられん。(Casual; dialectical)

I can't just cry.

21. 「ああ、佐伯あさっちゃんのところに行ったの。あんなヤツの言うことなんか、嘘っぱちだよ」

"Ahh, Sahaku went to Satchan's place? What that guy says is a downright lie.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

22. 今さら行くなどと言ってももう遅おそいよ。

Even if you say you're going to go now, you're already later.

23. 甲冑かっちゅうなども精巧せいこうに出来できている。

Things like the armor are also exquisitely made.

漢字 Note: 冑 is not a 常用漢字. So, don't worry about it.

Variants' Note: など may also be seen as なんと, なぞ and なんぞ. These are all dialectical. So, who uses them is dependent on the region in question.

第142課: The Particle なんて

The particle なんて is similar to なんか and など because all three particles can be used to euphemize what they follow. However, the practical situations in which they are used can be very different. When it comes to how なんて is used, the tone that it gives is far more emphatic than the other two can ever be. It also brings about unique grammar that the other two don't.

In this lesson, we will focus solely on なんて to see how it's used. Ultimately, it is easier to learn this particle separately so that you don't confuse it with things that can occasionally be used similarly but not ultimately bring about the same nuance.

How to Use なんて

Grammatically speaking, なんて can pretty much follow anything. One reason for this is that it is partially composed of って, which you should understand as one of the most common means of citation in speech. The なん, as you can imagine, comes from 何. This provides major context to how the phrase generally works. It's emphatic; it's subjective; it's there to draw some form of attention.

なんて can pretty much follow anything. It can be seen after nouns, adjectives, adjectival nouns, verbs, as well as full statements. Interestingly enough, as you will soon see, the copula だ can actually intervene at times to add even more dramatic effect to what's being referred. The "referring" aspect makes だ's role akin to that of a citation particle like って, drawing upon the literal breakdown of なんて itself.

Part of Speech	Example
With Nouns	恋（だ）なんて
With Adjectives	おかしい（だ）なんて
With Adjectival Nouns	新鮮（だ）なんて
With Verbs	行く（だ）なんて
With Sentences	本当に好きだよなんて

Although overall it is fair to say that *なんて* is used in mostly negative situations, it is not limited to this. Regardless of whether the statement is positive or negative, it will euphemize whatever it follows. This euphemizing can then have a belittling, critical, or supportive tone depending on the sentence.

1. 彼女かのじょ、包丁ほうちょうなんて使ったことあるのかな。
I wonder if she's ever used a kitchen knife.

2. そもそも決闘けつとうなんてしませんよ。
We're not going to be having a duel in the first place.

3. もう、健太君けんたくんなんて知しらないわ！
I don't know you anymore, Kentaro!

4. 私わたしなんてまだまだです。
I still have a long way to go.

5. アライグマなんて怖こわくないよ。
There's nothing scary about raccoons!

6. バスク語ごなんて簡単かんたんさ。
Basque is just easy!

7. 野球やきゅうなんてちょっと詰つまらない？
Isn't baseball a little boring?

8. 雪合戦ゆきがっせんなんて子供こどもじゃあるまいし。
A snowball fight...it isn't as if I'm a child.

9. 人生じんせいなんてそんな素晴すばらしいものじゃない。
Human life is not such a wonderful thing.

10. 人間にんげんなんて脆もろいものなんでしょうね。
People really are weak things, aren't they?

11. セス先生せんせいなんて聞きいたことねー。
I've never heard of this Seth-sensei.

12. 漢字かんじなんてどうしても書かけないの！
I can't write Kanji no matter what I do!

13. なんて試験しけんなんてやるんだろ。
Why is it that we do exams anyway?

14. お金かねなんて要らない！

I don't need any money!

15. 無意味むいみな愚痴ぐちなんて聞ききたくもない。

I don't want to hear your meaningless complaining.

16. 本来ほんらい白しろいはずのものが赤あかいなんてちょっと神秘しんぴ（的てき）だよね。

Something that's originally supposed to be white being red is a little mysterious, isn't it?

17. 男性だんせいじゃあるまいし、鼻下びかが青あおいなんて洒落しゃれになりません。

It's not as if I'm a man; my upper-lip being blue is no joking matter.

18. 始はじまりが怖こわいなんて、そんなの当然とうぜんだからね。

That's 'cause it's natural for the beginning to be scary.

19. あれほど醜みにくいなんて、本当ほんとうに残念ざんねんなことだ。

It truly is a shame that (he) is so ugly like that.

20. 図々ずうずうしいだなんて、とんでもございませぬ。

It's absolutely not audacious (of him).

21. 体型たいけいが美うつくしいだなんて、照てれるわ。

I get embarrassed when I'm told my figure is beautiful.

22. 必かならずずっと一緒いっしょ（だ）なんて、あり得えないんじゃない？

Always being together forever is impossible, no?

23. 日常会話が簡単（だ）なんて嘘だよ！

It's a complete lie that daily conversation is easy!

24. え、まさかあいつが俺おれのことを好すきだなんて・・・

What? You're saying that guy likes me!?

25. 仏様ほとけさまを焼やき払はらうなんて、人間にんげんの出来ることじゃないと思おもうがね。

Though I'm pretty sure reducing the Buddha into ashes is not something man can do.

26. 我わが国くにの神々かみがみを疑うたがうなんて、とんだ身分みぶんだな。

What unthinkable position you're in doubting the gods of our country.

27. 息子むすこさん早稲田わせだに受かったなんて凄すごいですね。

That's amazing how your son got accepted to Waseda (University).

28. 正月しょうがつに一度いちども帰かえらないなんて何なにか事情じじょうがあるからだろうしなあ。

There's probably got to be some reason behind (him) not going home even one on New Year's.

29. 重要じゅうような会議かいぎに遅刻ちこくするなんて、許ゆるせない。
It's unforgiveable to be late to an important meeting.

30. 行いくなんて言いってないよ。
I'm not saying that I'm going.

31. 子供こどもの猿さるも次つぎの年としに子こをたくさん産うむなんてことはできない。
The young monkeys can't also give birth to a lot of offspring the next year.

32. この猿さるちゃん、子こをたくさん産うむことなんてできないもん。
This little monkey, there's no way it can give birth to a lot of offspring.

33. 全員ぜんいんに好すかれるのなんて無理むりだよな。
It's impossible to be liked by everyone, huh.

34. 禿はげるのなんて絶対嫌ぜったいいやだ！
Going bald would just be absolutely awful!

35. タイムマシンが出来できるのなんて不可能ふかのうなんですよ？
Building a time machine is impossible, right?

36. 英語えいごできるのなんて成人せいじんとしては当あたり前まえじゃないか。
Being able to speak English is only natural as an adult, is it not?

37. 智美ともみがああいう人ひとだったなんて、知しらなかったです。
I had no idea Tomomi was that kind of a person.

38. つい最近さいきんまで高校生こうこうせいだったなんて信じ信じられませんね。
I can't believe that I've been a high school student up until just recently.

39. この世よも終おわりだなんて考かんがえるのは愚おろかだ。
Thinking something like the world's going to end is foolish!

40. どうしてここに来きたのかなんて、決きまっている。
It's a given as to why (he) came here.

41. 呼よび捨すてか、さん付づけかなんて考かんがえる余裕よゆうはなかった。
There was no leeway to ponder whether to address him with or without an honorific.

As a Final Particle

To the same effect as above, you can also find **なんて** at the end of a sentence/statement to show utter surprise/disbelief. Depending on the tone, this may be used in ridicule as well.

42. どうして急きゅうにお酒さけなんて・・・
Why alcohol all so suddenly?

43. まさか、和睦わぼくの道みちを選えらぶなんて・・・
Wow, to think (they're) choosing the path of reconciliation...

44. お正月しょうがつがこんなに大変たいへん（だ）なんて・・・

To think New Year's would be this intense...

45. どちらも本物ほんものだなんて。

Both are the real thing?!

46. これからずっと怯おびえて暮くらさなきゃいけないなんて。

The thought of us having to live from here on out in fear....

47. まだまだ4し月がつなのに竜巻たつまきが発生はっせいするなんて・・・

Tornadoes forming even though it's still only April...

48. 愛あいしてるよなんて。

Huh, I love you...

49. あいつが「竹島たけしまは実じつは独島トクトだと主張しゅちようしてる」なんてもっばらの噂うわさだよ。

The persistent rumor is that he "claims Takeshima is Dokdo".

Culture Note: 竹島 is a group of islands in the Sea of Japan called the "Liancourt Rocks" in English. However, the islands are under territorial dispute with Korea. Japan claims they're part of 島根県しまねけん (Shimane Prefecture). However, Korea claims them as theirs under the name 独島.

With the Copula や

The particle なんて does not follow the copula や, however, which is used in dialects like 関西弁 instead of だ.

50a. 東京弁とうきょうべん：買かってあげる（だ）なんて言いいない。○

50b. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるなんて言いうてへん。○

50c. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるやなんて言いうてへん。X

I'm not saying that I'll buy it for you.

何て

As you may have already noticed and as was alluded to earlier, you can also view なんて as being equivalent to などと言って・何と言って. As you can see in the following sentences, spelling it as 何て is possible when it used more literally.

51. 今いま、何て言いったんだろ・・・

What was it that (he) said now?

52. 名前なまえは何ていうの。

What's your name?

53. この漢字かんじ、何て読よむの？

How do you read this Kanji?

54. こんな噂うわさが広ひろまってるなんて、上司じょうしが知しったら何なんて言うかな。

I wonder what the boss would say if he found out this sort of rumor was surprising.

55. 池田いけださんなんて人ひとは知しりません。

I don't know a person by the name of Ikeda-san.

56. スイーツでまずいなんてことってあんまりないですよ。

There really aren't that many times in which something is a sweet but actually tastes bad.

Sentence Note: In Ex. 56, you could interpret *なんて* as being the same as *など* と言う。

57. 旦那だんななんて呼よばれる身分みぶんじゃない！

I'm not in the position to be called "husband"!

58. 「仕事しごとと私わたし、どっちが大事だいじなの？」なんて絶対ぜったいに言いつてはいけない禁句きんくなんです。

"Which is more important, work or me?" is a taboo that you should absolutely never utter.

59. すごいなんて言葉ことばでは全然ぜんぜんたりない。

Using a word like "awesome" is totally not good enough.

60. 私わたし、なんて事ことを！

What have I done!

Oh How...

Lastly, it is also important to note that *なんて* can be used in its own set phrases (Ex. 64) as well as an adverb meaning "oh how...," in which case it is synonymous with *何と* (Exs. 61-63).

61. カナダの冬ふゆって、本当ほんとうになんて美うつくしいんでしょう。

Oh how beautiful winter in Canada truly is!

62. うちのアパートの水道水すいどうすい、なんてまずいんだ。

The tap water at my apartment, it's just awful.

63. なんてつまらないんだ！

How boring!

64. なんて、（冗談じょうだんで）ね。

Just joking.

第141課: The Particles とか, など, & なんか

In this lesson we'll learn about additional particles that are used to list things colloquially: *とか*, *など*, and *なんか*.

The Adverbial Particle とか

とか means "such as." It can also be interpreted as "something like". This particle may be seen after nouns, the end of conjugations such as the て形 and the 命令形. It is somewhat colloquial, and you can often see it at the end of a sentence fragment.

1. 美由紀さんはギターとか、ドラムとか、ピアノとかたくさんお稽古けいこに行ってるのよ。(女性言葉)
Miyuki is taking many lessons such as guitar, drum, and piano.
2. 民主主義は食料とか飲料のように輸出できるものではない。
Democracy is not exportable like food or drink.
3. まだ用意とかできてねえよ。(乱暴な言い方)
I still can't, uh, get prepared.
4. Youtubeを見てないで、少しは犬を散歩につれてくとか、本を読むとか、してはどう？(Casual)
How about doing something like walk the dog or read a book without watching Youtube?
5. テニスとかサッカーとかアメフトとかの球技が大好きだからね。(Casual)
Because I love ball sports like tennis, soccer, and (American) football.
6. 宏君のおばあさんは80いくつとかでまだフランス語を教えているんですって。
Hiroshi's grandmother is something like 80 years old and is still teaching French.

The Adverbial Particle など

など becomes なんか in colloquial settings. It is used to give related examples and may be seen after nouns or verbs. This particle is not usually used in list form like other similar particles such as と. However, when the need arises, it is often used together with the particle や.

Translation Note: The particle など is often also translated as "etc."

7. 私は休日は雑誌ざっしを読むなどして過すごしました。
I spent the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines.
8. 東京やニューヨーク市などの大都市には大勢たいせいの人が住んでいます。
A lot of people live in metropolises such as Tokyo and New York City.
9. 音楽やビデオゲームなどが若者に愛用されている。(堅苦しい言い方)
Things such as music and video game are cherished by young people.
10. お茶・砂糖さとう・塩など
Tea, sugar, salt and so on

11. レモンやミカンやタンジェリンなどの果物くだものを買集めた。
I bought up fruits such as lemons, mandarin oranges, and tangerines.

漢字 Note: Lemon and mandarin oranges can be written in 漢字 as 檸檬 and 蜜柑 respectively, but they are usually just spelled in カタカナ.

12. 彼など適任者てきにんしゃだね。
Someone like him is suitable, right?

13. このパソコンなどお買い得どくです。
Something like this personal computer is a bargain.

14. ヨーロッパの信用しんよう不安で海外経済が減速げんそくしていることなどが影響
えいきょうしている。
Events such as overseas economies decelerating due to uneasiness of
confidence in Europe are taking an effect.

15. こりゃなんかええじゃん? (Casual)
Isn't something like this OK?

16. 彼女になんか会わなければよかった。
If I had somehow not met her, it would have been good.

17. 私はテレビでアニメなどは見ません。
I don't watch things like anime on TV.

18. 休暇きゅうか中に洗濯せんたくや掃除そうじなどしなくてもいい。(堅苦しい)
休みなのに洗濯とか掃除とかしなくてもいいじゃない。(Casual)
It's all right to not do laundry, cleaning and such on vacation.

19. 表彰ひょうしょうなんか受けたくもねーし。(砕くだけた言い方)
I don't want any public acknowledgement.

20. 泣いてなどいられん。(Casual; dialectical)
I can't just cry.

21. 「ああ、佐伯あさっちゃんのところに行ったの。あんなヤツの言うことなんか、
嘘っぱちだよ」
"Ahh, Sahaku went to Satchan's place? What that guy says is a downright
lie.
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

22. 今さら行くなどと言ってももう遅おそいよ。
Even if you say you're going to go now, you're already later.

23. 甲冑かっちゅうなども精巧せいこうに出来できている。
Things like the armor are also exquisitely made.

漢字 Note: 冑 is not a 常用漢字. So, don't worry about it.

Variants' Note: など may also be seen as なんと, なぞ and なんぞ. These are
all dialectical. So, who uses them is dependent on the region in question.

第142課: The Particle なんて

The particle なんて is similar to なんか and など because all three particles can be used to euphemize what they follow. However, the practical situations in which they are used can be very different. When it comes to how なんて is used, the tone that it gives is far more emphatic than the other two can ever be. It also brings about unique grammar that the other two don't.

In this lesson, we will focus solely on なんて to see how it's used. Ultimately, it is easier to learn this particle separately so that you don't confuse it with things that can occasionally be used similarly but not ultimately bring about the same nuance.

How to Use なんて

Grammatically speaking, なんて can pretty much follow anything. One reason for this is that it is partially composed of って, which you should understand as one of the most common means of citation in speech. The なん, as you can imagine, comes from 何. This provides major context to how the phrase generally works. It's emphatic; it's subjective; it's there to draw some form of attention.

なんて can pretty much follow anything. It can be seen after nouns, adjectives, adjectival nouns, verbs, as well as full statements. Interestingly enough, as you will soon see, the copula だ can actually intervene at times to add even more dramatic effect to what's being referred. The "referring" aspect makes だ's role akin to that of a citation particle like って, drawing upon the literal breakdown of なんて itself.

Part of Speech	Example
With Nouns	恋 (だ) なんて
With Adjectives	おかしい (だ) なんて
With Adjectival Nouns	新鮮 (だ) なんて
With Verbs	行く (だ) なんて
With Sentences	本当に好きだよなんて

Although overall it is fair to say that なんて is used in mostly negative situations, it is not limited to this. Regardless of whether the statement is positive or negative, it will euphemize whatever it follows. This euphemizing can then have a belittling, critical, or supportive tone depending on the sentence.

1. 彼女かのじょ、包丁ほうちょうなんて使ったことあるのかな。
I wonder if she's ever used a kitchen knife.

2. そもそも決闘けっとうなんてしませんよ。
We're not going to be having a duel in the first place.

3. もう、健太君けんたくんなんて知しらないわ！
I don't know you anymore, Kentaro!

4. 私わたしなんてまだまだです。
I still have a long way to go.

5. アライグマなんて怖こわくないよ。
There's nothing scary about raccoons!

6. バスク語ごなんて簡単かんたんさ。
Basque is just easy!

7. 野球やきゅうなんてちょっと詰つまらない？
Isn't baseball a little boring?

8. 雪合戦ゆきがっせんなんて子供こどもじゃあるまいし。
A snowball fight...it isn't as if I'm a child.

9. 人生じんせいなんてそんな素晴すばらしいものじゃない。
Human life is not such a wonderful thing.

10. 人間にんげんなんて脆もろいものなんでしょうね。
People really are weak things, aren't they?

11. セス先生せんせいなんて聞きいたことねー。
I've never heard of this Seth-sensei.

12. 漢字かんじなんてどうしても書かけないの！
I can't write Kanji no matter what I do!

13. なんで試験しけんなんてやるんだろ。
Why is it that we do exams anyway?

14. お金かねなんて要いらない！
I don't need any money!

15. 無意味むいみな愚痴ぐちなんて聞ききたくもない。
I don't want to hear your meaningless complaining.

16. 本来ほんらい白しろいはずのものが赤あかいなんてちょっと神秘しんぴ（的てき）
だよね。
Something that's originally supposed to be white being red is a little
mysterious, isn't it?

17. 男性だんせいじゃあるまいし、鼻下びかが青あおいなんて洒落しゃれになりませ
ん。
It's not as if I'm a man; my upper-lip being blue is no joking matter.

18. 始はじまりが怖こわいなんて、そんなの当然とうぜんだからね。
That's 'cause it's natural for the beginning to be scary.

19. あれほど醜みにくいなんて、本当ほんとうに残念ざんねんなことだ。
It truly is a shame that (he) is so ugly like that.

20. 図々ずうずうしいだなんて、とんでもございません。
It's absolutely not audacious (of him).

21. 体型たいけいが美うつくしいだなんて、照てれるわ。
I get embarrassed when I'm told my figure is beautiful.

22. 必かならずずっと一緒いっしょ（だ）なんて、あり得えないんじゃない？
Always being together forever is impossible, no?

23. 日常会話が簡単（だ）なんて嘘だよ！
It's a complete lie that daily conversation is easy!

24. え、まさかあいつが俺おれのことを好きだなんて・・・
What? You're saying that guy likes me!?

25. 仏様ほとけさまを焼やき払はらうなんて、人間にんげんの出来ることじゃない
と思おうがね。
Though I'm pretty sure reducing the Buddha into ashes is not something
man can do.

26. 我わが国くにの神々かみがみを疑うたがうなんて、とんだ身分みぶんだな。
What unthinkable position you're in doubting the gods of our country.

27. 息子むすこさん早稲田わせだに受かったなんて凄すごいですね。
That's amazing how your son got accepted to Waseda (University).

28. 正月しょうがつに一度いちども帰かえらないなんて何なにか事情じじょうがあるか
らだろうしなあ。
There's probably got to be some reason behind (him) not going home even
one on New Year's.

29. 重要じゅうような会議かいぎに遅刻ちこくするなんて、許ゆるせない。
It's unforgiveable to be late to an important meeting.

30. 行いくなんて言いってないよ。
I'm not saying that I'm going.

31. 子供こどもの猿さるも次つぎの年としに子こをたくさん産うむなんてことはできな
い。
The young monkeys can't also give birth to a lot of offspring the next year.

32. この猿さるちゃん、子こをたくさん産うむことなんてできないもん。
This little monkey, there's no way it can give birth to a lot of offspring.

33. 全員ぜんいんに好すかれるのなんて無理むりだよな。
It's impossible to be liked by everyone, huh.

34. 禿はげるのなんて絶対嫌ぜったいいやだ！
Going bald would just be absolutely awful!

35. タイムマシンが出来できるのなんて不可能ふかのうなんですよな？
Building a time machine is impossible, right?

36. 英語えいごでできるのなんて成人せいじんとしては当あたり前まえじゃないか。
Being able to speak English is only natural as an adult, is it not?

37. 智美ともみがああいう人ひとだったなんて、知しらなかったです。
I had no idea Tomomi was that kind of a person.

38. つい最近さいきんまで高校生こうこうせいだったなんて信じ信じられませんね。
I can't believe that I've been a high school student up until just recently.

39. この世よも終おわりだなんて考かんがえるのは愚おろかだ。
Thinking something like the world's going to end is foolish!

40. どうしてここに来きたのかなんて、決きまっている。
It's a given as to why (he) came here.

41. 呼よび捨ててか、さん付づけかなんて考かんがえる余裕よゆうはなかった。
There was no leeway to ponder whether to address him with or without an honorific.

As a Final Particle

To the same effect as above, you can also find **なんて** at the end of a sentence/statement to show utter surprise/disbelief. Depending on the tone, this may be used in ridicule as well.

42. どうしていきなりお酒さけなんて・・・
Why alcohol all so suddenly?

43. まさか、和睦わぼくの道みちを選えらぶなんて・・・
Wow, to think (they're) choosing the path of reconciliation...

44. お正月しょうがつがこんなに大変たいへん（だ）なんて・・・
To think New Year's would be this intense...

45. どちらも本物ほんものだなんて。
Both are the real thing?!

46. これからずっと怯おびえて暮くらさなきゃいけないなんて。
The thought of us having to live from here on out in fear....

47. まだまだ4し月がつなのに竜巻たつまきが発生はっせいするなんて・・・
Tornadoes forming even though it's still only April...

48. 愛あいしてるよなんて。
Huh, I love you...

49. あいつが「竹島たけしまは実じつは独島トクトだと主張しゅちようしてる」なんて
もっばらの噂うわさだよ。
The persistent rumor is that he "claims Takeshima is Dokdo".

Culture Note: 竹島 is a group of islands in the Sea of Japan called the "Liancourt Rocks" in English. However, the islands are under territorial

dispute with Korea. Japan claims they're part of 島根県しまねけん (Shimane Prefecture). However, Korea claims them as theirs under the name 独島.

With the Copula や

The particle なんて does not follow the copula や, however, which is used in dialects like 関西弁 instead of だ.

50a. 東京弁とうきょうべん：買かってあげる（だ）なんて言っていない。○

50b. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるなんて言いうてへん。○

50c. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるやなんて言いうてへん。X

I'm not saying that I'll buy it for you.

何て

As you may have already noticed and as was alluded to earlier, you can also view なんて as being equivalent to などと云って・何と云って. As you can see in the following sentences, spelling it as 何て is possible when it used more literally.

51. 今いま、何て言いったんだろ・・・

What was it that (he) said now?

52. 名前なまえは何ていうの。

What's your name?

53. この漢字かんじ、何て読よむの？

How do you read this Kanji?

54. こんな噂うわさが広ひろまってるなんて、上司じょうしが知しったら何なんて言いうかな。

I wonder what the boss would say if he found out this sort of rumor was surprising.

55. 池田いけださんなんて人ひとは知しりません。

I don't know a person by the name of Ikeda-san.

56. スイーツでまずいなんてことってあんまりないですよ。

There really aren't that many times in which something is a sweet but actually tastes bad.

Sentence Note: In Ex. 56, you could interpret なんて as being the same as などと云う.

57. 旦那だんななんて呼よばれる身分みぶんじゃない！

I'm not in the position to be called "husband"!

58. 「仕事しごとと私わたし、どっちが大事だいじなの？」なんて絶対ぜったいに言いうてはいけない禁句きんくなんですよ。

"Which is more important, work or me?" is a taboo that you should absolutely never utter.

59. すごいなんて言葉ことばでは全然足ぜんぜんたりない。
Using a word like "awesome" is totally not good enough.

60. 私わたし、なんて事ことを！
What have I done!

Oh How...

Lastly, it is also important to note that なんて can be used in its own set phrases (Ex. 64) as well as an adverb meaning "oh how...," in which case it is synonymous with 何と (Exs. 61-63).

61. カナダの冬ふゆって、本当ほんとうになんて美うつくしいんでしょう。
Oh how beautiful winter in Canada truly is!

62. うちのアパートの水道水すいどうすい、なんてまずいんだ。
The tap water at my apartment, it's just awful.

63. なんてつまらないんだ！
How boring!

64. なんて、（冗談じょうだんで）ね。
Just joking.

第141課: The Particles とか, など, & なんか

In this lesson we'll learn about additional particles that are used to list things colloquially: とか, など, and なんか.

The Adverbial Particle とか

とか means "such as." It can also be interpreted as "something like". This particle may be seen after nouns, the end of conjugations such as the て形 and the 命令形. It is somewhat colloquial, and you can often see it at the end of a sentence fragment.

1. 美由紀さんはギターとか、ドラムとか、ピアノとかたくさんお稽古けいこに行ってるのよ。(女性言葉)

Miyuki is taking many lessons such as guitar, drum, and piano.

2. 民主主義は食料とか飲料のように輸出できるものではない。

Democracy is not exportable like food or drink.

3. まだ用意とかできてねえよ。(乱暴な言い方)

I still can't, uh, get prepared.

4. Youtubeを見てないで、少しは犬を散歩につれてくとか、本を読むとか、してはどう？(Casual)

How about doing something like walk the dog or read a book without watching Youtube?

5. テニスとかサッカーとかアメフトとかの球技が大好きだからね。(Casual)
Because I love ball sports like tennis, soccer, and (American) football.

6. 宏君のおばあさんは80いくつとかでまだフランス語を教えているんですって。
Hiroshi's grandmother is something like 80 years old and is still teaching French.

The Adverbial Particle など

など becomes なんか in colloquial settings. It is used to give related examples and may be seen after nouns or verbs. This particle is not usually used in list form like other similar particles such as と. However, when the need arises, it is often used together with the particle や.

Translation Note: The particle など is often also translated as "etc."

7. 私は休日は雑誌ざっしを読むなどして過すごしました。
I spent the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines.

8. 東京やニューヨーク市などの大都市には大勢たいせいの人が住んでいます。
A lot of people live in metropolises such as Tokyo and New York City.

9. 音楽やビデオゲームなどが若者に愛用されている。(堅苦しい言い方)
Things such as music and video game are cherished by young people.

10. お茶・砂糖さとう・塩など
Tea, sugar, salt and so on

11. レモンやミカンやタンジェリンなどの果物くだものを買集めた。
I bought up fruits such as lemons, mandarin oranges, and tangerines.

漢字 Note: Lemon and mandarin oranges can be written in 漢字 as 檸檬 and 蜜柑 respectively, but they are usually just spelled in カタカナ.

12. 彼など適任者てきにんしゃだね。
Someone like him is suitable, right?

13. このパソコンなどお買い得どくです。
Something like this personal computer is a bargain.

14. ヨーロッパの信用しんよう不安で海外経済が減速げんそくしていることなどが影響
えいきょうしている。
Events such as overseas economies decelerating due to uneasiness of confidence in Europe are taking an effect.

15. こりゃなんかええじゃん? (Casual)
Isn't something like this OK?

16. 彼女になんか会わなければよかった。
If I had somehow not met her, it would have been good.
17. 私はテレビでアニメなどは見ません。
I don't watch things like anime on TV.
18. 休暇きゅうか中に洗濯せんたくや掃除そうじなどしなくてもいい。(堅苦しい)
休みなのに洗濯とか掃除とかしなくてもいいじゃない。(Casual)
It's all right to not do laundry, cleaning and such on vacation.
19. 表彰ひょうしょうなんか受けたくもねーし。(砕くだけた言い方)
I don't want any public acknowledgement.
20. 泣いてなどいられん。(Casual; dialectical)
I can't just cry.
21. 「ああ、佐伯あさっちゃんのところに行ったの。あんなヤツの言うことなんか、嘘っぱちだよ」
"Ahh, Sahaku went to Satchan's place? What that guy says is a downright lie.
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.
22. 今さら行くなどと言ってももう遅おそいよ。
Even if you say you're going to go now, you're already later.
23. 甲冑かっちゅうなども精巧せいこうに出来できている。
Things like the armor are also exquisitely made.

漢字 Note: 冑 is not a 常用漢字. So, don't worry about it.

Variants' Note: など may also be seen as なんと, なぞ and なんぞ. These are all dialectical. So, who uses them is dependent on the region in question.

第142課: The Particle なんて

The particle なんて is similar to なんか and など because all three particles can be used to euphemize what they follow. However, the practical situations in which they are used can be very different. When it comes to how なんて is used, the tone that it gives is far more emphatic than the other two can ever be. It also brings about unique grammar that the other two don't.

In this lesson, we will focus solely on なんて to see how it's used. Ultimately, it is easier to learn this particle separately so that you don't confuse it with things that can occasionally be used similarly but not ultimately bring about the same nuance.

How to Use なんて

Grammatically speaking, なんて can pretty much follow anything. One reason for this is that it is partially composed of って, which you should understand as one of the most common means of citation in speech. The な

ん, as you can imagine, comes from 何. This provides major context to how the phrase generally works. It's emphatic; it's subjective; it's there to draw some form of attention.

なんて can pretty much follow anything. It can be seen after nouns, adjectives, adjectival nouns, verbs, as well as full statements. Interestingly enough, as you will soon see, the copula だ can actually intervene at times to add even more dramatic effect to what's being referred. The "referring" aspect makes だ's role akin to that of a citation particle like って, drawing upon the literal breakdown of なんて itself.

Part of Speech	Example
With Nouns	恋 (だ) なんて
With Adjectives	おかしい (だ) なんて
With Adjectival Nouns	新鮮 (だ) なんて
With Verbs	行く (だ) なんて
With Sentences	本当に好きだよなんて

Although overall it is fair to say that なんて is used in mostly negative situations, it is not limited to this. Regardless of whether the statement is positive or negative, it will euphemize whatever it follows. This euphemizing can then have a belittling, critical, or supportive tone depending on the sentence.

1. 彼女かのじょ、包丁ほうちょうなんて使ったことあるのかな。
I wonder if she's ever used a kitchen knife.

2. そもそも決闘けっとうなんてしませんよ。
We're not going to be having a duel in the first place.

3. もう、健太君けんたくんなんて知知らないわ！
I don't know you anymore, Kentaro!

4. 私わたしなんてまだまだです。
I still have a long way to go.

5. アライグマなんて怖こわくないよ。
There's nothing scary about raccoons!

6. バスク語ごなんて簡単かんたんさ。
Basque is just easy!

7. 野球やきゅうなんてちょっと詰つまらない？
Isn't baseball a little boring?

8. 雪合戦ゆきがっせんなんて子供こどもじゃあるまいし。
A snowball fight...it isn't as if I'm a child.

9. 人生じんせいなんてそんな素晴すばらしいものじゃない。
Human life is not such a wonderful thing.

10. 人間にんげんなんて脆もろいものなんでしょうね。
People really are weak things, aren't they?

11. セス先生せんせいなんて聞きいたことねー。
I've never heard of this Seth-sensei.

12. 漢字かんじなんてどうしても書かけないの！
I can't write Kanji no matter what I do!

13. なんで試験しけんなんてやるんだろ。
Why is it that we do exams anyway?

14. お金かねなんて要らない！
I don't need any money!

15. 無意味むいみな愚痴ぐちなんて聞ききたくもない。
I don't want to hear your meaningless complaining.

16. 本来ほんらい白しろいはずのものが赤あかいなんてちょっと神秘しんぴ（的てき）だよな。
Something that's originally supposed to be white being red is a little mysterious, isn't it?

17. 男性だんせいじゃあるまいし、鼻下びかが青あおいなんて洒落しゃれになりません。
It's not as if I'm a man; my upper-lip being blue is no joking matter.

18. 始はじまりが怖こわいなんて、そんなの当然とうぜんだからね。
That's 'cause it's natural for the beginning to be scary.

19. あれほど醜みにくいなんて、本当ほんとうに残念ざんねんなことだ。
It truly is a shame that (he) is so ugly like that.

20. 図々ずうずうしいだなんて、とんでもございませぬ。
It's absolutely not audacious (of him).

21. 体型たいけいが美うつくしいだなんて、照てれるわ。
I get embarrassed when I'm told my figure is beautiful.

22. 必かならずずっと一緒いっしょ（だ）なんて、あり得えないんじゃない？
Always being together forever is impossible, no?

23. 日常会話が簡単（だ）なんて嘘だよ！
It's a complete lie that daily conversation is easy!

24. え、まさかあいつが俺おれのことを好すきだなんて・・・
What? You're saying that guy likes me!?

25. 仏様ほとけさまを焼やき払はらうなんて、人間にんげんの出来ることじゃないと思おもうがね。
Though I'm pretty sure reducing the Buddha into ashes is not something man can do.

26. 我わが国くにの神々かみがみを疑うたがうなんて、とんだ身分みぶんだな。
What unthinkable position you're in doubting the gods of our country.

27. 息子むすこさん早稲田わせだに受かったなんて凄すごいですね。
That's amazing how your son got accepted to Waseda (University).

28. 正月しょうがつに一度いちども帰かえらないなんて何なにか事情じじょうがあるからだろうしなあ。
There's probably got to be some reason behind (him) not going home even one on New Year's.

29. 重要じゅうような会議かいぎに遅刻ちこくするなんて、許ゆるせない。
It's unforgiveable to be late to an important meeting.

30. 行いくなんて言いってないよ。
I'm not saying that I'm going.

31. 子供こどもの猿さるも次つぎの年としに子こをたくさん産うむなんてことはできない。
The young monkeys can't also give birth to a lot of offspring the next year.

32. この猿さるちゃん、子こをたくさん産うむことなんてできないもん。
This little monkey, there's no way it can give birth to a lot of offspring.

33. 全員ぜんいんに好すかれるのなんて無理むりだよな。
It's impossible to be liked by everyone, huh.

34. 禿はげるのなんて絶対嫌ぜったいいやだ！
Going bald would just be absolutely awful!

35. タイムマシンが出来できるのなんて不可能ふかのうなんですよな？
Building a time machine is impossible, right?

36. 英語えいごでできるのなんて成人せいじんとしては当あたり前まえじゃないか。
Being able to speak English is only natural as an adult, is it not?

37. 智美ともみがああいう人ひとだったなんて、知しらなかったです。
I had no idea Tomomi was that kind of a person.

38. つい最近さいきんまで高校生こうこうせいだったなんて信じ信じられませんね。
I can't believe that I've been a high school student up until just recently.

39. この世よも終おわりだなんて考かんがえるのは愚おろかだ。
Thinking something like the world's going to end is foolish!

40. どうしてここに来きたのかなんて、決きまっている。
It's a given as to why (he) came here.

41. 呼よび捨ててか、さん付づけかなんて考かんがえる余裕よゆうはなかった。
There was no leeway to ponder whether to address him with or without an honorific.

As a Final Particle

To the same effect as above, you can also find **なんて** at the end of a sentence/statement to show utter surprise/disbelief. Depending on the tone, this may be used in ridicule as well.

42. どうして急にお酒さけなんて・・・
Why alcohol all so suddenly?

43. まさか、和睦わぶくの道みちを選えらぶなんて・・・
Wow, to think (they're) choosing the path of reconciliation...

44. お正月しょうがつがこんなに大変たいへん(だ)なんて・・・
To think New Year's would be this intense...

45. どちらも本物ほんものだなんて。
Both are the real thing?!

46. これからずっと怯おびえて暮くらさなきゃいけないなんて。
The thought of us having to live from here on out in fear....

47. まだまだ4し月がつなのに竜巻たつまきが発生はっせいするなんて・・・
Tornadoes forming even though it's still only April...

48. 愛あいしてるよなんて。
Huh, I love you...

49. あいつが「竹島たけしまは実じつは独島トクトだと主張しゅちようしてる」なんてもっばらの噂うわさだよ。
The persistent rumor is that he "claims Takeshima is Dokdo".

Culture Note: 竹島 is a group of islands in the Sea of Japan called the "Liancourt Rocks" in English. However, the islands are under territorial dispute with Korea. Japan claims they're part of 島根県しまねけん (Shimane Prefecture). However, Korea claims them as theirs under the name 独島.

With the Copula や

The particle **なんて** does not follow the copula **や**, however, which is used in dialects like 関西弁 instead of **だ**.

50a. 東京弁とうきょうべん：買かってあげる(だ)なんて言っていない。○

50b. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるなんて言いうてへん。○

50c. 京都弁きょうとべん：買かうたげるやなんて言いうてへん。X
I'm not saying that I'll buy it for you.

何て

As you may have already noticed and as was alluded to earlier, you can also view **なんて** as being equivalent to などと言って・何と言って. As you can see in

the following sentences, spelling it as 何て is possible when it used more literally.

51. 今いま、何て言いったんだろ・・・
What was it that (he) said now?

52. 名前なまえは何ていうの。
What's your name?

53. この漢字かんじ、何て読よむの？
How do you read this Kanji?

54. こんな噂うわさが広ひろまってるなんて、上司じょうしが知しったら何なんて言うかな。
I wonder what the boss would say if he found out this sort of rumor was surprising.

55. 池田いけださんなんて人ひとは知しりません。
I don't know a person by the name of Ikeda-san.

56. スイーツでまずいなんてことってあんまりないですよ。
There really aren't that many times in which something is a sweet but actually tastes bad.

Sentence Note: In Ex. 56, you could interpret なんて as being the same as などと言う.

57. 旦那だんななんて呼よばれる身分みぶんじゃない！
I'm not in the position to be called "husband"!

58. 「仕事しごとと私わたし、どっちが大事だいじなの？」なんて絶対ぜったいに言いつてはいけない禁句きんくなんです。
"Which is more important, work or me?" is a taboo that you should absolutely never utter.

59. すごいなんて言葉ことばでは全然ぜんぜんたりない。
Using a word like "awesome" is totally not good enough.

60. 私わたし、なんて事ことを！
What have I done!

Oh How...

Lastly, it is also important to note that なんて can be used in its own set phrases (Ex. 64) as well as an adverb meaning "oh how...," in which case it is synonymous with 何と (Exs. 61-63).

61. カナダの冬ふゆって、本当ほんとうになんて美うつくしいんでしょう。
Oh how beautiful winter in Canada truly is!

62. うちのアパートの水道水すいどうすい、なんてまずいんだ。
The tap water at my apartment, it's just awful.

63. なんてつまらないんだ！
How boring!

64. なんて、（冗談じょうだんで）ね。
Just joking.